

|   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| CECW-EG<br><br>Engineer Manual<br>1110-1-1904 | Department of the Army<br>U.S. Army Corps of Engineers<br>Washington, DC 20314-1000                     | EM 1110-1-1904<br><br>30 September 1990 |
|   | Engineering and Design<br><br>SETTLEMENT ANALYSIS   |   |
|   | <b>Distribution Restriction Statement</b><br>Approved for public release; distribution is<br>unlimited. |   |

CEMP-ES

DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY  
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers  
Washington, DC 20314-1000

EM 1110-1-1904


Engineer Manual  
No. 1110-1-1904

30 September 1990

Engineering and Design  
SETTLEMENT ANALYSIS

1. Purpose. The purpose of this manual is to provide guidelines for calculations of vertical displacements and settlement of soil under shallow foundations supporting various types of structures and under embankments.
2. Applicability. This manual applies to all USACE Commands.
3. General. This manual is intended as a guide for determining potential settlement and is not intended to replace the judgment of the design engineer on a particular project.

FOR THE COMMANDER:



ROBERT L. HERNDON  
Colonel, Corps of Engineers  
Chief of Staff

CEMP-ES

Engineer Manual  
 No. 1110-1-1904

30 September 1990

Engineering and Design  
 SETTLEMENT ANALYSIS

Table of Contents

| Subject  | Paragraph | Page |
|--|-----------|------|
| CHAPTER 1. INTRODUCTION  |           |      |
| Purpose and Scope . . . . .  | 1-1       | 1-1  |
| Applicability . . . . .  | 1-2       | 1-2  |
| References . . . . .   | 1-3       | 1-2  |
| Rescission . . . . .   | 1-4       | 1-2  |
| General Considerations and Definitions .                                 | 1-5       | 1-2  |
| CHAPTER 2. LIMITATIONS OF SETTLEMENT                                     |           |      |
| General . . . . .  | 2-1       | 2-1  |
| Total Settlement . . . . .   | 2-2       | 2-1  |
| Differential Settlement . . . . .  | 2-3       | 2-2  |
| CHAPTER 3. EVALUATION OF SETTLEMENT FOR STATIC LOADS                     |           |      |
| General . . . . .  | 3-1       | 3-1  |
| Components of Settlement . . . . .                                       | 3-2       | 3-1  |
| Section I. Immediate Settlement of Cohesionless Soil<br>for Static Loads |           |      |
| Description of Methods . . . . .   | 3-3       | 3-2  |
| Recommendations . . . . .  | 3-4       | 3-12 |
| Application . . . . .  | 3-5       | 3-13 |
| Section II. Immediate Settlement of Cohesive Soil for<br>Static Loads    |           |      |
| General . . . . .  | 3-6       | 3-16 |
| Rebound in Excavations . . . . .   | 3-7       | 3-16 |
| Immediate Settlement in Cohesive Soil .                                  | 3-8       | 3-17 |
| Recommendations . . . . .  | 3-9       | 3-22 |
| Application . . . . .  | 3-10      | 3-25 |
| Section III. Primary Consolidation Settlement                            |           |      |
| Description . . . . .  | 3-11      | 3-26 |
| Ultimate 1-D Consolidation . . . . .                                     | 3-12      | 3-28 |
| Time Rate of Settlement . . . . .  | 3-13      | 3-36 |
| Example Application of Primary<br>Consolidation . . . . .                | 3-14      | 3-47 |
| Accuracy of Settlement Predictions . . .                                 | 3-15      | 3-48 |
| Computer Solutions . . . . .   | 3-16      | 3-51 |

|             | <u>Subject</u>  | <u>Paragraph</u> | <u>Page</u> |
|-------------|---|------------------|-------------|
| Section IV. | Secondary Compression and Creep                             |                  |             |
|             | Description . . . . .                                       | 3-17             | 3-52        |
|             | Calculation of Secondary Compression . .                    | 3-18             | 3-53        |
| CHAPTER 4.  | EVALUATION OF SETTLEMENT FOR DYNAMIC AND<br>TRANSIENT LOADS |                  |             |
|             | General . . . . .   | 4-1              | 4-1         |
|             | Settlement From Earthquakes . . . . .                       | 4-2              | 4-1         |
|             | Settlement From Repeated Loads and<br>Creep . . . . .       | 4-3              | 4-2         |
| CHAPTER 5.  | APPLICATIONS WITH UNSTABLE FOUNDATION SOIL                  |                  |             |
|             | Unstable Soils . . . . .                                    | 5-1              | 5-1         |
| Section I.  | Heaving Soil  |                  |             |
|             | General . . . . .   | 5-2              | 5-1         |
|             | Identification . . . . .                                    | 5-3              | 5-4         |
|             | Potential Vertical Heave . . . . .                          | 5-4              | 5-5         |
|             | Potential Differential Heave . . . . .                      | 5-5              | 5-7         |
|             | Application . . . . .                                       | 5-6              | 5-8         |
| Section II. | Collapsible Soil  |                  |             |
|             | General . . . . .   | 5-7              | 5-12        |
|             | Identification . . . . .                                    | 5-8              | 5-12        |
|             | Potential Collapse . . . . .                                | 5-9              | 5-13        |
|             | Application . . . . .                                       | 5-10             | 5-17        |
| CHAPTER 6.  | COPING WITH SOIL MOVEMENTS                                  |                  |             |
| Section I.  | Minimizing and Tolerating Soil Movements                    |                  |             |
|             | General . . . . .   | 6-1              | 6-1         |
|             | Soil Improvement . . . . .                                  | 6-2              | 6-1         |
|             | Foundation Techniques . . . . .                             | 6-3              | 6-10        |
|             | Flexible Techniques . . . . .                               | 6-4              | 6-12        |
| Section II. | Remedial Methods  |                  |             |
|             | General . . . . .   | 6-5              | 6-12        |
|             | Underpinning With Piles . . . . .                           | 6-6              | 6-12        |
|             | Grouting . . . . .  | 6-7              | 6-13        |
|             | Slabjacking . . . . .                                       | 6-8              | 6-13        |
| APPENDIX A  | REFERENCES . . . . .  |                  | A-1         |
| APPENDIX B  | BIBLIOGRAPHY . . . . .                                      |                  | B-1         |
| APPENDIX C  | STRESS DISTRIBUTION IN SOIL                                 |                  |             |
|             | General . . . . .   | C-1              | C-1         |
|             | Evaluation of Stress Distribution in<br>Soil . . . . .      | C-2              | C-1         |
|             | Limitations of Theoretical Solutions . .                    | C-3              | C-7         |

| <u>Subject</u> |  | <u>Paragraph</u> | <u>Page</u> |
|----------------|--|------------------|-------------|
| APPENDIX D     | ELASTIC PARAMETERS                                   |                  |             |
|                | General . . . . .                                    | D-1              | D-1         |
|                | Elastic Young's Modulus . . . . .                    | D-2              | D-1         |
|                | Shear Modulus . . . . .                              | D-3              | D-12        |
|                | Poisson's Ratio . . . . .                            | D-4              | D-12        |
| APPENDIX E     | LABORATORY CONSOLIDOMETER TESTS                      |                  |             |
|                | General . . . . .                                    | E-1              | E-1         |
|                | Step Load Test (SL) . . . . .                        | E-2              | E-1         |
|                | Rapid Load Test (RL) . . . . .                       | E-3              | E-2         |
|                | Constant Rate of Deformation Test<br>(CRD) . . . . . | E-4              | E-2         |
|                | Controlled Gradient Test (CG) . . . . .              | E-5              | E-4         |
| APPENDIX F     | COMPUTER PROGRAM VDISPL                              |                  |             |
|                | Background . . . . .                                 | F-1              | F-1         |
|                | Organization . . . . .                               | F-2              | F-1         |
|                | Example Problems . . . . .                           | F-3              | F-10        |
|                | Listing . . . . .                                    | F-4              | F-17        |
| APPENDIX G     | NOTATION . . . . .                                   |                  | G-1         |

CHAPTER 1  
INTRODUCTION

1-1. Purpose and Scope. This manual presents guidelines for calculation of vertical displacements and settlement of soil under shallow foundations (mats and footings) supporting various types of structures and under embankments.

a. Causes of Soil Displacements. Soil is a nonhomogeneous porous material consisting of three phases: solids, fluid (normally water), and air. Soil deformation may occur by change in stress, water content, soil mass, or temperature. Vertical displacements and settlement caused by change in stress and water content are described in this manual. Limitations of these movements required for different structures are described in Chapter 2.

(1) Elastic deformation. Elastic or immediate deformation caused by static loads is usually small, and it occurs essentially at the same time these loads are applied to the soil. Guidance for tests and analyses to estimate immediate settlements of foundations, embankments, pavements, and other structures on cohesionless and cohesive soils for static loading conditions is given in Sections I and II of Chapter 3.

(2) Consolidation. Time delayed consolidation is the reduction in volume associated with a reduction in water content, and it occurs in all soils. Consolidation occurs quickly in coarse-grained soils such as sands and gravels, and it is usually not distinguishable from elastic deformation. Consolidation in fine-grained soils such as clays and organic materials can be significant and take considerable time to complete. Guidance for tests and analyses to estimate consolidation settlement of foundations, embankments, pavements, and other structures on cohesive soil for static loading conditions is given in Section III of Chapter 3.

(3) Secondary compression and creep. Secondary compression and creep are associated with the compression and distortion at constant water content of compressible soils such as clays, silts, organic materials, and peat. Guidance for tests and analyses to estimate secondary compression settlement is given in Section IV of Chapter 3.

(4) Dynamic forces. Dynamic loads cause settlement from rearrangement of particles, particularly in cohesionless soil, into more compact positions. Guidance to estimate settlement for some dynamic loads is given in Chapter 4.

(5) Expansive soil. Expansive soil contains colloidal clay minerals such as montmorillonite that experience heave and shrinkage with changes in the soil water content. Guidance for calculation of soil movements in expansive soil is given in Section I of Chapter 5.

(6) Collapsible soil. Collapsible soil usually consists of cohesive silty sands with a loose structure or large void ratio. The cohesion is usually caused by the chemical bonding of particles with soluble compounds such as calcareous or ferrous salts. Collapse occurs when the bonds between particles are dissolved. Guidance for calculation of settlement in collapsible soil is given in Section II of Chapter 5.

b. Coping with Soil Movements. Soil movements may be minimized by treating the soil prior to construction by numerous methods such as removal of poor soil and replace with suitable soil, precompression of soft soil, dynamic consolidation of cohesionless soil, and chemical stabilization or wetting of expansive or collapsible soil. Foundations may be designed to tolerate some differential movements. Remedial techniques such as underpinning with piles, grouting, and slabjacking are available to stabilize and repair damaged foundations. Methodology for minimizing and coping with settlement is given in Chapter 6.

c. Limitations of the Manual. This manual excludes settlement caused by subsidence and undermining by tunnels, subsidence due to buried karst features or cavities, thermal effects of structures on permafrost, effects of frost heave, loss in mass from erosion, loss of ground from rebound and lateral movement in adjacent excavations, and loss of support caused by lateral soil movement from landslides, downhill creep, and shifting retaining walls.

(1) Horizontal deformation. Horizontal deformation of structures associated with vertical deformations may also occur, but such analysis is complex and beyond the scope of this manual.

(2) Deep foundations. Deep foundations are driven piles and drilled shafts used to transmit foundation loads to deeper strata capable of supporting the applied loads. Guidelines on settlement analysis of deep foundations is given in TM 5-809-7, "Design of Deep Foundations (Except Hydraulic Structures)".

(3) Landfills. Settlement of domestic and hazardous landfills are unpredictable and cannot be readily estimated using techniques presented in this manual.

1-2. Applicability. This manual applies to all Corps of Engineers field operating activities. Applications include, but are not limited to, design analysis of alternatives for new construction, analyses for rationalizing in-service performance, forensic investigations, and damage assessments and repair/rehabilitation design.

1-3. References. Standard references pertaining to this manual are listed in Appendix A, References. Each reference is identified in the text by the designated Government publication number or performing agency. Additional reading materials are listed in the Bibliography and are indicated throughout the manual by numbers (item 1, 2, etc.) that correspond to similarly numbered items in Appendix B.

1-4. Rescission. This manual supersedes EM 1110-2-1904, "Settlement Analysis", Chapter 4, dated January 1953.

1-5. General Considerations and Definitions. Placement of an embankment load or structure on the surface of a soil mass introduces stress in the soil that causes the soil to deform and leads to settlement of the structure. It is frequently necessary to estimate the differential and total vertical soil deformation caused by the applied loads. Differential movement affects the structural integrity and performance of the structure. Total deformation is significant relative to connections of utility lines to buildings, grade and

drainage from structures, minimum height specifications of dams (i.e., free-board), and railroad and highway embankments. Soils and conditions described in Table 1-1 require special considerations to achieve satisfactory design and performance. Early recognition of these problems is essential to allow sufficient time for an adequate field investigation and preparation of an appropriate design.

a. Preconsolidation Stress. The preconsolidation stress or maximum effective past pressure  $\sigma'_p$  experienced by a foundation soil is a principle factor in determining the magnitude of settlement of a structure supported by the soil.  $\sigma'_p$  is the maximum effective stress to which the in situ soil has been consolidated by a previous loading; it is the boundary between recompression and virgin consolidation, which are described in Section III, Chapter 3. Pressures applied to the foundation soil that exceed the maximum past pressure experienced by the soil may cause substantial settlement. Structures should be designed, if practical, with loads that maintain soil pressures less than the maximum past pressure.

(1) Geological evidence of a preconsolidation stress. Stresses are induced in the soil mass by past history such as surcharge loads from soil later eroded away by natural causes, lowering of the groundwater table and desiccation by drying from the surface.

(a) Temporary groundwater levels and lakes may have existed causing loads and overconsolidation compared with existing effective stresses.

(b) Desiccation of surface soil, particularly cyclic desiccation due to repeated wetting and drying, creates significant microscale stresses which in turn cause significant preconsolidation effects. Such effects include low void ratios as well as fissures and fractures, high density, high strength and high maximum past pressures measured in consolidation tests.

(c) A high preconsolidation stress may be anticipated if  $\frac{N \cdot 1}{15 \cdot \sigma_{oz}} > 0.25$  where N is the blowcount from standard penetration test (SPT) results and  $\sigma_{oz}$  (tons/square foot or tsf) is the total overburden pressure at depth z (Table 3-2, TM 5-818-1).

(2) Evaluation from maximum past thickness. Local geologic records and publications when available should be reviewed to estimate the maximum past thickness of geologic formations from erosion events, when and amount of material removed, glacial loads, and crustal tilt.

(a) The minimum local depth can sometimes be determined from trans-valley geologic profiles if carried sufficiently into abutment areas to be beyond the influence of valley erosion effects.

(b) The maximum past pressure at a point in an in situ soil is estimated by multiplying the unit wet soil weight (approximately 0.06 tsf) by the total estimated past thickness of the overlying soil at that point.

(c) Results of the cone penetration test (CPT) may be used to evaluate the thickness of overburden soil removed by erosion if the cone tip resistance  $q_c$  increases linearly with depth (refer to Figure 7 in item 56). The line of  $q_c$  versus depth is extrapolated back above the existing surface of the soil



Table 1-1

Problem Soils and Conditions<sup>a</sup>

a. Problem Soils

| Soil                                    | Description  |
|---|--|
| Organic                                 | Colloids or fibrous materials such as peats, organic silts, and clays of many estuarine, lacustrine, or fluvial environments are generally weak and will deform excessively under load. These soils are usually not satisfactory for supporting even very light structures because of excessive settlements.   |
| Normally consolidated clays             | Additional loads imposed on soil consolidated only under the weight of the existing environment will cause significant long-term settlements, particularly in soft and organic clays. These clays can be penetrated several centimeters by the thumb. The magnitude and approximate rate of settlement should be determined by methods described in Section III, Chapter 3, in order to determine acceptability of settlements for the function and characteristics of the structure. Bottoms of excavations may heave and adjoining areas settle unless precautions are taken to prevent such movement.                         |
| Sensitive clays                         | The ratio of undisturbed to remolded strength is the sensitivity of a clay. Clays having remolded strengths 25 percent or less of the undisturbed strength are considered sensitive and subject to excessive settlement and possible catastrophic failure. Such clays preconsolidated by partial desiccation or erosion of overlying soil may support shear stresses caused by foundation loads if these loads are well within the shear strength of the clay. Refer to paragraph 3-12 on apparent preconsolidation for analysis of settlement.  |
| Swelling and shrinking clays and shales | Clays, especially those containing montmorillonite or smectite, expand or contract from changes in water content and are widely distributed throughout the United States and the world. Clay shales may swell significantly following stress relief as in a cut or excavation and following exposure to air. Foundations in these soils may have excessive movements unless the foundation soil is treated or provisions are made in the design to account for these movements or swell pressures developed in the soil on contact with moisture. Refer to Section I, Chapter 5, for details on analysis of heave and shrinkage. |
| Collapsible soils                       | The open, porous structure of loosely deposited soil such as silty clays and sands with particles bonded with soluble salts may collapse following saturation. These soils are often strong and stable when dry. Undisturbed samples should be   |

<sup>a</sup> Based on information from the Canadian Foundation Engineering Manual, 2nd edition.

Table 1-1. Continued

| Soil                 | Description   |
|----------------------|---|
|                      | taken to accurately determine the in situ density. Refer to Section II, Chapter 5, for details on settlement analysis.  |
| Loose granular soils | All granular soils are subject to some densification from vibration, which may cause significant settlement and liquefaction of soil below the water table; however, minor vibration, pile driving, blasting, and earthquake motion in loose to very loose sands may induce significant settlement. Limits to potential settlement and applicable densification techniques should be determined. Refer to Chapter 4 for analysis of dynamic settlements in these soils.   |
| Glacial tills        | Till is usually a good foundation soil except boulders and soft layers may cause problems if undetected during the field investigation.   |
| Fills                | Unspecified fills placed randomly with poor compaction control can settle significantly and provide unsuitable foundation soil. Fills should usually be engineered granular, cohesive materials of low plasticity index < 12 and liquid limit < 35. Suitable materials of the Unified Soil Classification System include GW, GM, GC, GP, SW, SP, SM, SC, and CL soils. Compaction beneath structures to $\geq 92$ percent of optimum density for cohesive fill or 95 percent for cohesionless fill using ASTM Standard Test Methods D 1557 has provided highly successful constructability and in-service performance. Refer to EM 1110-2-1911 for construction control of earth and rockfill dams. |

b. Problem Conditions

| Condition                 | Description  |
|---------------------------|--|
| Meander loops and cutoffs | Soils that fill abandoned waterways are usually weak and highly compressible. The depth of these soils should be determined and estimates made of potential settlement early in design to allow time for development of suitable measures for treating the soil or accommodating settlement.   |
| Landslides                | Potential landslides are not easily detected, but evidence of displacement such as bowed trees and tilted or warped strata should be noted. Sensitive clays and cutting action of eroding rivers significantly increase the risk of landslides. Slopes and excavations should be minimized, seasonal variations in the local water table considered in the design, and suitable arrangements for drainage provided at the top and toe of slopes. |

Table 1-1. Concluded

| Soil                      | Description   |
|---------------------------|---|
| Kettle holes              | The retreating continental ice sheet left large blocks of ice that melted and left depressions, which eventually filled with peat or with soft organic soils. Lateral dimensions can vary from a few to several hundred feet. Depths of kettle holes usually do not exceed 40 percent of lateral dimensions and can sometimes be identified as shallow surface depressions.   |
| Mined areas and sinkholes | Voids beneath the surface soil may lead to severe ground movements and differential settlement from subsidence or caving. Sink holes are deep depressions formed by the collapse of the roofs of underground caverns such as in limestone. Maps of previous mined areas are helpful when available. Published geological data, nondestructive in situ tests and past experience help indicate the existence of subsurface cavities. Investigations should be thorough to accurately determine the existence and location of any subsurface voids. |
| Lateral soil distortions  | Lateral distortions are usually not significant, but can occur in highly plastic soils near the edge of surface loads. These distortions can adversely affect the performance of foundations of structures and embankments. Driven piles can cause large lateral displacements and excessive pressures on retaining walls.  |
| Downdrag                  | Compression of fills or consolidation of soft soil adjacent to wall footings or piles cause downdrag on the footing or pile. This leads to substantial loads at the base of the foundation that can exceed the bearing capacity of the underlying soil supporting the footing or pile. Failure of the foundation can occur with gross distortion.   |
| Vibrations                | Cohesionless soil, especially loose sands and gravels, can densify and settle when subject to machine vibration, blasts, and earthquakes. Distortion with negligible volume change can occur in loose, saturated sands due to liquefaction. Low level sustained vibration can densify saturated sands.  |

to the elevation where  $q_c$  is zero assuming the original cohesion is zero. The difference in elevation where  $q_c$  is zero and the existing elevation is the depth of overburden removed by erosion. This depth times the unit wet weight  $\gamma$  is the total maximum past pressure  $\sigma_p$ . The cohesion for many clays is not zero, but contributes to a  $q_c$  approaching one tsf. Extrapolating the line above the existing ground surface to  $q_c = 1$  tsf produces a more conservative depth of overburden clay soil. This latter estimate of overburden depth is recommended.

(3) Evaluation from overconsolidation ratio. The preconsolidation stress  $\sigma'_p$  may be evaluated from the overconsolidation ratio (OCR),  $\sigma'_p/\sigma'_{oz}$ , where  $\sigma'_{oz}$  is the effective vertical overburden pressure at depth  $z$ .

(a) The initial vertical effective pressure in a saturated soil mass before placement of an applied load from a structure is given by

$$\sigma'_{oz} = \gamma z - u_w \quad (1-1)$$

where

$\sigma'_{oz}$  = initial vertical effective stress at depth  $z$ , tsf  
 $\gamma$  = saturated unit weight of soil mass at depth  $z$ , tsf  
 $z$  = depth, ft  
 $u_w$  = pore water pressure, tsf

$u_w$  usually is the hydrostatic pressure  $\gamma_w \cdot z_w$  where  $\gamma_w$  is the unit weight of water, 0.031 tsf, and  $z_w$  is the height of a column of water above depth  $z$ .  $\gamma z$  is the total overburden pressure  $\sigma_{oz}$ .

(b) The overconsolidation ratio has been related empirically with the coefficient of earth pressure at rest  $K_o$ ,  $\sigma'_{hz}/\sigma'_{oz}$ , and the plasticity index PI in Figure 3-21, TM 5-818-1.  $\sigma'_{hz}$  is the effective horizontal pressure at rest at depth  $z$ . Normally consolidated soil is defined as soil with OCR = 1. Overconsolidated soil is defined as soil with OCR > 1.

(c) The results of pressuremeter tests (PMT) may be used to evaluate the effective horizontal earth pressure  $\sigma'_{hz}$ .  $K_o$  may be evaluated if the effective vertical overburden pressure  $\sigma'_{oz}$  at depth  $z$  is known and the OCR estimated as above.

(4) Laboratory tests. The preconsolidation stress may be calculated from results of consolidation tests on undisturbed soil specimens, paragraph 3-12.

(a) A high preconsolidation stress may be anticipated if the natural water content is near the plastic limit PL or below or if  $C_u/\sigma_{oz} > 0.3$  where  $C_u$  is the undrained shear strength (Table 3-2, TM 5-818-1).

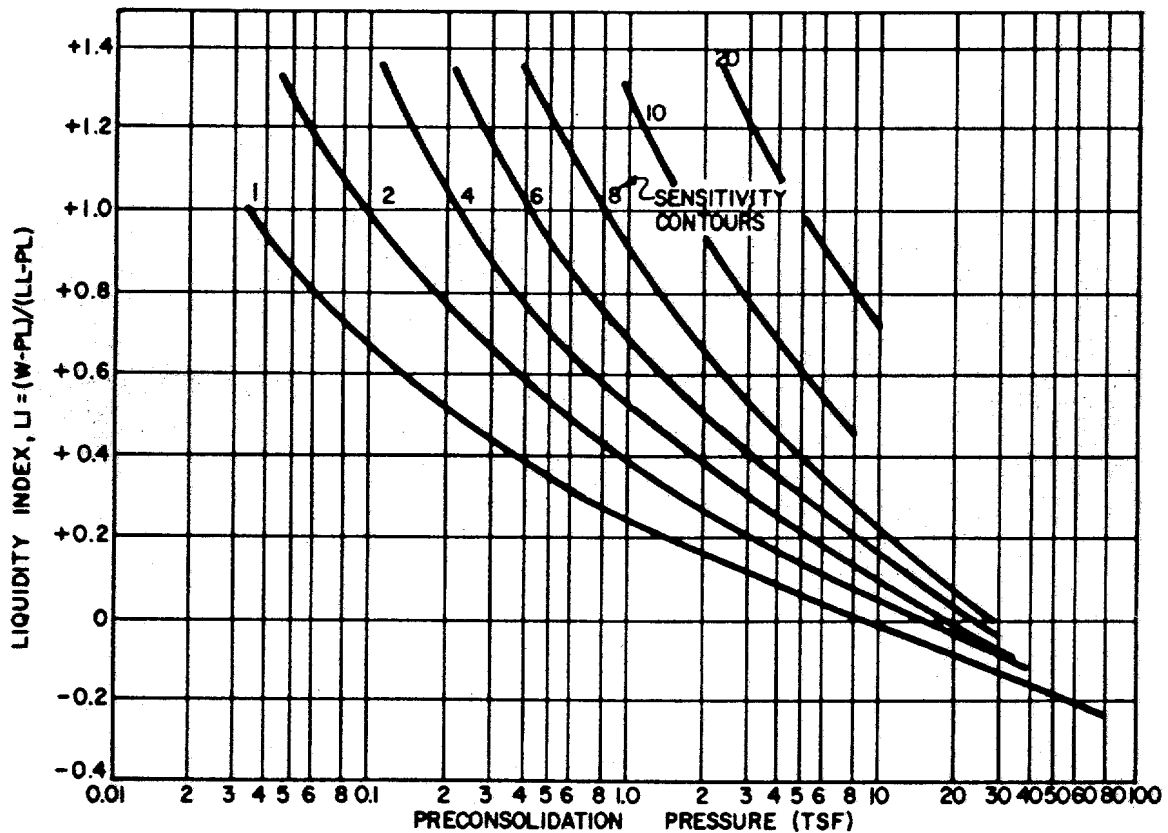
(b) An empirical relationship between the preconsolidation stress and liquidity index as a function of clay sensitivity, ratio of undisturbed to remolded undrained shear strength, is given in Figure 1-1. The preconsolidation stress may also be estimated from (NAVFAC DM-7.1)

$$\sigma'_p = \frac{C_u}{0.11 + 0.0037 PI} \quad (1-2)$$

where

$\sigma'_p$  = preconsolidation stress, tsf  
 $C_u$  = undrained shear strength, tsf  
 PI = plasticity index, percent

b. Pressure Bulb of Stressed Soil. The pressure bulb is a common term that represents the volume of soil or zone below a foundation within which the



W = WATER CONTENT, PERCENT  
PL = PLASTIC LIMIT, PERCENT  
LL = LIQUID LIMIT, PERCENT

Figure 1-1. Preconsolidation Stress as a function of Liquidity Index LI and clay sensitivity (ratio of undisturbed to remolded shear strength) (After NAVFAC DM 7.1)

foundation load induces appreciable stress. The stress level at a particular point of soil beneath a foundation may be estimated by the theory of elasticity.

(1) Applicability of the theory of elasticity. Earth masses and foundation boundary conditions correspond approximately with the theory of plasticity (item 52).

(2) Stress distribution. Various laboratory, prototype, and full scale field tests of pressure cell measurements in response to applied surface loads on homogeneous soil show that the measured soil vertical stress distribution corresponds reasonably well to analytical models predicted by linear elastic analysis for similar boundary conditions.

(a) The Boussinesq method is commonly used to estimate the stress distribution in soil. This distribution indicates that the stressed zone decreases toward the edge of the foundation and becomes negligible (less than 10 percent of the stress intensity) at depths of about 6 times the width of an infinite strip or 2 times the width of a square foundation, Figure 1-2.

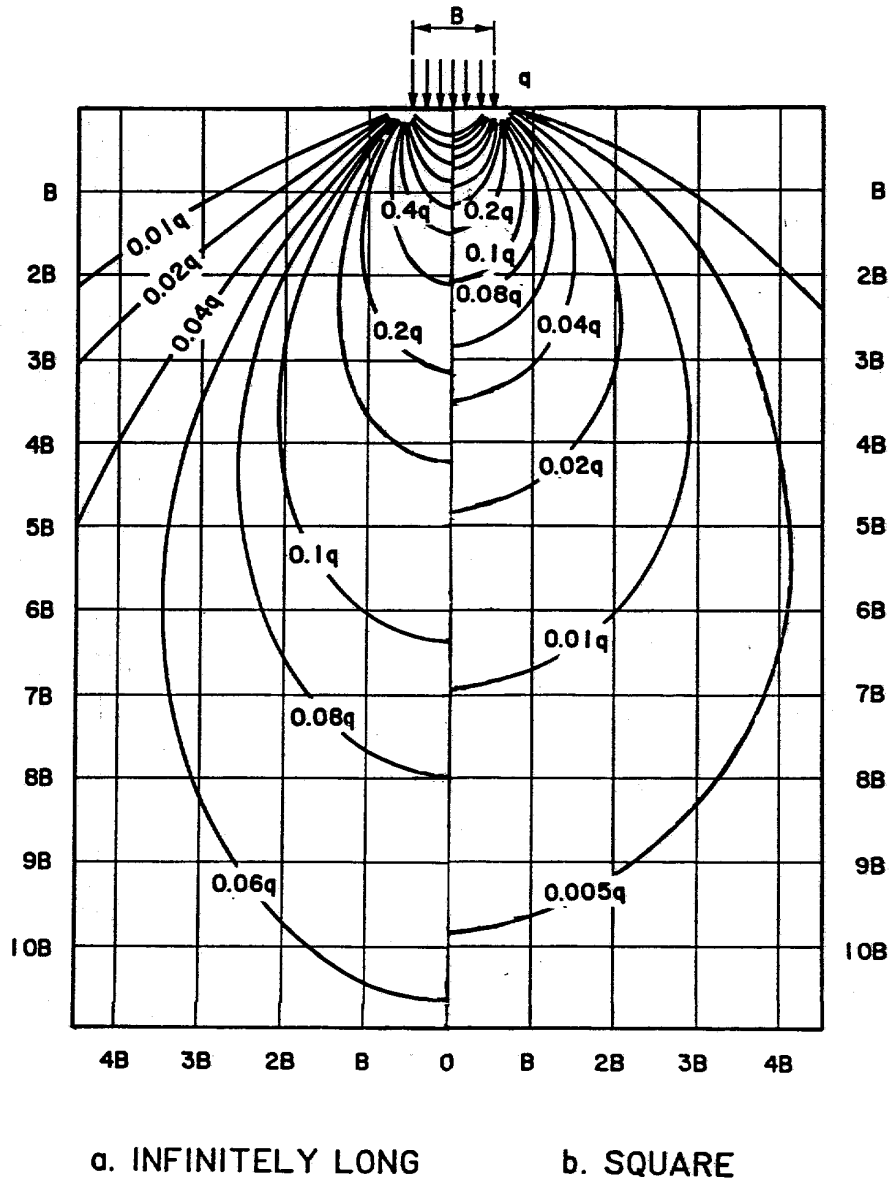


Figure 1-2. Contours of equal vertical stress beneath a foundation in a semi-infinite elastic solid by the Boussinesq solution

(b) The recommended depth of analysis is at least twice the least width of the footing or mat foundation, 4 times the width of infinite strips or embankments, or the depth of incompressible soil, whichever comes first.

(c) The distribution of vertical stress in material overlain by a much stiffer layer is more nearly determined by considering the entire mass as homogeneous rather than a layered elastic system.

(d) Methods and equations for estimating stresses in foundation soils required for analysis of settlement are provided in Appendix C, Stress Distribution in Soil.

(3) Applicability to settlement calculations. The ability to predict settlements using elastic theory depends much more strongly on the in situ nonlinearity and material inhomogeneity than errors in the distribution of stresses. These settlements directly depend on the assumed constitutive material law and on the magnitude of the required soil parameters. Refer to Appendix D for further information on elasticity theory.

c. Contact Pressure and Deformation Pattern. The shape of the deformation pattern varies depending on flexibility of the foundation and type of soil. Figure 1-3 illustrates the relative distribution of soil contact pressures and displacements on cohesionless and cohesive soil. Linear contact pressure distributions from uniformly applied pressure  $q$  are often assumed for settlement analysis, Figure 1-3c and 1-3d. An applied load  $Q$  may cause an unequal linear soil contact pressure distribution, Figure 1-3e.

(1) Cohesionless soil. Cohesionless soil is often composed of granular or coarse-grained materials with visually detectable particle sizes and with little cohesion or adhesion between particles. These soils have little or no strength when unconfined and little or no cohesion when submerged. Apparent adhesion between particles in cohesionless soil may occur from capillary tension in pore water. Settlement usually occurs rapidly with little long-term consolidation and secondary compression or creep. Time rate effects may become significant in proportion to the silt content such that the silt content may dominate consolidation characteristics.

(a) Uniformly loaded rigid foundations (footings of limited size or footings on cohesionless soil) may cause less soil contact pressure near the edge than near the center, Figure 1-3a, because this soil is pushed aside at the edges due to the reduced confining pressure. This leads to lower strength and lower modulus of elasticity in soil near the edge compared with soil near the center. The parabolic soil contact pressure distribution may be replaced with a saddle-shaped distribution, Figure 1-3b, for rigid footings or mats if the soil pressure does not approach the allowable bearing capacity.

(b) The distortion of a uniformly loaded flexible footing, mat, or embankment on cohesionless soil will be concave downward, Figure 1-3c, because the soil near the center is stressed under higher confining pressure such that the modulus of elasticity of the soil is higher than near the edge.

(c) The theory of elasticity is not applicable to cohesionless soil when the stress or loading increment varies significantly throughout the soil such that an equivalent elastic modulus cannot be assigned. Semi-empirical and numerical techniques have been useful to determine equivalent elastic parameters at points in the soil mass based on stress levels that occur in the soil.

(2) Cohesive soil. Cohesive soil often contains fine-grained materials consisting of silts, clays, and organic material. These soils have significant strength when unconfined and air-dried. Most cohesive soil is relatively impermeable and when loaded deforms similar to gelatin or rubber; i.e., the undrained state. Cohesive soils may include granular materials with bonding agents between particles such as soluble salts or clay aggregates. Wetting of soluble agents bonding granular particles may cause settlement in loose or high void ratio soil. Refer to Section II, Chapter 5, for evaluation of settlement in collapsible soil.

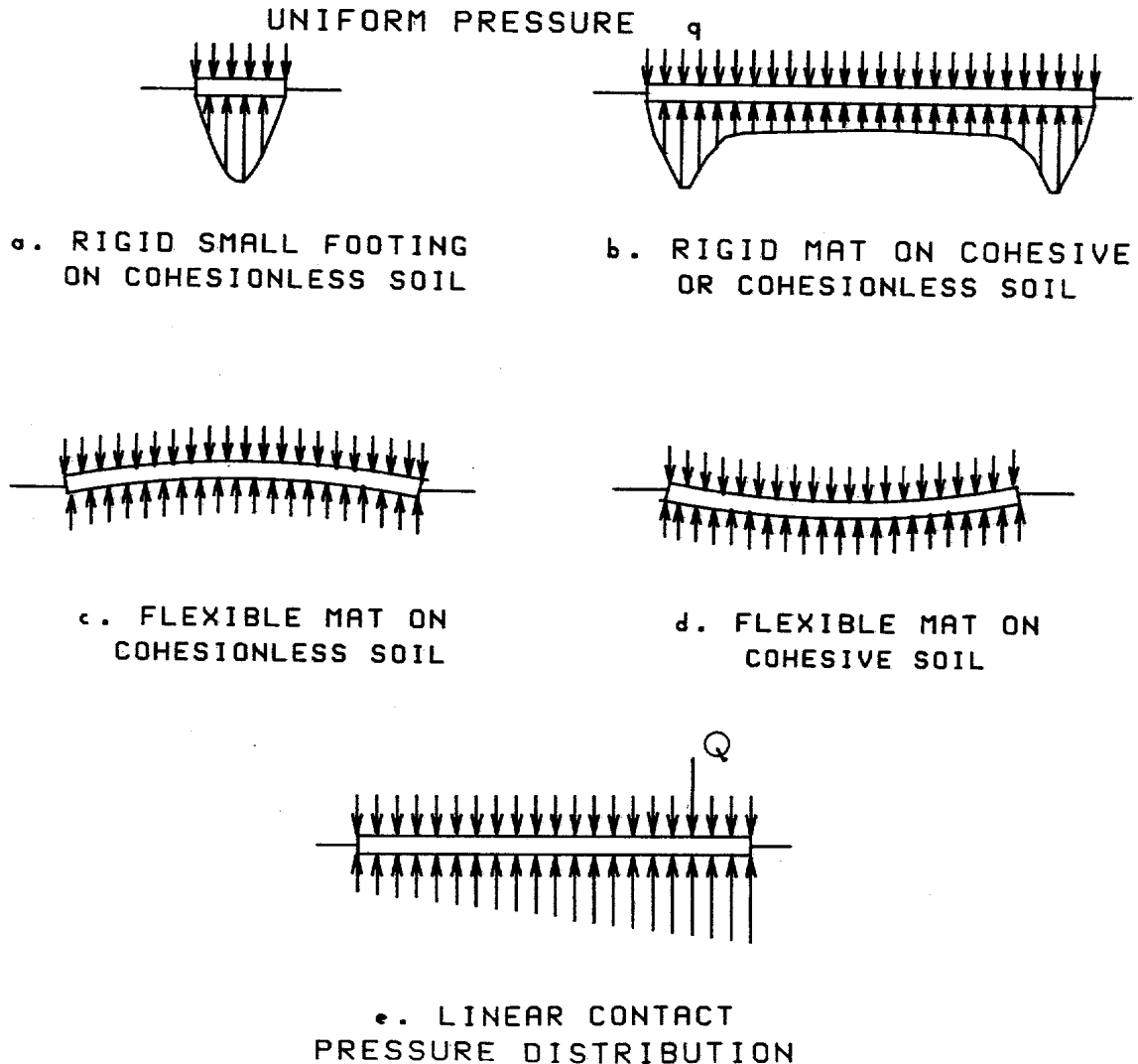


Figure 1-3. Relative distribution of soil contact pressures and displacements of rigid and flexible mats or footings on cohesionless and cohesive soils

(a) A uniform pressure applied to a rigid foundation on cohesive soil, Figure 1-3b, can cause the soil contact pressure to be maximum at the edge and decrease toward the center because additional contact pressure is generated to provide stress that shears the soil around the perimeter.

(b) A uniform pressure applied to a flexible foundation on cohesive soil, Figure 1-3d, causes greater settlement near the center than near the edge because the cumulative stresses are greater near the center as a result of the pressure bulb stress distribution indicated in Figure 1-2. Earth pressure measurements from load cells beneath a stiffening beam supporting a large, but flexible, ribbed mat also indicated large perimeter earth pressures resembling a saddle-shaped pressure distribution similar to Figure 1-3b (item 29).

(c) Elastic theory has been found useful for evaluation of immediate settlement when cohesive soil is subjected to moderate stress increments. The



modulus of elasticity is a function of the soil shear strength and often increases with increasing depth in proportion with the increase in soil shear strength.

(d) Cohesive soil subject to stresses exceeding the maximum past pressure of the soil may settle substantially from primary consolidation and secondary compression and creep.

d. Sources of Stress. Sources of stress in soil occur from soil weight, surface loads, and environmental factors such as desiccation from drought, wetting from rainfall, and changes in depth to groundwater.

(1) Soil weight. Soil strata with different unit weights alter the stress distribution. Any change in total stress results in changes in effective stress and pore pressure. In a saturated soil, any sudden increase in applied total stress results in a corresponding pore pressure increase, Equation 1-1. This increase may cause a flow of water out of the soil deposit, a decrease in pore pressure, and an increase in effective stress. Changes in pore water pressure such as the raising or lowering of water tables also lead to a reduction or increase in effective stress.

(2) Surface loads. Loads applied to the surface of the soil mass increase the stress within the mass. The pressure bulb concept, Figure 1-2, illustrates the change in vertical stress within the soil mass. Placement of a uniform pressure over a foundation with a minimum width much greater than the depth of the soil layer will cause an increase of vertical stress in the soil approximately equal to the applied pressure.

(3) Rules of thumb for static loads. Preliminary settlement analyses are sometimes performed before the structural engineer and architect are able to furnish the design load conditions.

(a) Some rules of thumb for line and column loads for buildings described in Table 1-2 are based on a survey of some engineering firms. Tall multistory structures may have column loads exceeding 1000 tons. Column spacings are often 20 to 25 ft or more. The average pressure applied per story of a building often varies from 0.1 to 0.2 tsf. Refer to TM 5-809-1/AFM 88-3, Chapter 1, "Load Assumptions for Buildings", for estimating unfactored structural loads.

(b) Vertical pressures from embankments may be estimated from the unit wet weight times height of the fill.

(c) Vertical pressures from locks, dams, and retaining walls may be estimated by dividing the structure into vertical sections of constant height and evaluating the unit weight times the height of each section.

Table 1-2

Some Typical Loads on Building Foundations

| <u>Structure</u>         | <u>Line Load, tons/ft</u> | <u>Column Load, tons</u> |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| Apartments               | 0.5 to 1                  | 30                       |
| Individual housing       | 0.5 to 1                  | < 5                      |
| Warehouses               | 1 to 2                    | 50                       |
| Retail Spaces            | 1 to 2                    | 40                       |
| Two-story buildings      | 1 to 2                    | 40                       |
| Multistory buildings     | 2 to 5                    | 100                      |
| Schools                  | 1 to 3                    | 50                       |
| Administration buildings | 1 to 3                    | 50                       |
| Industrial facilities    |                           | 50                       |

CHAPTER 2  
LIMITATIONS OF SETTLEMENT

2-1. General. Significant aspects of settlement from static and dynamic loads are total and differential settlement. Total settlement is the magnitude of downward movement. Differential settlement is the difference in vertical movement between various locations of the structure and distorts the structure. Conditions that cause settlement are described in Table 1-1. Limitations to total and differential settlement depend on the function and type of structure.

2-2. Total Settlement. Many structures can tolerate substantial downward movement or settlement without cracking, Table 2-1; however, total settlement should not exceed 2 inches for most facilities. A typical specification of total settlement for commercial buildings is 1 inch (item 35). Structures such as solid reinforced concrete foundations supporting smokestacks, silos, and towers can tolerate larger settlements up to 1 ft.

Table 2-1

Maximum Allowable Average Settlement of Some Structures  
(Data from Item 53)

| <u>Type of Structure</u>  | <u>Settlement, inches</u> |
|---|---------------------------|
| Plain brick walls   |                           |
| Length/Height $\geq$ 2.5  | 3                         |
| Length/Height $\leq$ 1.5  | 4                         |
| Framed structure  | 4                         |
| Reinforced brick walls and brick walls<br>with reinforced concrete                  | 6                         |
| Solid reinforced concrete foundations<br>supporting smokestacks, silos, towers, etc | 12                        |

Some limitations of total settlement are as follows:

a. Utilities. Total settlement of permanent facilities can harm or sever connections to outside utilities such as water, natural gas, and sewer lines. Water and sewer lines may leak contributing to localized wetting of the soil profile and aggravating differential displacement. Leaking gas from breaks caused by settlement can lead to explosions.

b. Drainage. Total settlement reduces or interferes with drainage of surface water from permanent facilities, contributes to wetting of the soil profile with additional differential movement, and may cause the facility to become temporarily inaccessible.

c. Serviceability. Relative movement between the facility and surrounding soil may interfere with serviceability of entry ways.

d. Freeboard. Total settlement of embankments, levees and dams reduces freeboard and volume of water that may be retained. The potential for flooding is greater during periods of heavy rainfall. Such settlement also alters the grade of culverts placed under roadway embankments.

2-3. Differential Settlement. Differential settlement, which causes distortion and damages in structures, is a function of the uniformity of the soil, stiffness of the structure, stiffness of the soil, and distribution of loads within the structure. Limitations to differential settlement depend on the application. Differential settlements should not usually exceed 1/2 inch in buildings, otherwise cracking and structural damage may occur. Differential movements between monoliths of dams should not usually exceed 2 inches, otherwise leakage may become a problem. Embankments, dams, one or two story facilities, and multistory structures with flexible framing systems are sufficiently flexible such that their stiffness often need not be considered in settlement analysis. Pavements may be assumed to be completely flexible.

a. Types of Damages. Differential settlement may lead to tilting that can interfere with adjacent structures and disrupt the performance of machinery and people. Differential settlement can cause cracking in the structure, distorted and jammed doors and windows, uneven floors and stairways, and other damages to houses and buildings. Differential movement may lead to misalignment of monoliths and reduce the efficiency of waterstops. Refer to Chapter 2, EM 1110-2-2102, for guidance on selection of waterstops. Widespread cracking can impair the structural integrity and lead to collapse of the structure, particularly during earthquakes. The height of a wall for a building that can be constructed on a beam or foundation without cracking is related to the deflection/span length  $\Delta/L$  ratio and the angular distortion  $\beta$  described below.

b. Deflection Ratio. The deflection ratio  $\Delta/L$  is a measure of the maximum differential movement  $\Delta$  in the span length  $L$ , Figure 2-1. The span length may be between two adjacent columns,  $L_{SAG}$  or  $L_{HOG}$ , Figure 2-1a.

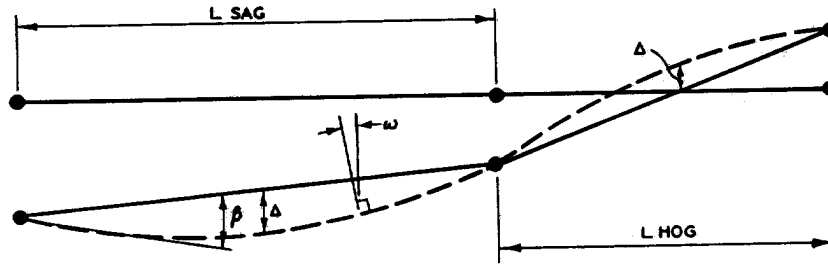
(1) Table 2-2 provides limiting observed deflection ratios for some buildings.

(2) Design  $\Delta/L$  ratios are often greater than 1/600, but the stiffness contributed by the components of an assembled brick structure, for example, helps maintain actual differential displacement/span length ratios near those required for brick buildings, Table 2-2, to avoid cracking.

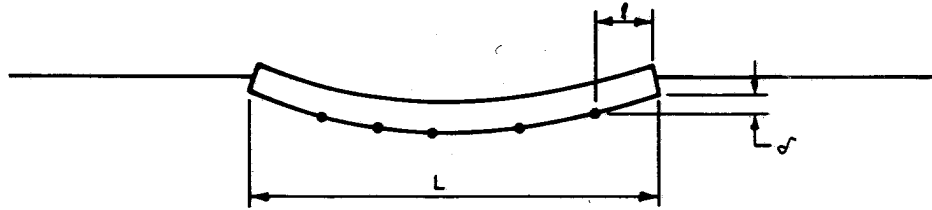
(3) Circular steel tanks can tolerate  $\Delta/L$  ratios greater than 1/200 depending on the settlement shape (item 13).

c. Angular Distortion. Angular distortion  $\beta = \delta/\ell$  is a measure of Differential movement  $\delta$  between two adjacent points separated by the distance  $\ell$ , Figure 2-1.

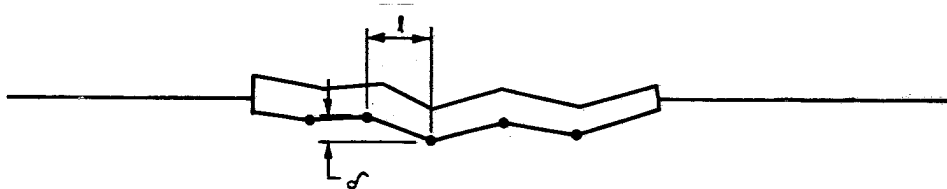
(1) Initiation of damage. Table 2-3 illustrates limits to angular distortion for various types of structures without cracking based on field surveys of damage.



a. COMBINATION  $L_{SAG}$  AND  $L_{HOG}$



b. REGULAR SETTLEMENT



c. IRREGULAR SETTLEMENT

Figure 2-1. Schematic illustration of angular distortion  $\beta = \delta/\ell$  and deflection ratio  $\Delta/L$  for settling (sagging) and heaving (hogging) profiles

Table 2-2

Some Limiting Deflection Ratios  
(After Items 17, 53, 65)

| Structure   | Deflection Ratio, $\Delta/L$ |              |
|---|------------------------------|--------------|
|   | Sand and Hard Clay           | Plastic Clay |
| Buildings with plain brick walls                              |                              |              |
| Length/Height $\geq 3$  | 1/3333                       | 1/2500       |
| Length/Height $\geq 5$  | 1/2000                       | 1/1500       |
| One story mills; between columns for brick clad column frames | 1/1000                       | 1/1000       |
| Steel and concrete frame                                      | 1/500                        | 1/500        |

(a) A safe limit for no cracking in properly designed and constructed steel or reinforced concrete frame structures is angular distortion  $\beta = 1/500$ . Cracking should be anticipated when  $\beta$  exceeds  $1/300$ . Considerable cracking in panels and brick walls and structural damage is expected when  $\beta$  is less than  $1/150$ .

(b) Tilting can be observed if  $\omega > 1/250$  and must be limited to clear adjacent buildings, particularly in high winds. The angle of tilt is indicated by  $\omega$ , Figure 2-1a.

(c) Slower rates of settlement increase the ability of structures to resist cracking.

(d) Unreinforced concrete masonry unit construction is notably brittle and cracks at relatively low angular distortion values as shown in Table 2-3. Such structures must be properly detailed and constructed to provide acceptable service at sites with even moderate differential movement potential. Consideration should be given to using a less crack-susceptible material at expansive soil sites and any other site having a significant differential movement potential.

(2) Influence of architecture. Facades, siding, and other architectural finishes are usually placed after a portion of the settlement has occurred. Most settlement, for example, may have already occurred for facilities on cohesionless soil; whereas, very little settlement may have occurred for facilities on compressible, cohesive soil when the facade is to be placed.

(a) Larger angular distortions than those shown in Table 2-3 can be accommodated if some of the settlement has occurred before installation of architectural finishes.

(b) The allowable angular distortion of the structure, Table 2-3, should be greater than the estimated maximum angular distortion of the foundation, Table 2-4, to avoid distress in the structure.

d. Estimation of the Maximum Angular Distortion. The maximum angular distortion for uniformly loaded structures on laterally uniform cohesive soil profiles occurs at the corner, Figure 2-1b. The maximum angular distortion may be estimated from the lateral distribution of calculated settlement. The maximum angular distortion for structures on sand, compacted fill, and stiff clay often occurs anywhere on the foundation because the settlement profile is usually erratic, Figure 2-1c.

(1) The maximum angular distortion at a corner of a foundation shaped in a circular arc on a uniformly loaded cohesive soil for the Boussinesq stress distribution, Appendix C, is approximately

$$\beta_{\max} = \frac{3 \cdot \rho_{\max}}{(N_{\text{col}} - 1) \cdot \ell} \quad (2-1)$$

where

$\rho_{\max}$  = maximum settlement in center of mat, ft  
 $N_{\text{col}}$  = number of columns in a diagonal line on the foundation  
 $\ell$  = distance between adjacent columns on the diagonal line, ft

Table 2-3

Limiting Angular Distortions to Avoid  
Potential Damages (Data from Items 53, 65, TM 5-818-1)

| Situation  | <u>Length</u><br><u>Height</u> | Allowable Angular<br>Distortion, $\beta = \delta/\ell$ |
|--|--------------------------------|--|
| Hogging of unreinforced load-bearing walls   |                                | 1/2000   |
| Load bearing brick, tile, or concrete<br>block walls   | $\geq 5$<br>$\leq 3$           | 1/1250<br>1/2500                                       |
| Sagging of unreinforced load-bearing walls   |                                | 1/1000   |
| Machinery sensitive to settlement  |                                | 1/750  |
| Frames with diagonals  |                                | 1/600  |
| No cracking in buildings; tilt of bridge<br>abutments; tall slender structures<br>such as stacks, silos, and water<br>tanks on a rigid mat                       |                                | 1/500  |
| Steel or reinforced concrete frame with<br>brick, block, plaster or stucco<br>finish   | $\geq 5$<br>$\leq 3$           | 1/500<br>1/1000  |
| Circular steel tanks on flexible base<br>with floating top; steel or<br>reinforced concrete frames with<br>insensitive finish such as dry wall,<br>glass, panels |                                | 1/300 - 1/500  |
| Cracking in panel walls; problems with<br>overhead cranes  |                                | 1/300  |
| Tilting of high rigid buildings  |                                | 1/250  |
| Structural damage in buildings; flexible<br>brick walls with length/height ratio $> 4$   |                                | 1/150  |
| Circular steel tanks on flexible base with<br>fixed top; steel framing with flexible<br>siding   |                                | 1/125  |

Table 2-4

Empirical Correlations Between Maximum Distortion ( $\Delta$ )  
and Angular Distortion  $\beta$  (From Table 5-3, TM 5-818-1)

| Soil        | Foundation       | Approximate $\beta$ for<br>$\Delta = 1$ inch* |
|-------------|------------------|---|
| Sand        | Mats             | 1/750   |
|             | Spread footings  | 1/600   |
| Varved silt | Rectangular mats | 1/1000 to 1/2000                              |
|             | Square mats      | 1/2000 to 1/3000                              |
|             | Spread footings  | 1/600   |
| Clay        | Mats             | 1/1250  |
|             | Spread footings  | 1/1000  |

\*  $\beta$  increases roughly in proportion with  $\Delta$ . For  $\Delta = 2$  inches,  $\beta$  is about twice as large as those shown; for  $\Delta = 3$  inches, three times as large, etc.

The maximum settlement may be calculated from loads on soil beneath the center of the foundation using methodology of Chapter 3.

(2) When the potential for soil heave and nonuniform soil wetting exists, the maximum angular distortion may be the sum of the maximum settlement  $\rho_{\max}$  without soil wetting and maximum potential heave  $S_{\max}$  of wetted soil divided by the minimum distance between  $\rho_{\max}$  and  $S_{\max}$ .  $S_{\max}$  may occur beneath the most lightly loaded part of the foundation such as the midpoint between diagonal columns.  $\rho_{\max}$  may occur beneath the most heavily loaded part of the structure.  $\rho_{\max}$  will normally only be the immediate elastic settlement  $\rho_i$ ; consolidation is not expected in a soil with potential for heave in situ. Nonuniform soil wetting may be caused by leaking water, sewer, and drain lines.

(3) When the potential for soil heave and uniform wetting occurs, the maximum angular distortion will be the difference between the maximum and minimum soil heave divided by the minimum distance between these locations. The maximum and minimum heave may occur beneath the most lightly and heavily loaded parts of the structure, respectively. Uniform wetting may occur following construction of the foundation through elimination of evapotranspiration from the ground surface.

(4) When the potential for soil collapse exists on wetting of the subgrade, the maximum angular distortion will be the difference between the maximum settlement of the collapsible soil  $\rho_{\text{col}}$  and  $\rho_{\min}$  divided by the distance between these points or adjacent columns.  $\rho_{\min}$  may be the immediate settlement assuming collapse does not occur (no soil wetting) beneath a point. See Chapter 5 for further details on heaving and collapsing soil and Sections I and II of Chapter 3 for details on calculating immediate settlement.



e. Correlations between Deflection Ratio and Angular Distortion. The deflection ratio  $\Delta/L$  may be estimated from the maximum angular distortion or slope at the support by (item 65)

$$\frac{\Delta}{L} = \frac{\beta}{3} \cdot \left[ \frac{1 + 3.9 (H_w/L)^2}{1 + 2.6 (H_w/L)^2} \right] \quad (2-2)$$

where

- $\Delta$  = differential displacement, ft
- $L$  = span length or length between columns, ft
- $H_w$  = wall height, ft
- $\beta$  = angular distortion

The deflection ratio  $\Delta/L$  is approximately 1/3 of the angular distortion  $\beta$  for short, long structures or  $L/H_w$  greater than 3.

(1) Table 2-4 illustrates empirical correlations between the maximum deflection  $\Delta$  and angular distortion  $\beta$  for uniformly loaded mats and spread footings on homogeneous sands, silts, and clays.

(2) Figure 2-2 illustrates a relationship between the allowable differential settlement  $\Delta_a$ , column spacing  $L$ , and the angular distortion  $\beta$ .

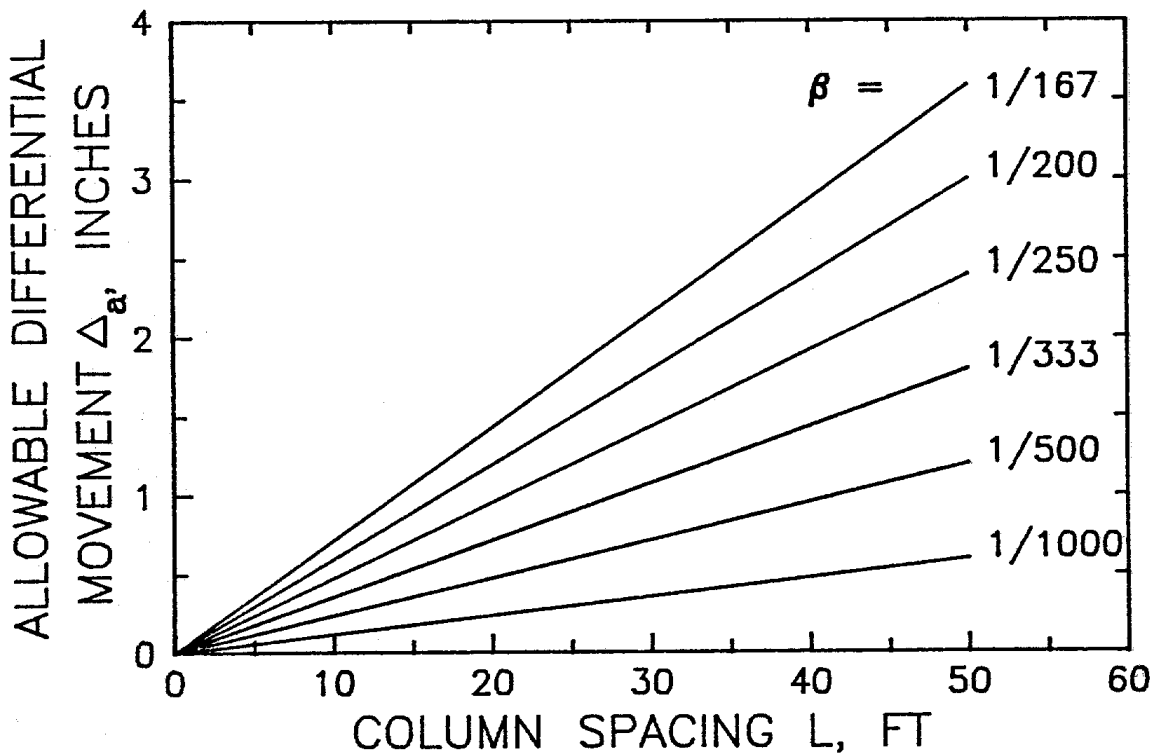


Figure 2-2. Allowable differential movement for buildings  
(After NavFac DM-7.1)

CHAPTER 3  
EVALUATION OF SETTLEMENT FOR STATIC LOADS

3-1. General. This chapter presents the evaluation of immediate settlement in cohesionless and cohesive soils and consolidation settlement of soil for static loads. Settlement is denoted as a positive value to be consistent with standard practice.

3-2. Components of Settlement. Total settlement  $\rho$  in feet, which is the response of stress applied to the soil, may be calculated as the sum of three components

$$\rho = \rho_i + \rho_c + \rho_s \quad (3-1)$$

where

$\rho_i$  = immediate or distortion settlement, ft  
 $\rho_c$  = primary consolidation settlement, ft  
 $\rho_s$  = secondary compression settlement, ft

Primary consolidation and secondary compression settlements are usually small if the effective stress in the foundation soil applied by the structure is less than the maximum effective past pressure of the soil, paragraph 1-5a.

a. Immediate Settlement. Immediate settlement  $\rho_i$  is the change in shape or distortion of the soil caused by the applied stress.

(1) Calculation of immediate settlement in cohesionless soil is complicated by a nonlinear stiffness that depends on the state of stress. Empirical and semi-empirical methods for calculating immediate settlement in cohesionless soils are described in Section I.

(2) Immediate settlement in cohesive soil may be estimated using elastic theory, particularly for saturated clays, clay shales, and most rocks. Methods for calculating immediate settlement in cohesive soil are described in Section II.

b. Primary Consolidation Settlement. Primary consolidation settlement  $\rho_c$  occurs in cohesive or compressible soil during dissipation of excess pore fluid pressure, and it is controlled by the gradual expulsion of fluid from voids in the soil leading to the associated compression of the soil skeleton. Excess pore pressure is pressure that exceeds the hydrostatic fluid pressure. The hydrostatic fluid pressure is the product of the unit weight of water and the difference in elevation between the given point and elevation of free water (phreatic surface). The pore fluid is normally water with some dissolved salts. The opposite of consolidation settlement (soil heave) may occur if the excess pore water pressure is initially negative and approaches zero following absorption and adsorption of available fluid.

(1) Primary consolidation settlement is normally insignificant in cohesionless soil and occurs rapidly because these soils have relatively large permeabilities.

(2) Primary consolidation takes substantial time in cohesive soils because they have relatively low permeabilities. Time for consolidation

increases with thickness of the soil layer squared and is inversely related to the coefficient of permeability of the soil. Consolidation settlement determined from results of one-dimensional consolidation tests include some immediate settlement  $\rho_i$ . Methods for calculating primary consolidation settlement are described in Section III.

c. Secondary Compression Settlement. Secondary compression settlement is a form of soil creep which is largely controlled by the rate at which the skeleton of compressible soils, particularly clays, silts, and peats, can yield and compress. Secondary compression is often conveniently identified to follow primary consolidation when excess pore fluid pressure can no longer be measured; however, both processes may occur simultaneously. Methods for calculating secondary compression settlement are described in Section IV.

### Section I. Immediate Settlement of Cohesionless Soil For Static Loads

3-3. Description of Methods. Settlement in cohesionless soil (see paragraph 1-5c for definition) is normally small and occurs quickly with little additional long-term compression. Six methods described below for estimating settlement in cohesionless soil are based on data from field tests (i.e., Standard Penetration Test (SPT), Cone Penetration Test (CPT), Dilatometer Test (DMT) and Pressuremeter Test (PMT). Undisturbed samples of cohesionless soil are normally not obtainable for laboratory tests. The first four empirical and semi-empirical methods - Alpan, Schultze and Sherif, Modified Terzaghi and Peck, and Schmertmann approximations - were shown to provide estimates from about 1/4 to 2 times the measured settlement for 90 percent confidence based on the results of a statistical analysis (item 27). Penetration tests may not be capable of sensing effects of prestress or overconsolidation and can underestimate the stiffness that may lead to overestimated settlements (item 37).

a. Alpan Approximation. This procedure estimates settlement from a correlation of (SPT) data with settlement of a 1-ft square loading plate. The settlement of a footing of width B in feet is (item 1)

$$\rho_i = m' \cdot \left[ \frac{2B}{1+B} \right]^2 \cdot \frac{\alpha_o}{12} \cdot q \quad (3-2)$$

where

- $\rho_i$  = immediate settlement, ft
- $m'$  = shape factor,  $(L/B)^{0.39}$
- L = length of footing, ft
- B = width of footing, ft
- $\alpha_o$  = parameter from Figure 3-1a using an adjusted blowcount N' from Figure 3-1b, inches/tsf
- q = average pressure applied by footing on soil, tsf

(1) Blowcount N. N is the average blowcount per foot in the stratum, number of blows of a 140-pound hammer falling 30 inches to drive a standard sampler (1.42" I. D., 2.00" O. D.) one foot. The sampler is driven 18 inches and blows counted the last 12 inches. The blowcount should be determined by ASTM Standard Test Method D 1586. Prior to 1980 the efficiency of the hammer was not well recognized as influencing the blowcount and was usually not considered in analysis.

(a) The measured blowcounts should be converted to 60 percent of input energy  $N_{60}$  by

$$N_{60} = N_m \cdot \frac{ER_i}{60} \quad (3-3a)$$

$$ER_i = \frac{E_i}{E^*} \quad (3-3b)$$

where

$N_{60}$  = blowcounts corrected to 60 percent energy ratio  
 $N_m$  = blowcounts measured with available energy  $E_i$   
 $ER_i$  = measured energy ratio for the drill rig and hammer system  
 $E^*$  = theoretical SPT energy applied by a 140-pound hammer falling freely 30 inches, 4200 inch-pound

(b) The converted blowcount  $N_{60}$  is entered in Figure 3-1a with the calculated effective overburden pressure  $\sigma'_o$  at the base of the footing to estimate the relative density  $D_r$ . The relative density is adjusted to 100 percent using the Terzaghi-Peck curve and the adjusted blow count  $N'$  read for  $D_r = 100$  percent. For example, if  $\sigma'_o = 0.3$  tsf and  $N = 10$ , then the relative density  $D_r = 67$  percent, Figure 3-1a. The adjusted  $N'$  is determined as 31 for  $D_r = 100$  percent.

(2) Parameter  $\alpha_o$ . The adjusted blowcount is entered in Figure 3-1b to determine  $\alpha_o$ .  $\alpha_o = 0.1$  inch/tsf for adjusted  $N' = 31$ .

b. Schultze and Sherif Approximation. This procedure estimates settlement from the blowcount of SPT results based on 48 field cases (item 60)

$$\rho_i = \frac{f \cdot q \cdot \sqrt{B}}{N_{ave}^{0.87} \cdot (1 + 0.4 \frac{D}{B})} \quad (3-4)$$

where

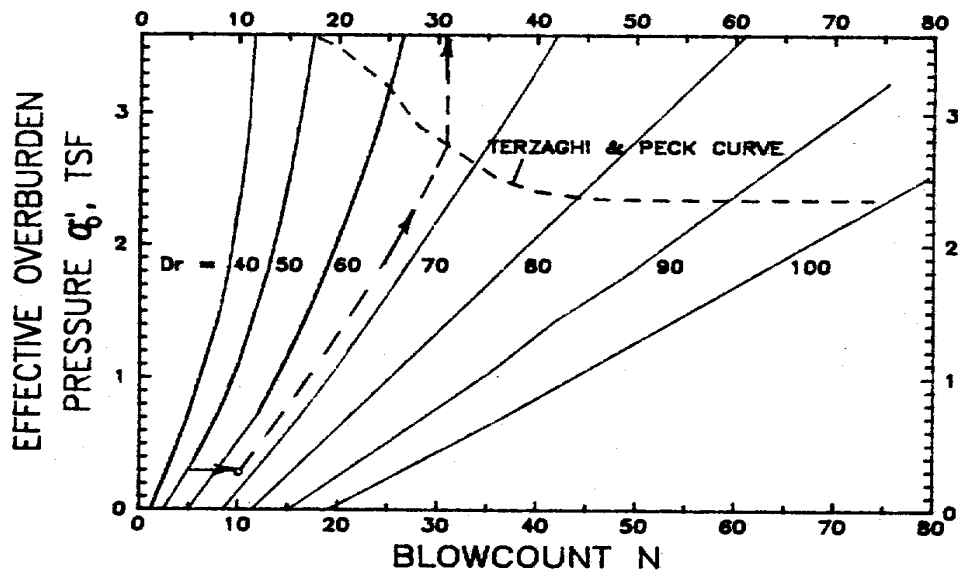
$f$  = influence factor from elasticity methods for isotropic half space, Figure 3-2  
 $H$  = depth of stratum below footing to a rigid base, ft  
 $D$  = depth of embedment, ft  
 $N_{ave}$  = average blowcount/ft in depth  $H$

The depth to the rigid base  $H$  should be  $\leq 2B$ .  $N_{ave}$  is based on measured blowcounts adjusted to  $N_{60}$  by Equations 3-3.

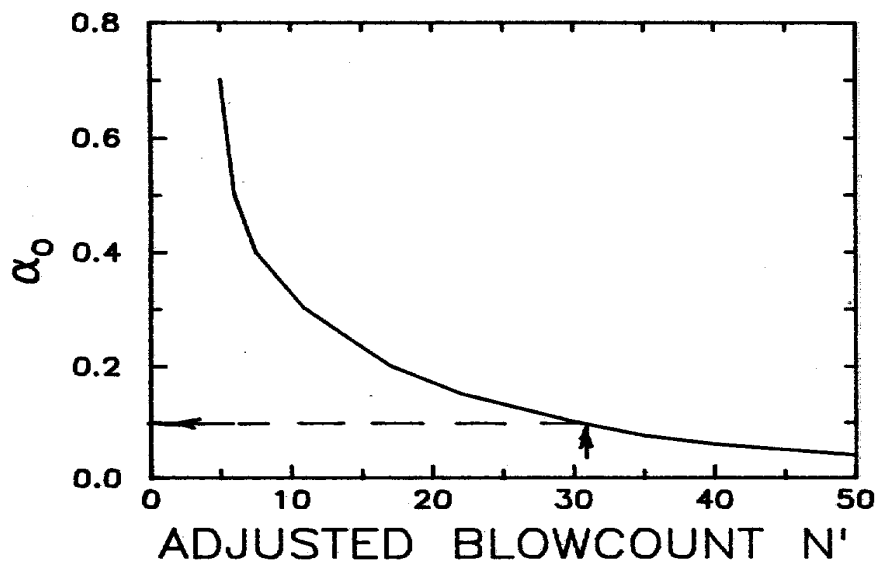
c. Modified Terzaghi and Peck Approximation. This procedure is a modification of the original Terzaghi and Peck approach to consider overburden pressure and water table (items 50,51)

$$\rho_i = \frac{q}{18 \cdot q_1} \quad (3-5)$$

where  $q_1$  = soil pressure from Figure 3-3a using corrected blowcount  $N'$  and the ratio of embedment depth  $D$  to footing width  $B$ , tsf. The corrected blowcount  $N'$  is found from



a. ADJUSTED BLOWCOUNT FROM N AND  $\sigma'_0$



b. PARAMETER  $\alpha_0$  FROM ADJUSTED BLOWCOUNT

Figure 3-1. Chart to apply Alpan's procedure (data from item 1)

$$N' = N \cdot C_w \cdot C_n \quad (3-6)$$

where

- N = average blowcount per foot in the sand
- $C_w$  = correction for water table depth
- $C_n$  = correction for overburden pressure, Figure 3-3b

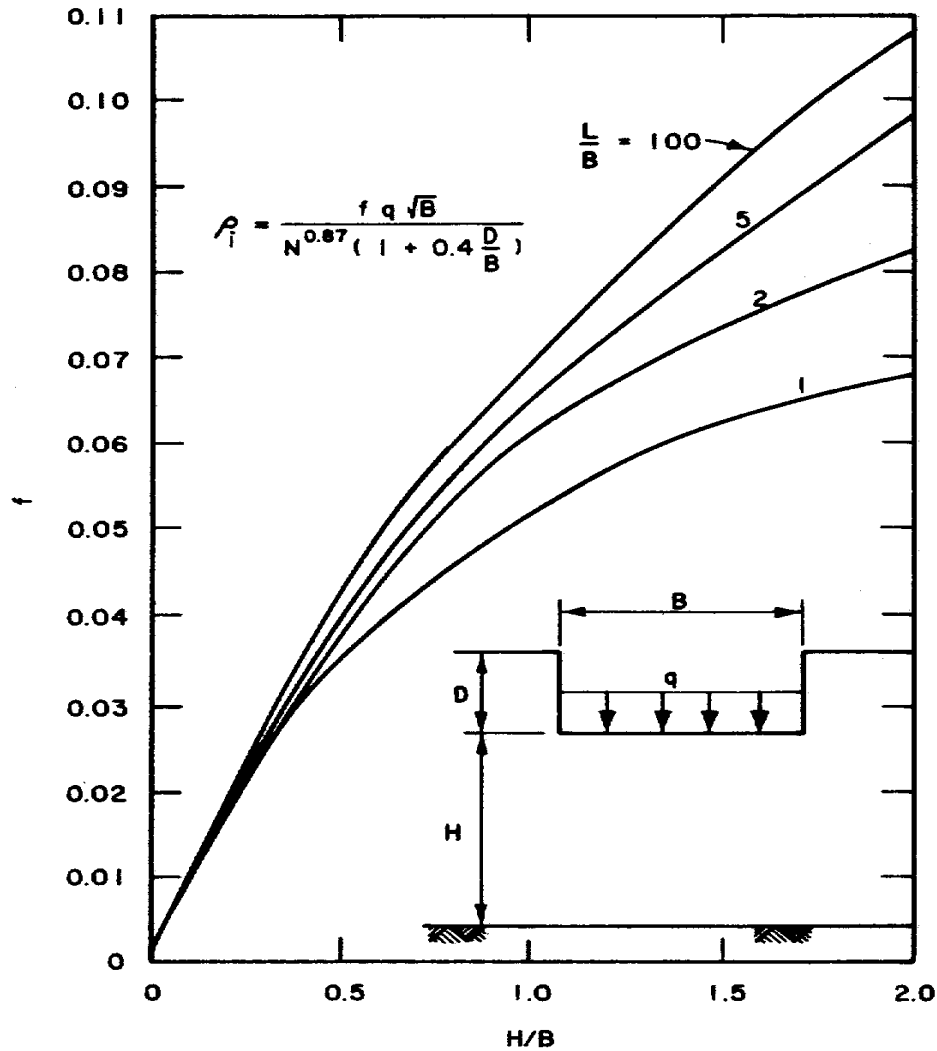


Figure 3-2. Settlement from the standard penetration test  
(Data from item 60)

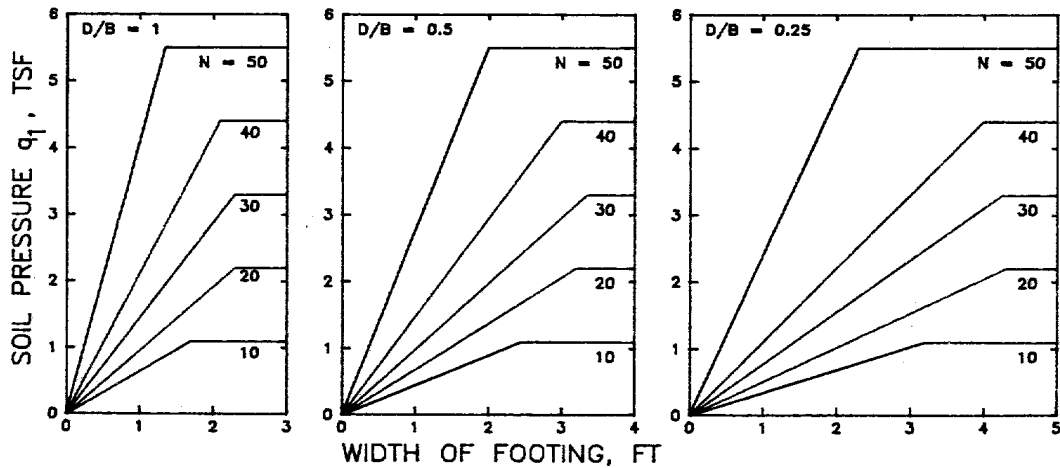
Equation 3-5 calculates settlements 2/3 of the Terzaghi and Peck method (item 51) as recommended by Peck and Bazarra (item 50).

(1) Water table correction. The correction  $C_w$  is given by

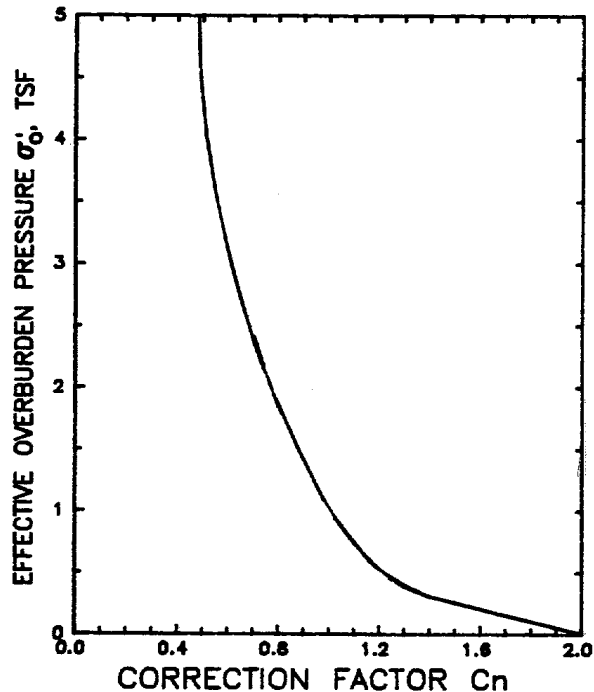
$$C_w = 0.5 + 0.5 \cdot \frac{D_w}{D + B} \quad (3-7)$$

where  $D_w$  = depth to groundwater level, ft. The correction factor  $C_w = 0.5$  for a groundwater level at the ground surface. The correction factor is 1 if the sand is dry or if the groundwater level exceeds the depth  $D + B$  below the ground surface.

(2) Overburden pressure correction. The correction factor  $C_n$  is found from Figure 3-3b as a function of the effective vertical overburden pressure  $\sigma'_0$ .



a. EVALUATION OF SOIL PRESSURE  $q_1$  FROM CORRECTED BLOWCOUNT  $N'$  AND EMBEDMENT DEPTH/FOOTING WIDTH RATIO  $D/B$



b. CORRECTION  $C_n$  FOR EFFECTIVE OVERBURDEN PRESSURE  $\sigma'_0$

Figure 3-3. Charts for Modified Terzaghi and Peck Approximation. Reprinted by permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. from Foundation Engineering, 2nd Edition, Copyright © 1974 by R. B. Peck, W. E. Hanson, and T. H. Thornburn, pp 309, 312

d. Schmertmann Approximation. This procedure provides settlement compatible with field measurements in many different areas. The analysis assumes that the distribution of vertical strain is compatible with a linear elastic half space subjected to a uniform pressure (item 55)

$$\rho_i = C_1 \cdot C_t \cdot \Delta p \cdot \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{\Delta z_i}{E_{si}} \cdot Izi \quad (3-8)$$

where

- $C_1$  = correction to account for strain relief from embedment,  
 $1 - 0.5\sigma'_{od}/\Delta p \geq 0.5$   
 $\sigma'_{od}$  = effective vertical overburden pressure at bottom of footing or  
depth D , tsf  
 $\Delta p$  = net applied footing pressure, q -  $\sigma'_{od}$  , tsf  
C = correction for time dependent increase in settlement,  
 $1 + 0.2 \cdot \log_{10}(t/0.1)$   
t = time, years  
 $E_{si}$  = elastic modulus of soil layer i , tsf  
 $\Delta z_i$  = depth increment i , 0.2B, ft  
Izi = influence factor of soil layer i, Figure 3-4

Settlement may be calculated with the assistance of the calculation sheet, Figure 3-5. The time-dependent increase in settlement is related with creep and secondary compression as observed in clays.

(1) Influence factor. The influence factor Iz is based on approximations of strain distributions for square or axisymmetric footings and for infinitely long or plane strain footings observed in cohesionless soil, which are similar to an elastic medium such as the Boussinesq distribution, Figure 1-2. The peak value of the influence factor Izp in Figure 3-4 is (item 59)

$$Izp = 0.5 + 0.1 \left[ \frac{\Delta p}{\sigma'_{Izp}} \right]^{1/2} \quad (3-9a)$$

$$\text{Axisymmetric:} \quad \sigma'_{Izp} = 0.5 \cdot B \cdot \gamma' + D \cdot \gamma' \quad (3-9b)$$

$L/B = 1$

$$\text{Plane Strain:} \quad \sigma'_{Izp} = B \cdot \gamma' + D \cdot \gamma' \quad (3-9c)$$

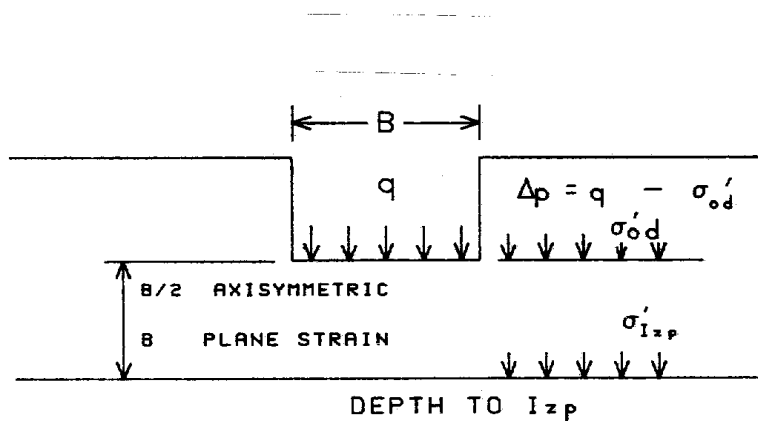
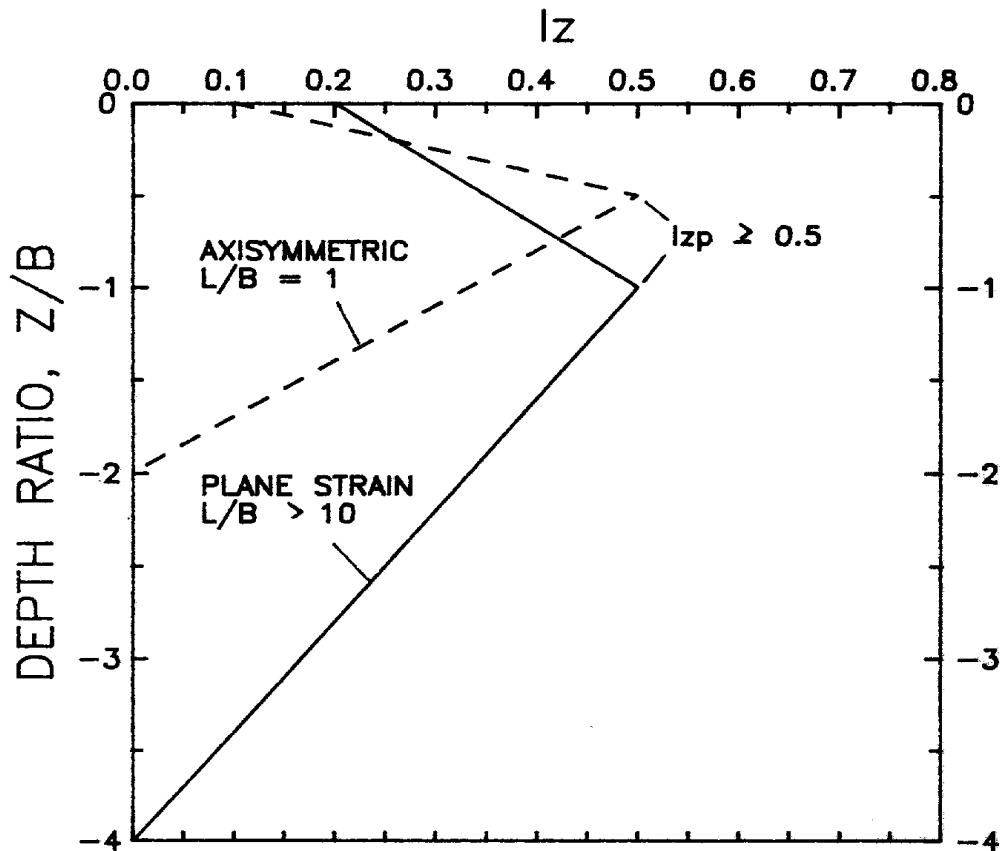
$L/B \geq 10$

where

- $\sigma'_{Izp}$  = effective overburden pressure at the depth of Izp , tsf  
 $\gamma'$  = effective unit weight (wet soil unit weight  $\gamma$  less unit weight of water) in units of ton/cubic foot.  
D = excavated or embeded depth, ft

The parameter  $\sigma'_{Izp}$  may be assumed to vary linearly between Equations 3-9b and 3-9c for L/B between 1 and 10 . Iz may be assumed to vary linearly between 0.1 and 0.2 on the Iz axis at the ground surface for L/B between 1 and 10 and Z/B may be assumed to vary linearly between 2 and 4 on the Z/B axis for L/B between 1 and 10 .





- Z = DEPTH BELOW FOOTING BOTTOM, FT
- B = FOOTING WIDTH, FT
- Iz = DEPTH INFLUENCE FACTOR
- Izp = PEAK DEPTH INFLUENCE FACTOR

Figure 3-4. Recommended strain influence factors for Schmertmann's Approximation. Reprinted with permission of the American Society of Civil Engineers from the Journal of the Geotechnical Engineering Division, Vol 104, 1978, "Improved Strain Influence Factor diagram", by J. M. Schmertmann, J. P. Hartman, and P. R. Brown, p 1134

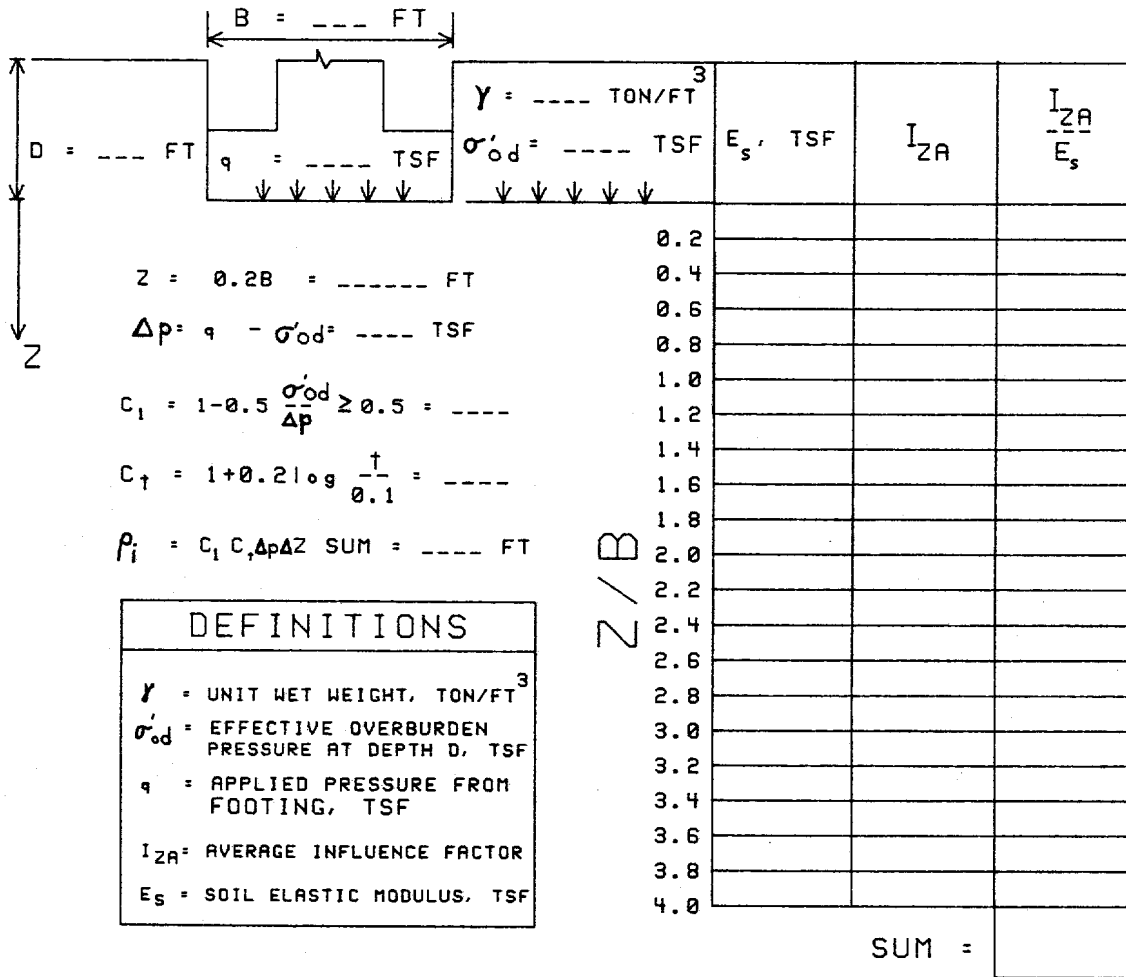


Figure 3-5. Settlement calculation sheet for cohesionless soil using Schmertmann's method

(2) Elastic modulus. Elastic modulus  $E_{si}$  may be estimated from results of the mechanical (Dutch Static) Cone Penetration Test (CPT) (item 59)

Axisymmetric Footings:  $E_{si} = 2.5 \cdot q_c$  (3-10a)  
 $L/B = 1$

Plane Strain Footings:  $E_{si} = 3.5 \cdot q_c$  (3-10b)  
 $L/B \geq 10$

where  $q_c$  is the cone tip bearing resistance in units of tsf.  $E_{si}$  may be assumed to vary linearly between Equations 3-10a and 3-10b for  $L/B$  between 1 and 10. SPT data may also be converted to Dutch cone bearing capacity by the correlations in Table 3-1. The estimated average elastic modulus of each depth increment may be plotted in the  $E_s$  column of Figure 3-5.

Table 3-1

Correlations Between Dutch Cone Tip Resistance  $q_c$   
and Blow Count  $N$  from the SPT (Data from Item 55)

| Soil   | $q_c/N^*$ |
|--|-----------|
| Silts, sandy silts, slightly cohesive silt-sand      | 2         |
| Clean, fine to medium sands and slightly silty sands | 3.5       |
| Coarse sands and sands with little gravel            | 5         |
| Sandy gravel and gravel                              | 6         |

\*Units of  $q_c$  are in tsf and  $N$  in blows/ft

(3) Calculation of settlement.  $Iz/E_s$  is computed for each depth increment  $z/B$  and added to obtain  $SUM$ , Figure 3-5. Immediate settlement of the soil profile may then be calculated as shown on Figure 3-5. If a rigid base lies within  $z = 2B$ , then settlement may be calculated as shown down to the rigid base.

e. Burland and Burbidge Approximation. This procedure based on 200 SPT case studies predicts settlements less than most of these methods (item 4).

(1) Immediate settlement of sand and gravel deposits may be estimated by

$$\Delta P'_{ave} > \sigma'_p: \quad \rho_i = f_s \cdot f_i \cdot \left[ (\Delta P'_{ave} - \frac{2}{3} \sigma'_p) \cdot B^{0.7} \cdot I_c \right] \quad (3-11a)$$

$$\Delta P'_{ave} < \sigma'_p: \quad \rho_i = f_s \cdot f_i \cdot \Delta P'_{ave} \cdot \frac{I_c}{3} \quad (3-11b)$$

where

- $f_s$  = shape correction factor,  $[(1.25 \cdot L/B)/(L/B + 0.25)]^2$
- $f_i$  = layer thickness correction factor,  $H/z_1 \cdot (2 - H/z_1)$
- $\Delta P'_{ave}$  = average effective bearing pressure,  $q_{oave} + \sigma'_{oave}$ , tsf
- $q_{oave}$  = average pressure in stratum from foundation load, tsf
- $\sigma'_{oave}$  = average effective overburden pressure in stratum  $H$ , tsf
- $\sigma'_p$  = maximum effective past pressure, tsf
- $H$  = thickness of layer, ft
- $z_1$  = depth of influence of loaded area, ft
- $I_c$  = compressibility influence factor,  $\approx 0.23/(N_{ave}^{1.4})$  with coefficient of correlation 0.848
- $N_{ave}$  = average SPT blowcount over depth influenced by loaded area

(a) The depth of influence  $z_1$  is taken as the depth at which the settlement is 25 percent of the surface settlement. This depth in feet may be

approximated by  $1.35B^{0.75}$  where  $N_{ave}$  increases or is constant with depth.  $z_i$  is taken as  $2B$  where  $N_{ave}$  shows a consistent decrease with depth.

(b)  $N_{ave}$  is the arithmetic mean of the measured  $N$  values within the depth of influence  $z_1$ .  $N_{ave}$  is not corrected for effective overburden pressure, but instead considers compressibility using  $I_c$ . The arithmetic mean of the measured  $N_{ave}$  should be corrected to  $15 + 0.5(N_{ave} - 15)$  when  $N_{ave} > 15$  for very fine and silty sand below the water table and multiplied by 1.25 for gravel or sandy gravel.

(c) The probable limits of accuracy of Equations 3-11 are within upper and lower bound values of  $I_c$  given by

$$0.08/(N_{ave})^{1.3} \leq I_c \leq 1.34/N_{ave}^{1.67} \quad (3-12)$$

(2) Settlement after time  $t$  at least 3 years following construction from creep and secondary compression effects may be estimated by

$$\rho_t = f_t \cdot \rho_i \quad (3-13)$$

where

$$f_t = 1 + R_3 + R_t \cdot \log t/3$$

$R_3$  = time-dependent settlement ratio as a proportion of  $\rho_i$  during first 3 years following construction,  $\approx 0.3$

$R_t$  = time-dependent settlement ratio as a proportion of  $\rho_i$  for each log cycle of time after 3 years,  $\approx 0.2$

Values of  $R_3$  and  $R_t$  are conservative based on 9 case records (item 4).

f. Dilatometer Approximation. The dilatometer consists of a stainless steel blade 96 mm wide and 15 mm thick with a sharp edge containing a stainless steel membrane centered and flush with one side of the blade. The blade is preferably pushed (or driven if necessary) into the soil. A pressure-vacuum system is used to inflate/deflate the membrane a maximum movement of 1.1 mm against the adjacent soil (item 58).

(1) Calculation. This procedure predicts settlement from evaluation of one-dimensional vertical compression or constrained modulus  $E_d$  by the DMT

$$\rho_i = \frac{q_{oave} \cdot H}{E_d} \quad (3-14)$$

where

$q_{oave}$  = average increase in stress caused by the applied load, tsf

$H$  = thickness of stratum at depth  $z$  where  $q_{oave}$  is applicable, ft

$E_d$  = constrained modulus,  $R_D E_s$ , tsf

$R_D$  =  $(1 - v_s)/[(1 + v_s)(1 - 2v_s)]$ , factor that varies from 1 to 3 relates  $E_d$  to Young's soil modulus  $E_s$

$v_s$  = Poisson's ratio

Refer to Appendix D for additional information on elastic parameters. The influence of prestress on settlement may be corrected using results of DMT and CPT tests after Schmertmann's approximation (item 37) to reduce settlement overestimates.

(2) Evaluation of elastic modulus. The dilatometer modulus of soil at the depth of the probe is evaluated as 34.7 times the difference in pressure between the deflated and inflated positions of the membrane. Young's elastic modulus has been found to vary from 0.4 to 10 times the dilatometer modulus (item 39). A Young's elastic modulus equal to the dilatometer modulus may be assumed for many practical applications in sands.

(3) Adjustment for other soil. The constrained modulus  $E_d$  may be adjusted for effective vertical stress  $\sigma'_o$  other than that of the DMT for overconsolidated soil and normally consolidated clay by

$$E_d = m \cdot \sigma'_o \quad (3-15a)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} m &= [(1 + e)/C_c] \cdot \ln 10 \\ e &= \text{void ratio} \\ C_c &= \text{compression index} \end{aligned}$$

The constrained modulus for normally consolidated silts and sand is

$$E_d = m \cdot (\sigma'_o)^{0.5} \quad (3-15b)$$

where  $\sigma'_o$  is the effective vertical overburden pressure, tsf. These settlements include time-dependent settlements excluding secondary compression and creep. Total settlement of a heterogeneous soil with variable  $E_d$  may be estimated by summing increments of settlement using Equation 3-14 for layers of thickness  $H$ .

3-4. Recommendations. A minimum of three methods should be applied to estimate a range of settlement. Settlement estimates based on in situ test results are based on correlations obtained from past experience and observation and may not be reliable.

a. Evaluation from SPT Data. The Alpan (Equation 3-2), Schultze and Sherif (Equation 3-4), Modified Terzaghi and Peck (Equation 3-5) approximations should all be applied to estimate immediate settlement if blowcount data from SPT are available. The Burland and Burbidge approximation (Equations 3-11) should be applied if the maximum past pressure of the soil can be estimated; this approximation using Equation 3-12 may also be applied to estimate a range of settlement.

b. Evaluation from CPT Data. The Schmertmann approximation (Equation 3-8) should be used to estimate settlement if CPT data are available.

c. Evaluation from DMT Data. The Dilatometer approximation (Equation 3-14) should be used if data from this test are available. The range of settlement may be determined by assuming minimum and maximum values of the factor  $R_D$  of 1 and 3.

d. Evaluation from PMT Data. The pressuremeter unload-reload modulus from the corrected pressure versus volume change curve is a measure of twice the shear modulus, Appendix D-2d. The Young's elastic modulus may be evaluated from the shear modulus, Table D-2, and settlement estimated from Equation 3-8. The constrained modulus may be evaluated from Young's elastic modulus, Table D-2, and settlement estimated from Equation 3-14.

e. Long-Term Settlement. The Schmertmann and Burland and Burbidge approximations may be used to estimate long-term settlement in cohesionless soil from CPT and SPT data. The constrained modulus  $E_d$  may also be adjusted to consider consolidation from Equations 3-15 and settlement estimated from Equation 3-14. Refer to items 39 and 58 for detailed information on evaluation of the constrained modulus.

3-5. Application. A footing 10-ft square is to be constructed 3 ft below grade on medium dense ( $\gamma = \gamma' = 0.06 \text{ ton/ft}^3$ ) and moist sand with total stratum thickness of 13 ft ( $H = 10'$ ). The water table is at least 5 ft below the base of the footing. The effective vertical overburden pressure at the bottom of the footing is  $\sigma'_{od} = \gamma' \cdot z = 0.06 \cdot 3 = 0.18 \text{ tsf}$ . The bearing pressure of the footing on the sand  $q = 2 \text{ tsf}$ . Field data indicate an average blowcount in the sand  $N_{ave} = 20 \text{ blows/ft}$  and the cone tip bearing resistance is about 70 tsf. The average elastic modulus determined from dilatometer and pressuremeter tests indicated  $E_s = 175 \text{ tsf}$ . Refer to Figure 3-6 for a schematic description of this problem. Estimates of settlement of this footing at end of construction (EOC) and 10 years after construction are required.

(1) Results of the settlement computations comparing several of the above methods are shown in Table 3-2.

(a) Figure 3-6 illustrates computation of settlement by Schmertmann's method.

(b) Computation of settlement by the Burland and Burbidge and dilatometer approximations requires an estimate of the average effective bearing pressure  $\Delta P'_{ave}$ . Assuming that the 2:1 stress distribution of Figure C-1 is adequate, the average pressure from the foundation load is

$$q_{oave} = \frac{q + \Delta\sigma_z}{2}$$

where  $\Delta\sigma_z$  is found from Equation C-2. Therefore, if  $B = L = H = 10 \text{ ft}$  and  $Q = q \cdot B \cdot L$ , then

$$q_{oave} = 0.5 \left[ 2.0 + \frac{2.0 \cdot 10^2}{(10 + 10)^2} \right] = 1.25 \text{ tsf}$$

The average effective overburden pressure  $\sigma'_{oave} = 0.06 \cdot (3 + 13)/2.0$  or 0.48 tsf. The average effective bearing pressure  $\Delta P'_{ave}$  is therefore  $1.25 + 0.48 = 1.73 \text{ tsf}$ . The soil is assumed normally consolidated; therefore,  $\sigma'_p = \sigma'_{od} = 0.18 \text{ tsf}$  and Equation 3-11a is applicable. Factor  $f_s = 1.0$ ,  $H/z_1 = 1.31$  and  $f_1 = 0.91$ .  $I_c = 0.23/(20)^{1.4} = 0.0035$ .

Table 3-2

Estimation of Immediate Settlement for Example Application  
of Footing on Cohesionless Soil

a. Calculations

| Method  | Equation | Calculations   |                 |       |       |          |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |    |     |      |  |
|---|----------|--|-----------------|-------|-------|----------|---|-----|------|------|---|-----|------|------|---|-----|------|------|---|-----|------|------|---|-----|------|------|----|-----|------|--|
|   |          | $B = 10 \text{ ft}, \frac{L}{B} = 1, m' = 1.0, N' = 65 \text{ blows/ft}$   |                 |       |       |          |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |    |     |      |  |
| Alpan<br>(item 1)                             |          | $N = 20 \text{ blows/ft and } \sigma'_o = 0.18 \text{ tsf, Figure 3-1a}$<br>$\alpha_o = 0.05 \text{ in/tsf, Figure 3-1b}$  |                 |       |       |          |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |    |     |      |  |
|   | 3-2      | $\rho_i = 1 \cdot \left[ \frac{2 \cdot 10}{1 + 10} \right]^2 \cdot \frac{0.05}{12} \cdot 2 = 0.027 \text{ ft or } 0.33 \text{ inch}$   |                 |       |       |          |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |    |     |      |  |
| Schultz and<br>Sherif<br>(item 60)            | 3-4      | $\frac{H}{B} = 1, \frac{D}{B} = 0.3, f = 0.052, \text{ Figure 3-2}$<br>$\rho_i = \frac{0.052 \cdot 2 \cdot \sqrt{10}}{20^{0.87} (1 + 0.4 \cdot 0.3)} = 0.022 \text{ ft or } 0.33 \text{ inch}$   |                 |       |       |          |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |    |     |      |  |
| Modified<br>Terzaghi<br>and Peck<br>(item 51) | 3-6      | $C_n = 1.6, \text{ Figure 3-3b}$<br>$C_w = 1$<br>$N' = 1 \cdot 1.6 \cdot 20 = 32$<br>$q_1 = 3.5 \text{ tsf, Figure 3-3a}$  |                 |       |       |          |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |    |     |      |  |
|   | 3-5      | $\rho_i = \frac{1}{18} \cdot \frac{2}{3.5} = 0.031 \text{ ft or } 0.38 \text{ inch (0.57 inch}$<br><i>ignoring Peck and Bazarra 1/3 reduction)</i>   |                 |       |       |          |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |    |     |      |  |
| Schmertmann<br>(item 55)                      |          | <i>Refer to Figure 3-6</i>   |                 |       |       |          |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |    |     |      |  |
|   | 3-10a    | $q_c = 70 \text{ tsf,}$  |                 |       |       |          |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |    |     |      |  |
|   | 3-9b     | $E_{si} = 2.5 \cdot 70 = 175 \text{ tsf,}$   |                 |       |       |          |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |    |     |      |  |
|   | 3-9a     | $\sigma'_{Izp} = 0.5 \cdot 10 \cdot 0.06 + 3 \cdot 0.6 = 0.48 \text{ tsf}$<br>$I_{zp} = 0.5 + 0.1 \left[ \frac{1.82}{0.48} \right]^{0.5} = 0.695$  |                 |       |       |          |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |    |     |      |  |
|   |          | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th><math>z, \text{ FT}</math></th> <th><math>z/B</math></th> <th><math>I_z</math></th> <th><math>I_{za}</math></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0.0</td> <td>0.10</td> <td>0.22</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>0.2</td> <td>0.34</td> <td>0.46</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>0.4</td> <td>0.58</td> <td>0.62</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td>0.6</td> <td>0.65</td> <td>0.61</td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td>0.8</td> <td>0.56</td> <td>0.51</td> </tr> <tr> <td>10</td> <td>1.0</td> <td>0.46</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | $z, \text{ FT}$ | $z/B$ | $I_z$ | $I_{za}$ | 0 | 0.0 | 0.10 | 0.22 | 2 | 0.2 | 0.34 | 0.46 | 4 | 0.4 | 0.58 | 0.62 | 6 | 0.6 | 0.65 | 0.61 | 8 | 0.8 | 0.56 | 0.51 | 10 | 1.0 | 0.46 |  |
| $z, \text{ FT}$                               | $z/B$    | $I_z$  | $I_{za}$        |       |       |          |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |    |     |      |  |
| 0   | 0.0      | 0.10   | 0.22            |       |       |          |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |    |     |      |  |
| 2   | 0.2      | 0.34   | 0.46            |       |       |          |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |    |     |      |  |
| 4   | 0.4      | 0.58   | 0.62            |       |       |          |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |    |     |      |  |
| 6   | 0.6      | 0.65   | 0.61            |       |       |          |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |    |     |      |  |
| 8   | 0.8      | 0.56   | 0.51            |       |       |          |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |    |     |      |  |
| 10  | 1.0      | 0.46   |                 |       |       |          |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |    |     |      |  |
|   | 3-8      | $\rho_i \text{ at EOC} = 0.95 \cdot 1.0 \cdot 1.82 \cdot 2.0 \cdot 0.0138 = 0.0477 \text{ ft}$<br><i>or 0.57 inch</i><br>$\rho_i \text{ after 10 years} = 0.0477 \cdot 1.4 = 0.0668 \text{ ft}$<br><i>or 0.80 inch</i>   |                 |       |       |          |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |   |     |      |      |    |     |      |  |

Table 3-2. Concluded

| Method                              | Equation  | Calculations  |
|-------------------------------------|---|---|
| Burland and<br>Burbidge<br>(item 4) | 3-11a   | <i>End of</i> $\rho_i = 1 \cdot 0.91 [(1.73 - 0.67 \cdot 0.18) \cdot 10^{0.7} \cdot 0.0035]$<br><i>Construction:</i> = 0.028 ft or 0.34 inch<br><i>After 10 years:</i> $f_t = 1 + 0.3 + 0.2 \log \frac{10}{3} = 1.4$<br>$\rho_t = 0.028 \cdot 1.4 = 0.039$ or 0.47 inch |
|                                     | 3-13  | $I_{cmin} \approx 0.08 / (20)^{1.3} = 0.0016$   |
|                                     | 3-12  | $\rho_{imin} = 0.028 \cdot 0.0016 / 0.0035 = 0.013$ ft<br>or 0.15 inch  |
|                                     | 3-12  | $I_{cmax} \approx 1.34 / (20)^{1.67} = 0.009$<br>$\rho_{imax} = 0.028 \cdot 0.009 / 0.0035 = 0.073$ ft<br>or 0.87 inch  |
|                                     | Dilatometer<br>(item 58)  | $q_{oave} = 1.25$ tsf , $H = 10$ ft , $E_s = 175$ tsf , $v_s$ not needed<br><i>Minimum Settlement:</i> $R_D = 3$ , $E_d = 3 \cdot 175 = 525$ tsf  |
| 3-14                                | $\rho_{imin} = 1.25 \cdot 10 / 525 = 0.024$ ft or 0.29 inch<br><i>Maximum Settlement:</i> $R_D = 1$ , $E_d = 1 \cdot 175 = 175$ tsf |   |
| 3-14                                | $\rho_{imax} = 1.25 \cdot 10 / 175 = 0.071$ ft or 0.86 inch   |   |

b. Comparison

| Method                     | Immediate Settlement, ft (in.) |             |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------|
| Alpan                      | 0.027                          | (0.33)      |
| Schultz and Sherif         | 0.022                          | (0.27)      |
| Modified Terzaghi and Peck | 0.031                          | (0.38)      |
| Schmertmann                | 0.048                          | (0.57)      |
| Burland and Burbidge       | 0.028                          | (0.34)      |
| Dilatometer                | 0.024 - 0.071                  | (0.29-0.86) |

(2) A comparison of results in Table 3-2b shows that the Alpan, Schultze and Sherif, Modified Terzaghi and Peck, and Burland and Burbidge methods provide consistent settlements of about 0.3 to 0.4 inch. The Schmertmann method is reasonably conservative with settlement of 0.57 inch. This settlement is the same as that from the Modified Terzaghi and Peck method ignoring the 1/3 reduction recommended by Peck and Bazarra (item 50). Long-term settlement is 0.5 (Burland and Burbidge) and 0.8 inch (Schmertmann) after 10 years. The expected range of settlement is 0.2 to 1.0 inch after the Burland and Burbidge method and 0.3 to 0.9 inch from the dilatometer. Settlement is not expected to exceed 1 inch.



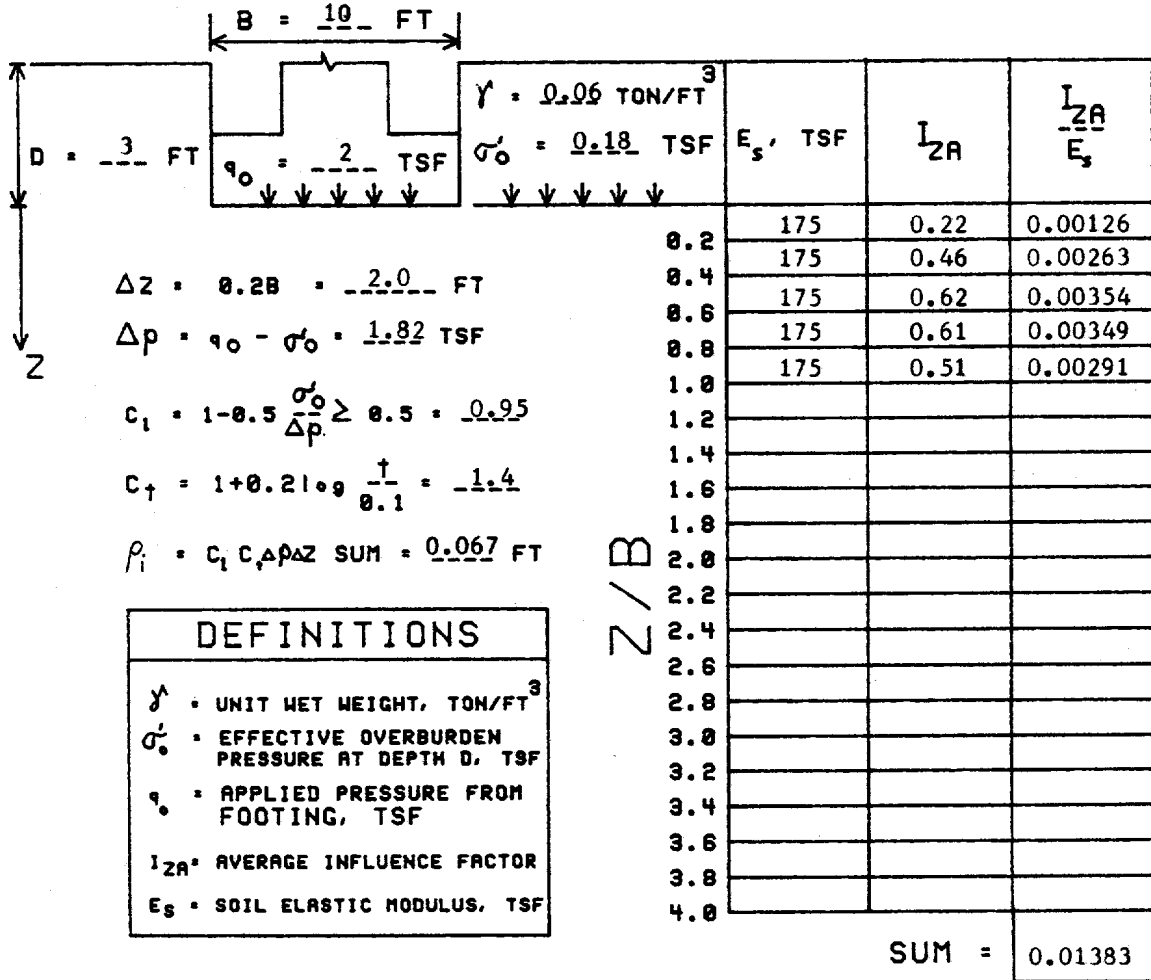


Figure 3-6. Estimation of immediate settlement by Schmertmann's method

Section II. Immediate Settlement of Cohesive Soil for Static Loads

3-6. General. Static loads cause immediate and long-term consolidation settlements in cohesive or compressible soil. The stress in the soil caused by applied loads should be estimated (paragraph 1-5d) and compared with estimates of the maximum past pressure (paragraph 1-5a). If the stress in the soil exceeds the maximum past pressure, then primary consolidation and secondary compression settlement may be significant and should be evaluated by the methods in Sections III and IV. Immediate rebound or heave may occur in compressible soil at the bottom of excavations, but may not be a design or construction problem unless rebound causes the elevation of the basement or first floor to exceed specifications or impair performance.

3-7. Rebound in Excavations. Most rebound in excavations lying above compressible strata occurs from undrained elastic unloading strains in these strata. Additional long-term heave due to wetting of the soil following reduction in pore water pressure following removal of overburden in excava-

tions is discussed in Section I, Chapter 5. Rebound of compressible soil in excavations may be approximated as linear elastic by (item 2)

$$S_{RE} = F_{RD} \cdot F_{RS} \cdot \frac{\gamma D}{E_s^*} \quad (3-16)$$

where

$S_{RE}$  = undrained elastic rebound, ft  
 $F_{RD}$  = rebound depth factor, Figure 3-7a  
 $F_{RS}$  = rebound shape factor, Figure 3-7b  
 $\gamma$  = wet unit weight of excavated soil, tons/ft<sup>3</sup>  
 $D$  = depth of excavation, ft  
 $E_s^*$  = equivalent elastic modulus of soil beneath the excavation, tsf

The equivalent elastic modulus  $E_s^*$  may be estimated by methods described in Appendix D, Elastic Parameters. The compressible stratum of depth  $H$  is assumed to be supported on a rigid base such as unweathered clay shale, rock, dense sand or gravel. An example application is provided in Figure 3-7c.

3-8. Immediate Settlement in Cohesive Soil. The immediate settlement of a structure on cohesive soil (see paragraph 1-5c for definition) consists of elastic distortion associated with a change in shape without volume change and, in unsaturated clay, settlement from a decrease in volume. The theory of elasticity is generally applicable to cohesive soil.

a. Improved Janbu Approximation. The average immediate settlement of a foundation on an elastic soil may be given by (item 9)

$$\rho_i = \mu_o \cdot \mu_1 \cdot \frac{q \cdot B}{E_s^*} \quad (3-17)$$

where

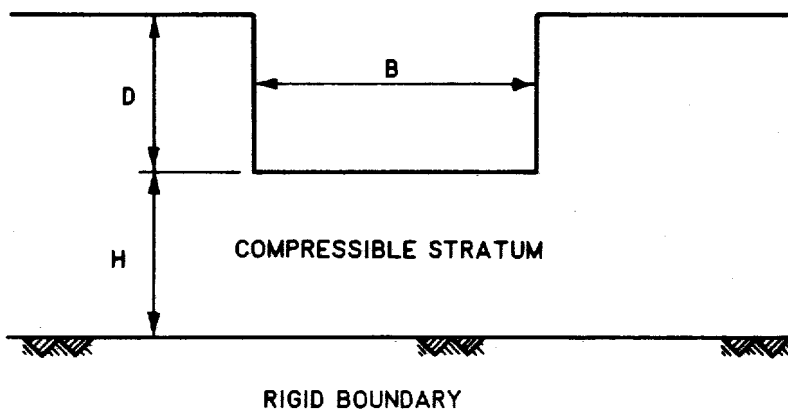
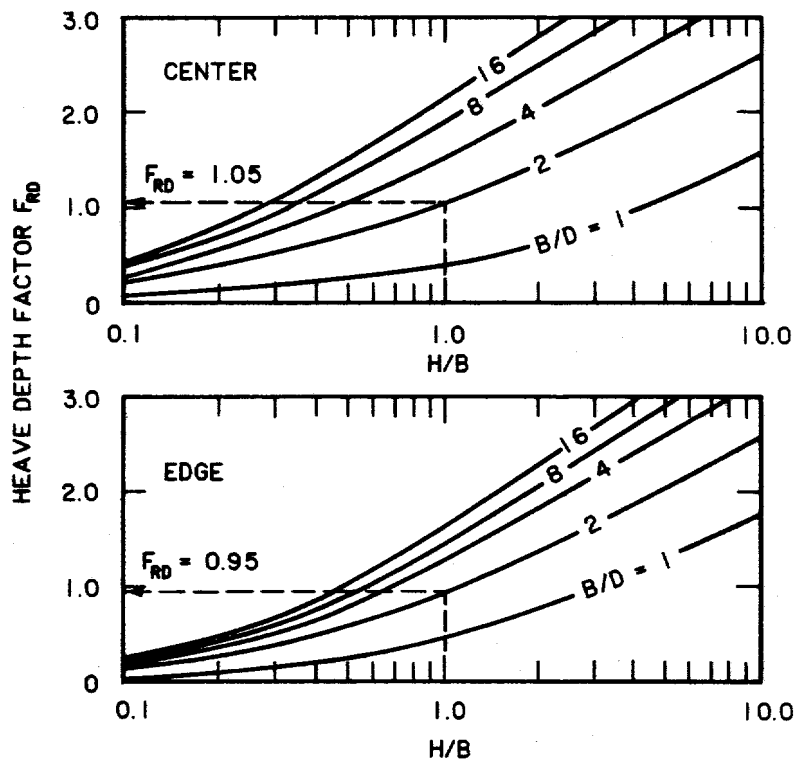
$\mu_o$  = influence factor for depth  $D$  of foundation below ground surface, Figure 3-8  
 $\mu_1$  = influence factor for foundation shape, Figure 3-8  
 $E_s^*$  = equivalent Young's modulus of the soil, tsf

(1) A comparison of test calculations and results of finite element analysis have indicated errors from Equation 3-17 usually less than 10 percent and always less than 20 percent for  $H/B$  between 0.3 and 10,  $L/B$  between 1 and 5, and  $D/B$  between 0.3 and 3, Figure 3-8. Reasonable results are given in most cases when  $\mu_o$  is set equal to unity. Poisson's ratio  $\nu_s$  is taken as 0.5.

(2)  $E_s^*$  may be estimated by methods in Appendix D.

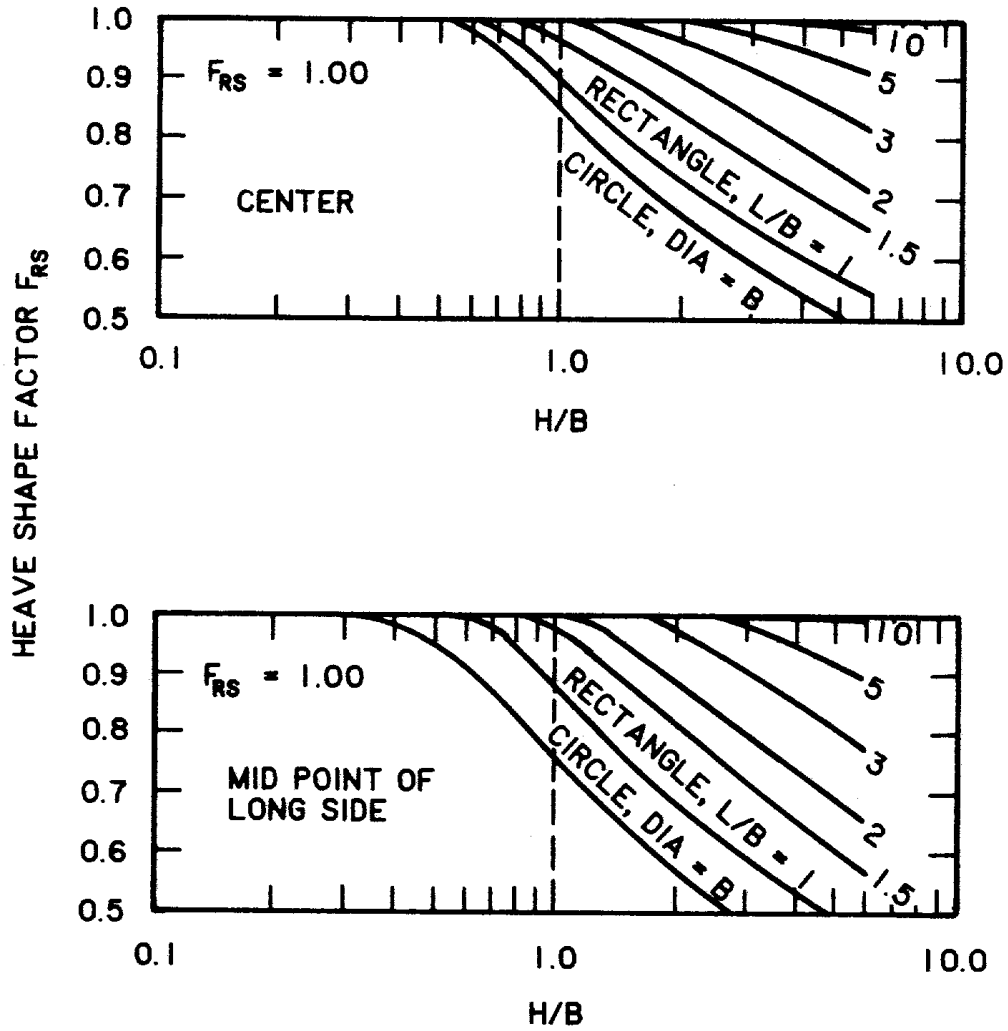
b. Perloff Approximation. The immediate vertical settlement beneath the center and edge of a mat or footing may be given by (item 52)

$$\rho_i = I \cdot q \cdot B \cdot \left[ \frac{1 - \nu_s^2}{E_s} \right] \cdot \alpha \quad (3-18)$$



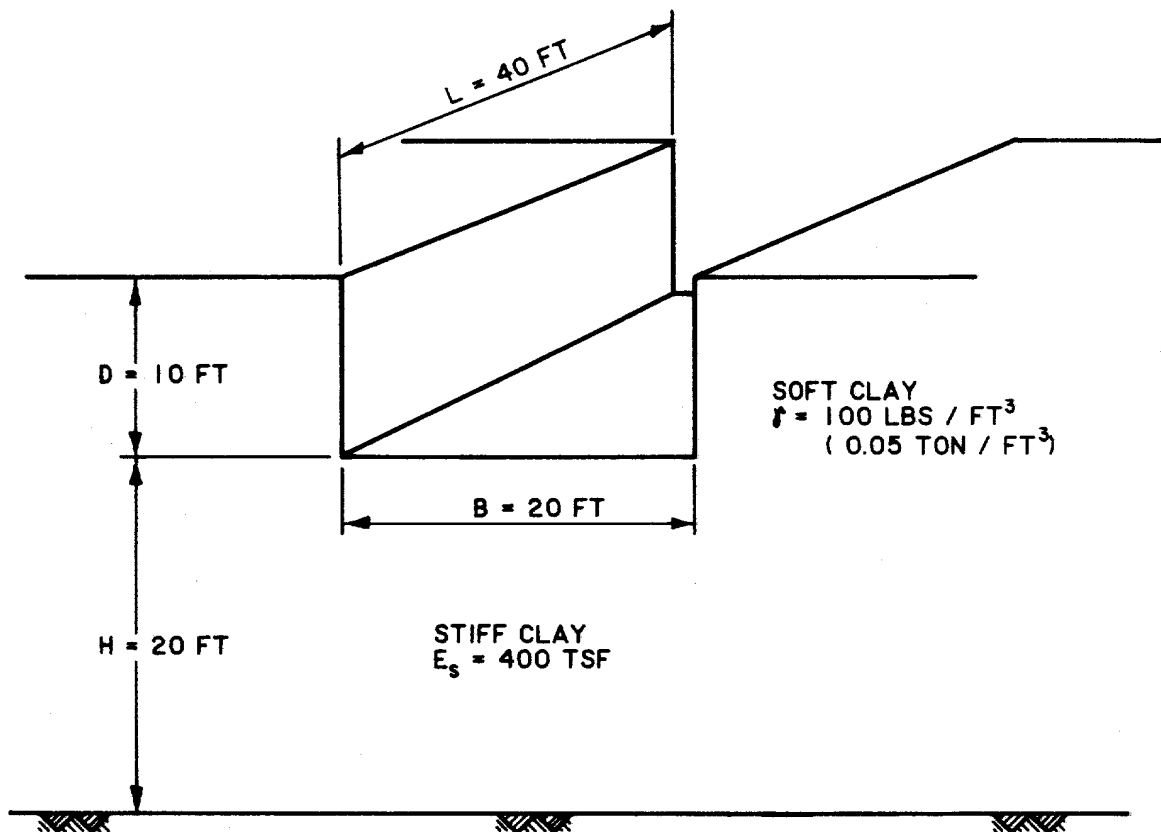
a. REBOUND DEPTH FACTOR  $F_{RD}$

Figure 3-7. Factors to calculate elastic rebound in excavations. Reprinted by permission of the author G. Y. Baladi from "Distribution of Stresses and Displacements Within and Under Long Elastic and Viscoelastic Embankments," Ph.D. Thesis, 1968, Purdue University



### b. REBOUND SHAPE FACTOR $F_{RS}$

Figure 3-7. (Continued)



$$S_{RE} = F_{RD} F_{RS} \frac{\gamma D^2}{E_s}$$

$$\frac{H}{B} = \frac{20}{20} = 1.0$$

$$\frac{B}{D} = \frac{20}{10} = 2.0$$

$$\frac{L}{B} = \frac{40}{20} = 2.0$$

FROM a:  $F_{RD\_CENTER} = 1.05$

$F_{RD\_EDGE} = 0.95$

FROM b:  $F_{RS\_CENTER} = 1.00$

$F_{RS\_MID\_EDGE} = 1.00$

$$S_{RE\_CENTER} = \frac{(1.05)(1.00)(0.05)(10)^2}{400} = 0.013 \text{ FT OR } 0.16 \text{ INCH}$$

$$S_{RE\_MID\_EDGE} = \frac{(0.95)(1.00)(0.05)(10)^2}{400} = 0.012 \text{ FT OR } 0.14 \text{ INCH}$$

c. **EXAMPLE CALCULATION**

Figure 3-7. (Concluded)

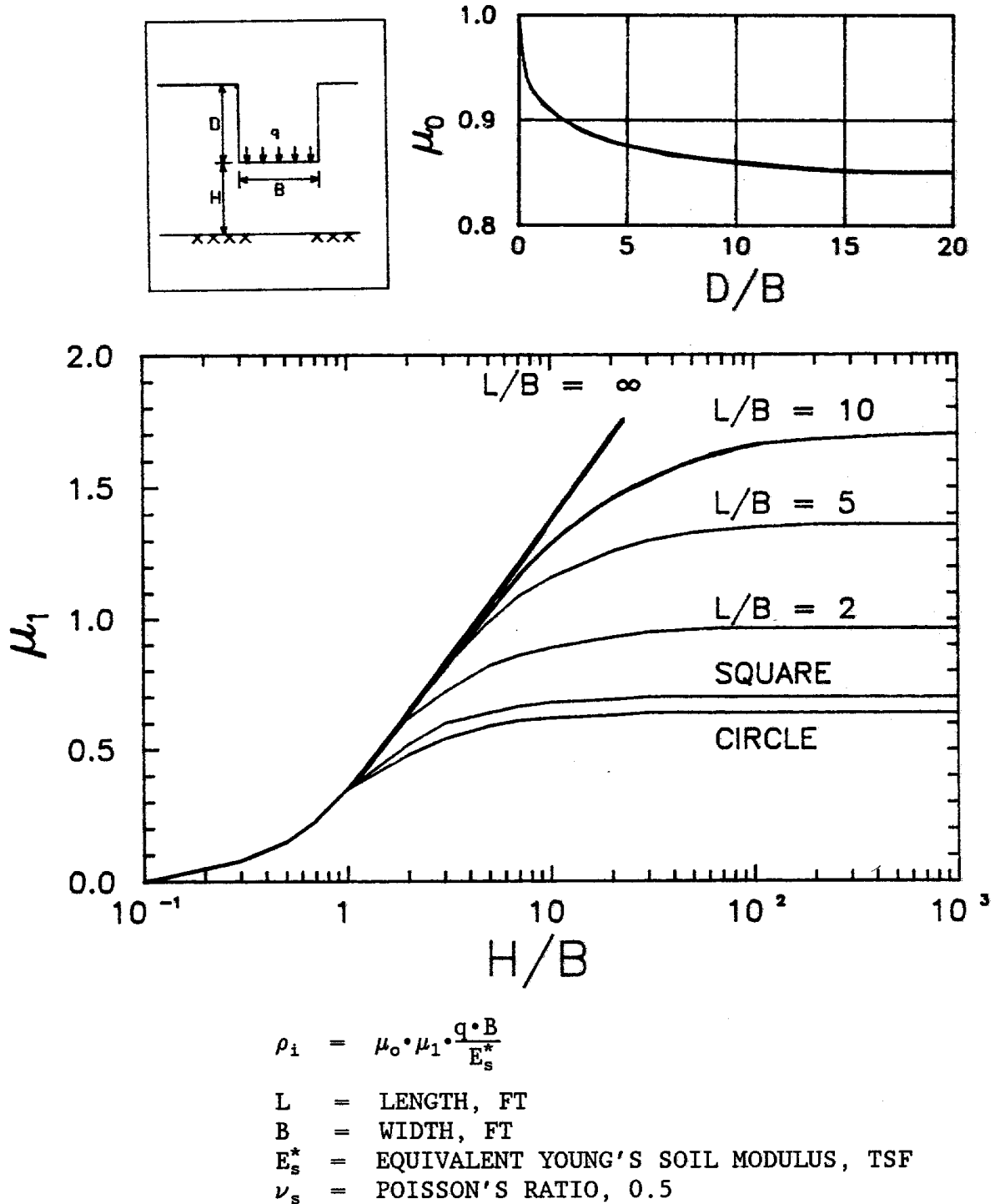


Figure 3-8. Chart for estimating immediate settlement in cohesive soil. Reprinted by permission of the National Research Council of Canada from Canadian Geotechnical Journal, Vol 15, 1978, "Janbu, Bjerrum, and Kjaernsli's Chart Reinterpreted", by J. T. Christian and W. D. Carrier III, p 127.

where

I = influence factor for infinitely deep and homogeneous soil,  
Table 3-3a

$E_s$  = elastic soil modulus, tsf

$\nu_s$  = soil Poisson's ratio

$\alpha$  = correction factor for subgrade soil, Table 3-3b

The influence factor I may be modified to account for heterogeneous or multilayered soil usually encountered in practice. If the upper soil is relatively compressible and underlain by stiff clay, shale, rock, or dense soil, then the compressible soil stratum may be approximated by a finite layer of depth H supported on a rigid base. The influence factor I is given in Figure 3-9 for settlement beneath the center and midpoint of the edge of flexible foundations. If the subgrade soil supporting the foundation with modulus  $E_{s1}$  and thickness H is underlain by less rigid infinitely deep material with modulus  $E_{s2}$ , then settlement at the center of a uniformly loaded circular area placed on the surface of the more rigid soil is corrected with the factor  $\alpha$ , Table 3-3b.

c. Kay and Cavagnaro Approximation. The immediate elastic settlement at the center and edge of circular foundations and foundations with length to width ratios less than two may be evaluated for layered elastic soil by the graphical procedure, Figure 3-10 (item 31). The method considers the relative rigidity of the foundation relative to the soil and can evaluate the differential displacement between the center and edge of the foundation.

### 3-9. Recommendations.

a. Janbu Approximation. The Janbu approximation is recommended when an average computation of settlement is required for a wide range of depths, lengths, and widths of foundations supported on compressible soil of depth H.

b. Perloff Approximation. The Perloff approximation should be used when total and differential settlement is required beneath flexible foundations located at or near the surface of the soil; settlements may be evaluated at the center, corner, and middle edges of both the short and long sides of the foundation.

c. Kay and Cavagnaro Approximation. The Kay and Cavagnaro approximation should be used when total and differential settlement is required beneath footings and mats of a given stiffness supported on compressible soil of variable elastic modulus; settlement may be evaluated at the center and edge for a given foundation depth. A reasonable estimate of Poisson's ratio for cohesive soil is 0.4, Appendix D-4.

d. Linear Modulus Increase. The Gibson model described in Appendix D-2d may be used if the elastic modulus may be assumed zero at the ground surface. A parametric analysis using the Kay and Cavagnaro graphical procedure for an elastic modulus increasing linearly with depth indicates that the center settlement beneath a foundation may be calculated by

$$\rho_c = \frac{q}{k} [0.7 + (2.3 - 4\nu_s) \log_{10} r] \quad (3-19)$$

Table 3-3

Factors for Estimating Immediate Settlement in Cohesive Soil

a. Shape and Rigidity Factor  $I$  for Calculating Settlements of Points on Loaded Areas at the Surface of an Elastic Half-Space (Data from Item 52)

| Shape          | Center<br>Center | Corner<br>Corner | Middle<br>Short Side | Middle<br>Long Side |
|----------------|------------------|------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Circle         | 1.00             | 0.64             | 0.64                 | 0.64                |
| Rigid circle   | 0.79             |                  |                      |                     |
| Square         | 1.12             | 0.56             | 0.76                 | 0.76                |
| Rigid square   | 0.99             |                  |                      |                     |
| R Length/Width |                  |                  |                      |                     |
| e 1.5          | 1.36             | 0.67             | 0.89                 | 0.97                |
| c 2            | 1.52             | 0.76             | 0.98                 | 1.12                |
| t 3            | 1.78             | 0.88             | 1.11                 | 1.35                |
| a 5            | 2.10             | 1.05             | 1.27                 | 1.68                |
| n 10           | 2.53             | 1.26             | 1.49                 | 2.12                |
| g 100          | 4.00             | 2.00             | 2.20                 | 3.60                |
| l 1000         | 5.47             | 2.75             | 2.94                 | 5.03                |
| e 10000        | 6.90             | 3.50             | 3.70                 | 6.50                |

b. Correction Factor  $\alpha$  at the Center of a Circular Uniformly Loaded Area of Width  $B$  on an Elastic Layer of Modulus  $E_{s1}$  of Depth  $H$  Underlain by a Less Stiff Elastic Material of Modulus  $E_{s2}$  of Infinite Depth

| H/B      | $E_{s1}/E_{s2}$ |       |       |       |       |
|----------|-----------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
|          | 1               | 2     | 5     | 10    | 100   |
| 0        | 1.000           | 1.000 | 1.000 | 1.000 | 1.000 |
| 0.1      | 1.000           | 0.972 | 0.943 | 0.923 | 0.760 |
| 0.25     | 1.000           | 0.885 | 0.779 | 0.699 | 0.431 |
| 0.5      | 1.000           | 0.747 | 0.566 | 0.463 | 0.228 |
| 1.0      | 1.000           | 0.627 | 0.399 | 0.287 | 0.121 |
| 2.5      | 1.000           | 0.550 | 0.274 | 0.175 | 0.058 |
| 5        | 1.000           | 0.525 | 0.238 | 0.136 | 0.036 |
| $\infty$ | 1.000           | 0.500 | 0.200 | 0.100 | 0.010 |

Reprinted from D. M. Burmister 1965, "Influence Diagrams for Stresses and Displacements in a Two-Layer Pavement System for Airfields", Contract NBY 13009, Department of the Navy, Washington, D. C. (item 7)



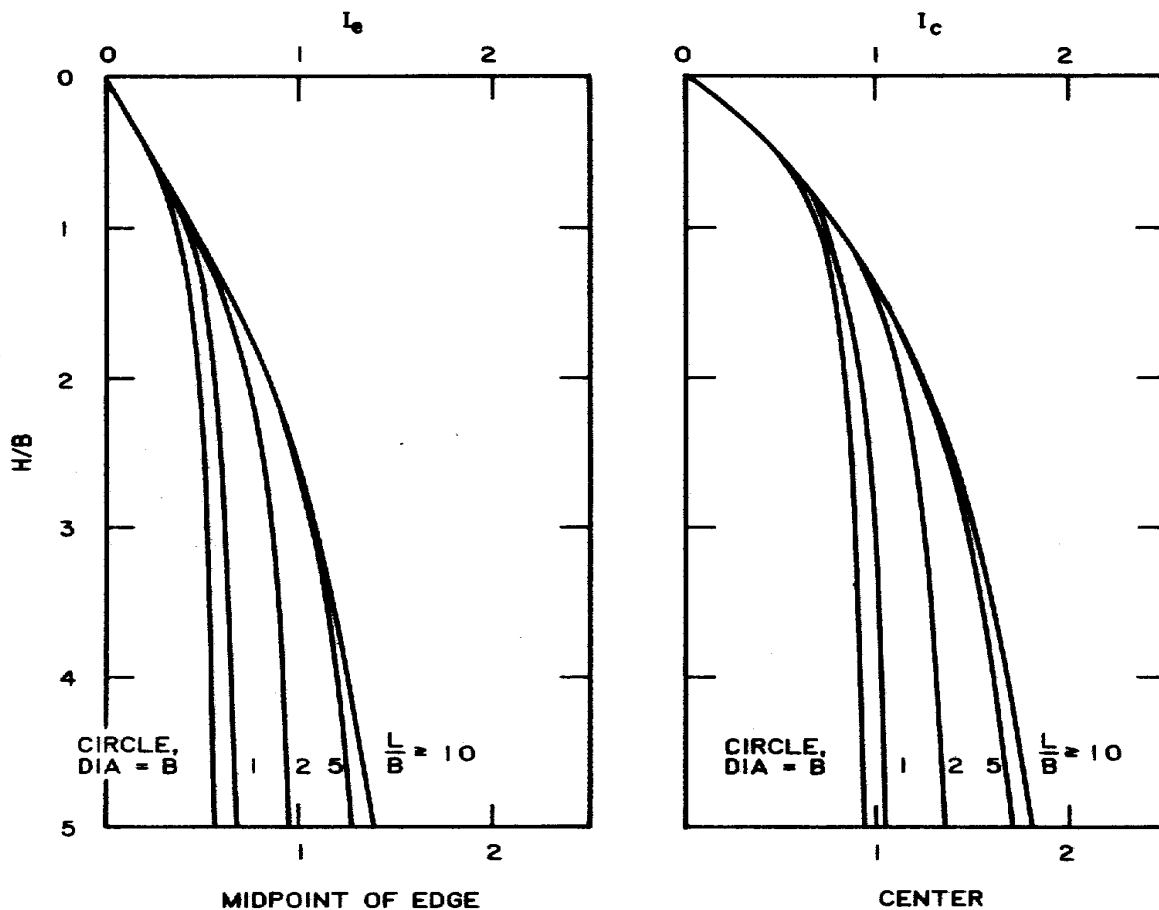


Figure 3-9. Influence factor  $I$  for settlement of a completely flexible mat or footing of width  $B$  and length  $L$  on a finite elastic material of depth  $H$  supported on a rigid base. Data taken with permission of McGraw-Hill Book Company from Tables 2-4 and 2-5, Foundations of Theoretical Soil Mechanics, by M. E. Harr, 1966, p 98, 99.

where

$$n = kR / (E_0 + kD_b)$$

$k$  = constant relating the elastic modulus with depth; i.e.,

$$E_0 = E_s + kz, \text{ ksf/ft}$$

$R$  = equivalent radius of the mat or footing,  $\sqrt{LB/\pi}$

$E_0$  = elastic soil modulus at the ground surface, ksf

$D_b$  = depth of the mat base or stiffening beams beneath the ground surface, ft

Edge and corner settlement of a flexible mat or footing will be approximately 1/2 and 1/4 of the center settlement, respectively. Differential movement of the mat or footing may be calculated from Figure 3-10.

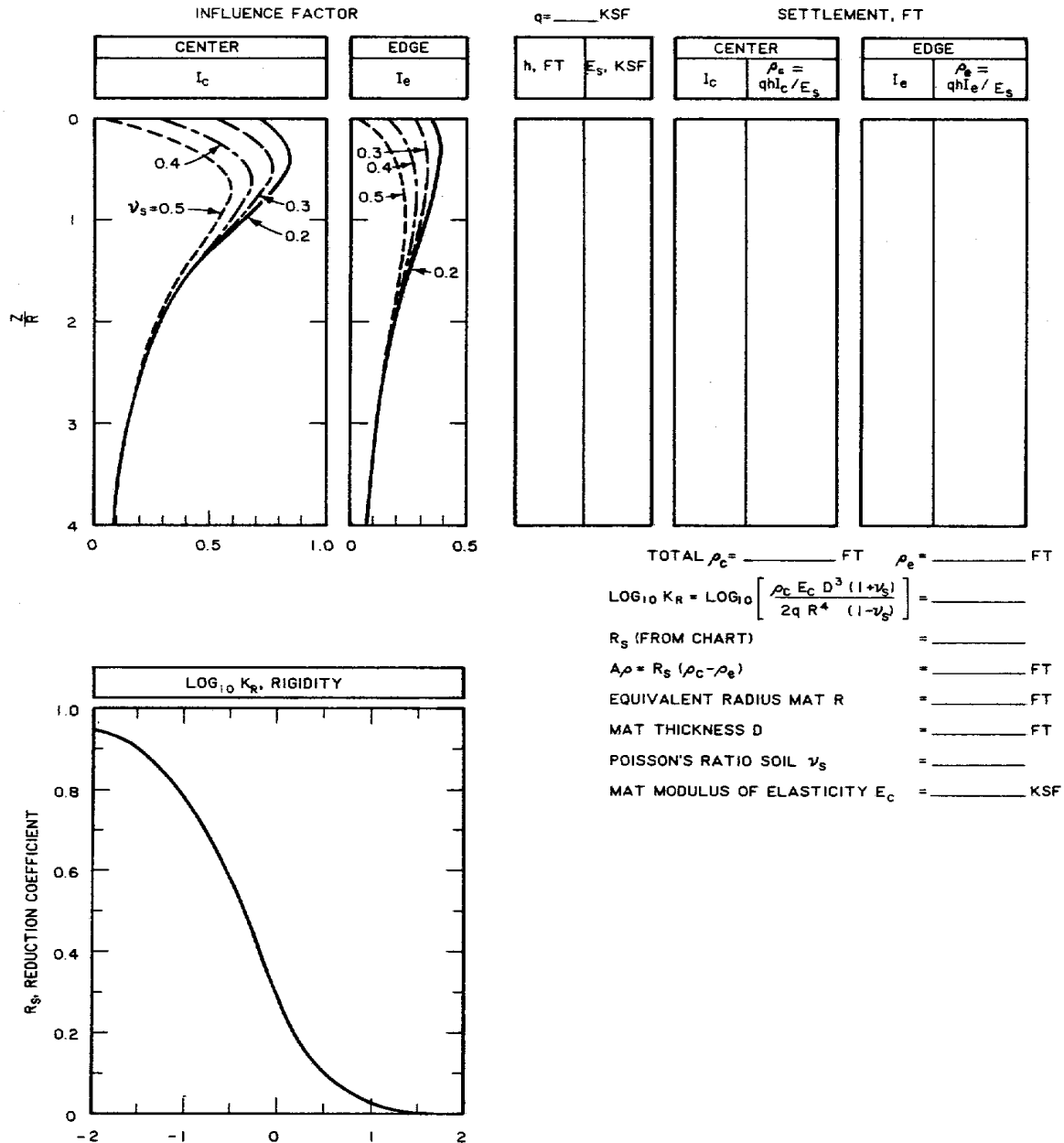


Figure 3-10. Computation of elastic settlement beneath a mat foundation (data from item 31).  $z$  = depth beneath mat, ft;  
 $R$  = equivalent radius, ft.

3-10. Application. A footing 10 ft square, 1 ft thick with base 3 ft below ground surface, is to be constructed on cohesive soil. The pressure applied on the footing is  $q = 2$  tsf (4 ksf). The equivalent elastic modulus of this clay, which is 10 ft deep beneath the footing, is 175 tsf (350 ksf) and Poisson's ratio is 0.4. Table 3-4 compares settlement computed by the improved Janbu and Perloff methods. Refer to Figure 3-11 for application of the Kay and Cavagnaro method.

a. Average settlement by the improved Janbu method is 0.48 inch.

Table 3-4

Estimation of Immediate Settlement for  
Example Application in Cohesive Soil

| Method               | Equation | Immediate Settlement, $\rho_i$  |
|----------------------|----------|---|
| Janbu<br>(item 9)    | 3-17     | $D/B = 0.3, H/B = L/B = 1.0$<br>$\mu_o = 1.00, \mu_1 = 0.35$<br><br>$\rho_i = 1.00 \cdot 0.35 \cdot 2.0 \cdot 10 / 175$<br>$= 0.040 \text{ ft or } 0.48 \text{ inch}$   |
| Perloff<br>(item 52) | 3-18     | From Fig. 3-9, $I_e = 0.4, I_c = 0.7$<br>$\rho_i = 0.4 \cdot 2 \cdot 10 \cdot \frac{1 - 0.16}{175}$<br>Edge: $= 0.038 \text{ ft or } 0.46 \text{ inch}$<br><br>$\rho_i = 0.7 \cdot 2.0 \cdot 10 \cdot \frac{1 - 0.16}{175}$<br>Center: $= 0.067 \text{ ft or } 0.81 \text{ inch}$ |

b. The Kay and Cavagnaro method in Figure 3-11 calculates smaller edge settlement of 0.33 inch compared with 0.46 inch and smaller center settlement of 0.73 inch compared with 0.81 inch calculated from the Perloff method. Actual differential settlement when considering stiffness of the footing is only about 0.02 inch, Figure 3-11; the footing is essentially rigid. Settlement will be less than 1 inch and expected to be about 0.5 inch.

Section III. Primary Consolidation Settlement

3-11. Description. Vertical pressure  $\sigma_{st}$  from foundation loads transmitted to a saturated compressible soil mass is initially carried by fluid or water in the pores because water is relatively incompressible compared with that of the soil structure. The pore water pressure  $u_{we}$  induced in the soil by the foundation loads is initially equal to the vertical pressure  $\sigma_{st}$  and it is defined as excess pore water pressure because this pressure exceeds that caused by the weight of water in the pores. Primary consolidation begins when water starts to drain from the pores. The excess pressure and its gradient decrease with time as water drains from the soil causing the load to be gradually carried by the soil skeleton. This load transfer is accompanied by a decrease in volume of the soil mass equal to the volume of water drained from the soil. Primary consolidation is complete when all excess pressure has dissipated so that  $u_{we} = 0$  and the increase in effective vertical stress in the soil  $\Delta\sigma' = \sigma_{st}$ . Primary consolidation settlement is usually determined from results of one-dimensional (1-D) consolidometer tests. Refer to Appendix E for a description of 1-D consolidometer tests.

a. Normally Consolidated Soil. A normally consolidated soil is a soil which is subject to an in situ effective vertical overburden stress  $\sigma'_o$  equal

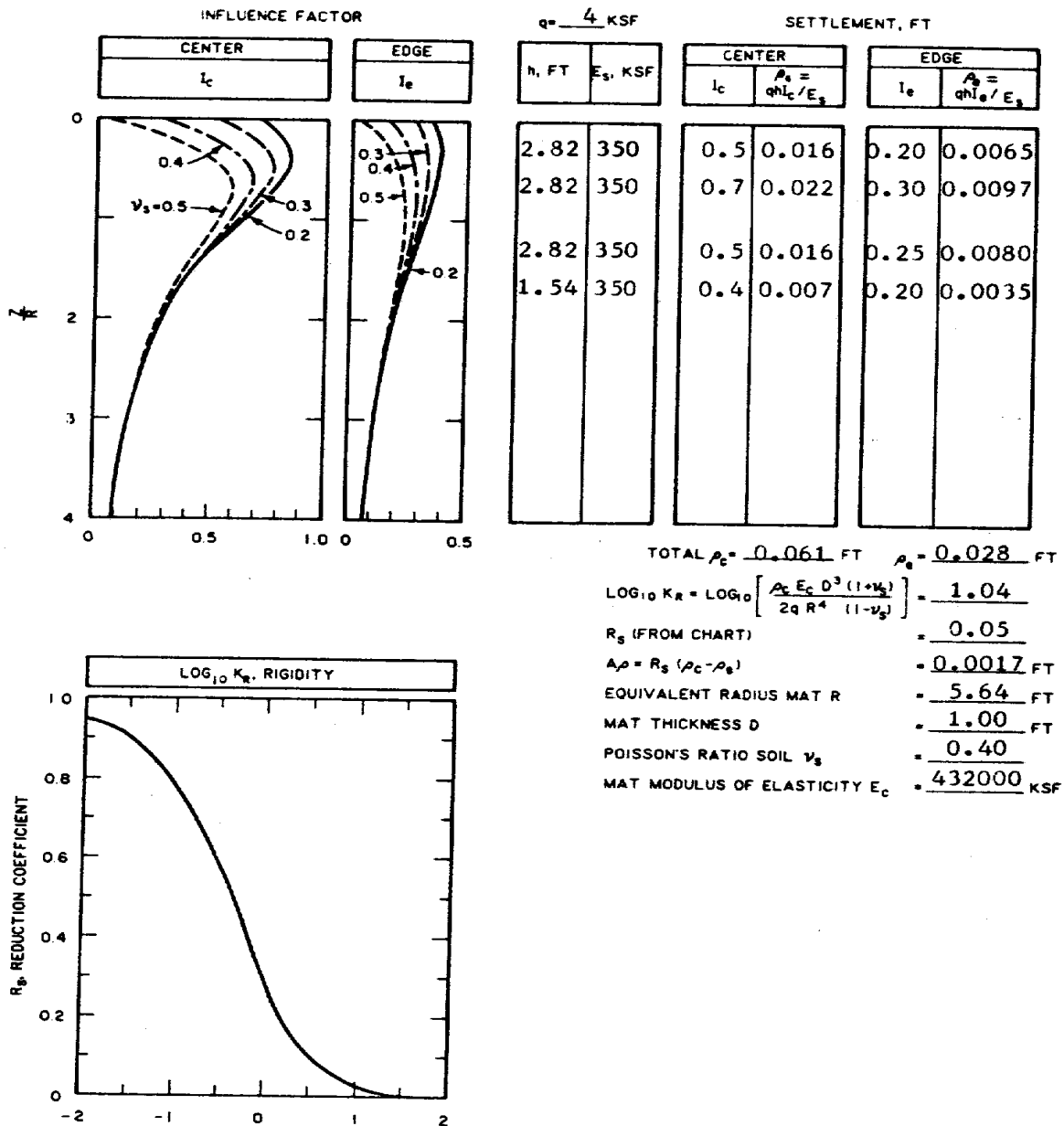


Figure 3-11. Estimation of immediate settlement for the example problem by the Kay and Cavagnaro method

to the preconsolidation stress  $\sigma'_p$ . Virgin consolidation settlement for applied stresses exceeding  $\sigma'_p$  can be significant in soft and compressible soil with a skeleton of low elastic modulus such as plastic CH and CL clays, silts, and organic MH and ML soils.

b. Overconsolidated Soil. An overconsolidated soil is a soil which is subject to an in situ effective overburden stress  $\sigma'_o$  less than  $\sigma'_p$ . Consolidation settlement will be limited to recompression from stresses applied to the soil up to  $\sigma'_p$ . Recompression settlement is usually much less than virgin consolidation settlement caused by applied stresses exceeding  $\sigma'_p$ .

3-12. Ultimate 1-D Consolidation. The ultimate or long-term 1-D consolidation settlement is initially determined followed by adjustment for overconsolidation effects. Refer to Table 3-5 for the general procedure to determine ultimate settlement by primary consolidation.

a. Evaluation of Void Ratio-Pressure Relationship. Estimates of the ultimate consolidation settlement following complete dissipation of hydrostatic excess pressure requires determination of the relationship between the in situ void ratio and effective vertical stress in the soil. The loading history of a test specimen taken from an undisturbed and saturated soil sample, for example, may be characterized by a void ratio versus logarithm pressure diagram, Figure 3-12.

(1) Correction of laboratory consolidation curve. Removal of an impervious soil sample from its field location will reduce the confining pressure, but tendency of the sample to expand is restricted by the decrease in pore water pressure. The void ratio will tend to remain constant at constant water content because the decrease in confinement is approximately balanced by the decrease in water pressure; therefore, the effective stress remains constant in theory after Equation 1-1 and the void ratio should not change. Classical consolidation assumes that elastic expansion is negligible and the effective stress is constant during release of the in situ confining pressure after the sample is taken from the field. Some sample disturbance occurs, however, so that the laboratory consolidation curve must be corrected as shown in Figure 3-12. Perfectly undisturbed soil should indicate a consolidation curve similar to line  $e_oED$ , Figure 3-12a, or line  $e_oBFE$ , Figure 3-12b. Soil disturbance increases the slope for stresses less than the preconsolidation stress illustrated by the laboratory consolidation curves in Figure 3-12. Pushing undisturbed samples into metal Shelby tubes and testing in the consolidometer without removing the horizontal restraint helps maintain the in situ horizontal confining pressure, reduces any potential volume change following removal from the field, and helps reduce the correction for sample disturbance.

(2) Normally consolidated soil. A normally consolidated soil in situ will be at void ratio  $e_o$  and effective overburden pressure  $\sigma'_o$  equal to the preconsolidation stress  $\sigma'_p$ .  $e_o$  may be estimated as the initial void ratio prior to the test if the water content of the sample had not changed during storage and soil expansion is negligible. In situ settlement from applied loads is determined from the field virgin consolidation curve.

(a) Reconstruction of the field virgin consolidation curve with slope  $C_c$  shown in Figure 3-12a may be estimated by the procedure in Table 3-6a. Determining the point of greatest curvature for evaluation of the preconsolidation stress requires care and judgment. Two points may be selected bounding the probable location of maximum curvature to determine a range of probable preconsolidation stress. Higher quality undisturbed specimens assist in reducing the probable range of  $\sigma'_p$ . If  $\sigma'_p$  is greater than  $\sigma'_o$ , then the soil is overconsolidated and the field virgin consolidation curve should be reconstructed by the procedure in Table 3-6b. The scale of the plot may have some influence on evaluation of the parameters.

(b) Consolidation settlement may be estimated by

$$\rho_{cj} = \frac{\Delta e_j}{1 + e_{oj}} \cdot H_j \quad (3-20)$$

Table 3-5

Procedure for Calculation of Ultimate Primary Consolidation  
Settlement of a Compressible Stratum

| Step | Description   |
|------|---|
| 1    | Evaluate the preconsolidation stress $\sigma'_p$ from results of a one-dimensional (1-D) consolidation test on undisturbed soil specimens using the Casagrande construction procedure, Table 3-6a, or by methods in paragraph 1-5a. Refer to Appendix E for a description of 1-D consolidation tests.   |
| 2    | Estimate the average initial effective overburden pressure $\sigma'_o$ in each compressible stratum using soil unit weights, depth of overburden on the compressible stratum, and the known groundwater level or given initial pore water pressure in the stratum. Refer to Equation 1-1, $\sigma'_{oz} = \gamma z - u_w$ . $\sigma'_o = (\sigma'_{oz1} + \sigma'_{oz2})/2$ where $\sigma'_{oz1}$ = effective pressure at top of compressible stratum and $\sigma'_{oz2}$ = effective pressure at bottom of compressible stratum. |
| 3    | Determine the soil initial void ratio $e_o$ as part of the 1-D consolidation test or by methods in Appendix II, EM 1110-2-1906, Laboratory Soils Testing.   |
| 4    | Evaluate the compression index $C_c$ from results of a 1-D consolidation test using the slope of the field virgin consolidation line determined by the procedure in Table 3-6a as illustrated in Figures 3-12 and 3-13, or preliminary estimates may be made from Table 3-7. Determine the recompression index $C_r$ for an overconsolidated soil as illustrated in Figures 3-12 and 3-13; preliminary estimates may be made from Figure 3-14.  |
| 5    | Estimate the final applied effective pressure $\sigma'_f$ where $\sigma'_f = \sigma'_o + \sigma_{st}$ . $\sigma_{st}$ , soil pressure caused by the structure, may be found from Equation C-2 or Boussinesq solution in Table C-1.  |
| 6    | Determine the change in void ratio $\Delta e_j$ of stratum $j$ for the pressure increment $\sigma'_f - \sigma'_o$ graphically from a data plot similar to Figure 3-12, from Equation 3-21 for a normally consolidated soil, or from Equation 3-23 for an overconsolidated soil.   |
| 7    | Determine the ultimate one-dimensional consolidation settlement of stratum $j$ with thickness $H_j$ , from Equation 3-20  |
|      | $\rho_{cj} = \frac{\Delta e_j}{1 + e_{oj}} H_j$   |
| 8    | Determine the total consolidation $\rho_c$ of the entire profile of compressible soil from the sum of the settlement of each stratum, Equation 3-22   |

Table 3-5. Concluded

| Step | Description  |
|------|--|
|      | $\rho_c = \sum_{j=1}^n \rho_{cj}$  |
| 9    | <p>Correct <math>\rho_c</math> for effect of overconsolidation and small departures from 1-D compression on the initial excess pore pressure using the Skempton and Bjerrum procedure, Equation 3-24</p> $\rho_{\lambda c} = \lambda \rho_c$ <p>where <math>\lambda</math> is found from Figure 3-15. <math>\lambda = 1</math> if <math>B/H &gt; 4</math> or if depth to the compressible stratum is <math>&gt; 2B</math>. The equivalent dimension of the structure when corrected to the top of the compressible stratum <math>B_{cor}</math> is found by the approximate distribution <math>B_{cor} = (B'L')^{0.5}</math> where <math>B' = B + z</math> and <math>L' = L + z</math>, <math>B</math> = foundation width, <math>L</math> = foundation length and <math>z</math> = depth to top of the compressible soil profile. Substitute <math>B_{cor}</math> for <math>B</math> in Figure 3-15. <math>\rho_{\lambda c}</math> is the corrected consolidation settlement. This correction should not be applied to bonded clays.</p> |

where

$\rho_{cj}$  = consolidation settlement of stratum  $j$ , ft  
 $\Delta e_j$  = change in void ratio of stratum  $j$ ,  $e_{oj} - e_{fj}$   
 $e_{oj}$  = initial void ratio of stratum  $j$  at initial pressure  $\sigma'_{oj}$   
 $e_{fj}$  = final void ratio of stratum  $j$  at final pressure  $\sigma'_{fj}$   
 $H_j$  = height of stratum  $j$ , ft

The final void ratio may be found graphically using the final pressure  $\sigma'_{fj}$  illustrated in Figure 3-12a. The change in void ratio may be calculated by

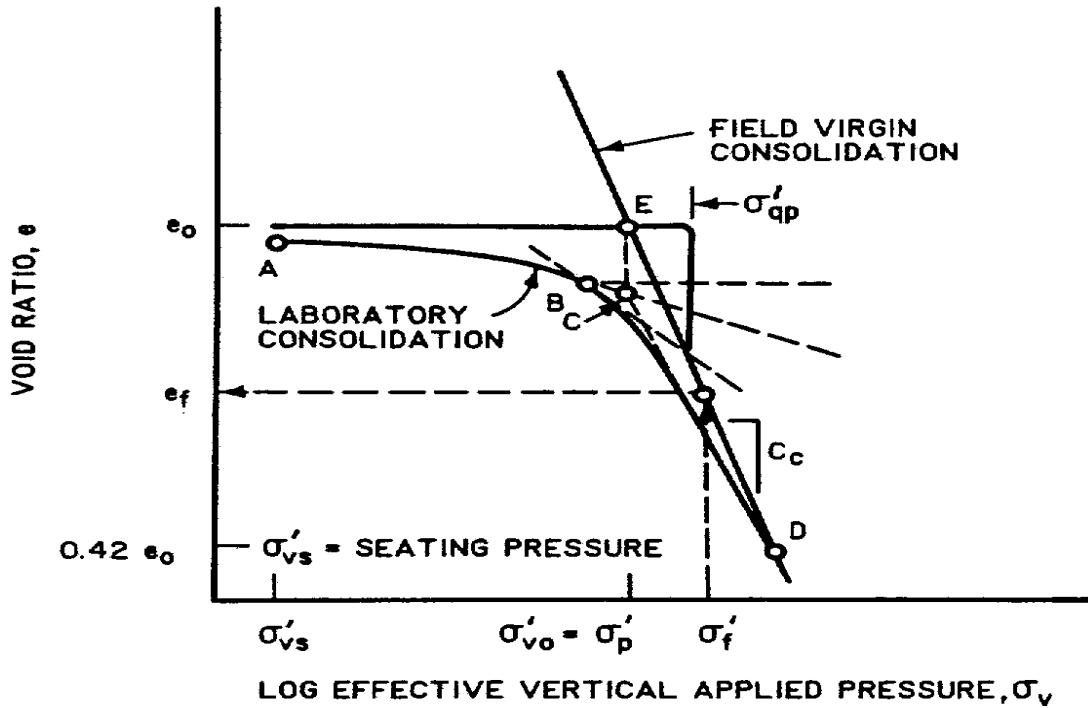
$$\Delta e_j = C_c \cdot \log_{10} \frac{\sigma'_{fj}}{\sigma'_{oj}} \quad (3-21)$$

where  $C_c$  is the slope of the field virgin consolidation curve or compression index. Figure 3-13 illustrates evaluation of  $C_c$  from results of a 1-D consolidation test. Table 3-7 illustrates some empirical correlations of  $C_c$  with natural water content, void ratio, and liquid limit. Refer to Chapter 3, TM 5-818-1, for further estimates of  $C_c$ .

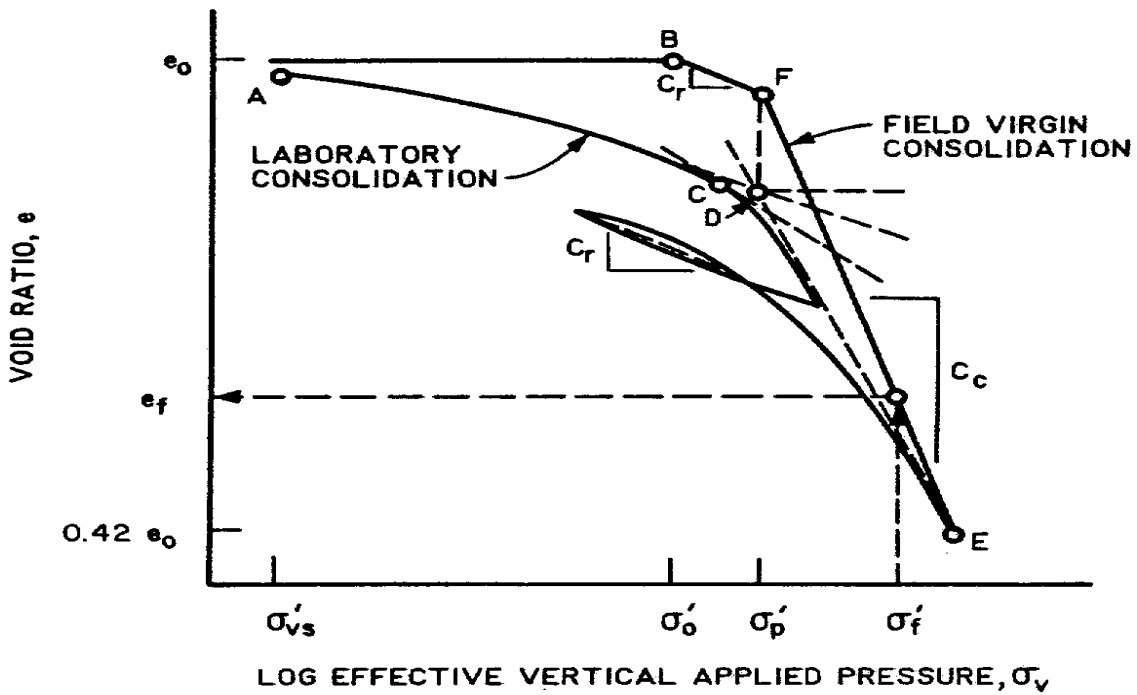
(c) Total consolidation settlement  $\rho_c$  of the entire profile of compressible soil may be determined from the sum of the settlement of each stratum

$$\rho_c = \sum_{j=1}^n \rho_{cj} \quad (3-22)$$

where  $n$  is the total number of compressible strata. This settlement is considered to include much of the immediate elastic compression settlement  $\rho_i$ , Equation 3-1.



a. NORMALLY CONSOLIDATED SOIL



b. OVERCONSOLIDATED SOIL

Figure 3-12. Construction of field virgin consolidation relationships



Table 3-6

Reconstruction of Virgin Field Consolidation (Data from Item 54)

a. Normally Consolidated Soil (Figure 3-12a)

| Step | Description   |
|------|---|
| 1    | Plot point B at the point of maximum radius of curvature of the laboratory consolidation curve.   |
| 2    | Plot point C by the Casagrande construction procedure: (1) Draw a horizontal line from B ; (2) Draw a line tangent to the laboratory consolidation curve through B ; and (3) Draw the bisector between horizontal and tangent lines. Point C is the intersection of the straight portion of the laboratory curve with the bisector. Point C indicates the maximum past pressure $\sigma'_p$ . |
| 3    | Plot point E at the intersection $e_o$ and $\sigma'_p$ . $e_o$ is given as the initial void ratio prior to testing in the consolidometer and $\sigma'_p$ is found from step 2.  |
| 4    | Plot point D at the intersection of the laboratory virgin consolidation curve with void ratio $e = 0.42e_o$ .   |
| 5    | The field virgin consolidation curve is the straight line determined by points E and D.   |

b. Overconsolidated Soil (Figure 3-12b)

| Step | Description   |
|------|---|
| 1    | Plot point B at the intersection of the given $e_o$ and the initial estimated in situ effective overburden pressure $\sigma'_o$ . |
| 2    | Draw a line through B parallel to the mean slope $C_r$ of the rebound laboratory curve.   |
| 3    | Plot point D using step 2 in Table 3-6a above for normally consolidated soil.   |
| 4    | Plot point F by extending a vertical line through D up through the intersection of the line of slope $C_r$ extending through B.   |
| 5    | Plot point E at the intersection of the laboratory virgin consolidation curve with void ratio $e = 0.42e_o$ .                     |
| 6    | The field virgin consolidation curve is the straight line through points F and E.   |

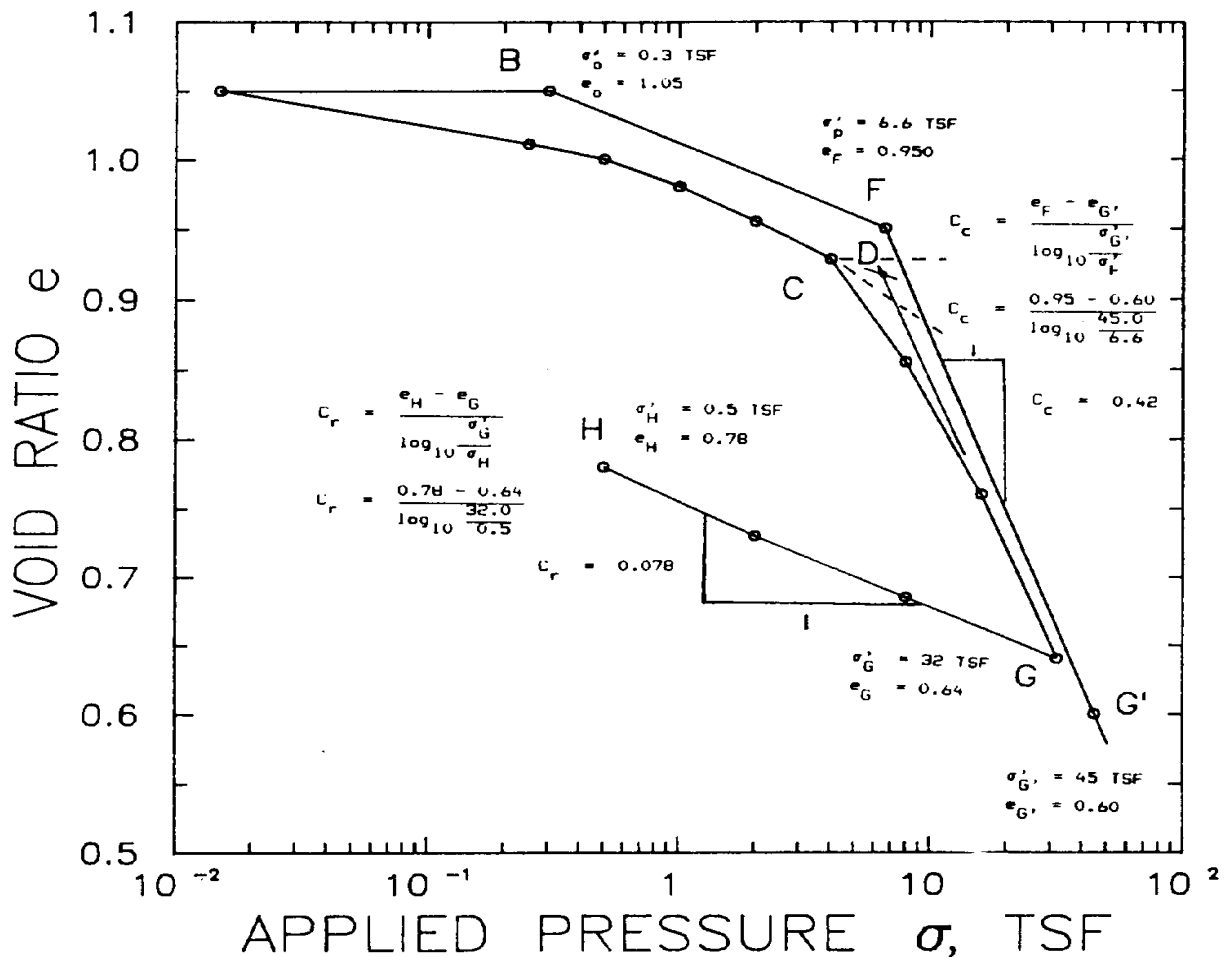


Figure 3-13. Example void ratio - logarithm pressure relationship.

(3) Apparent preconsolidation. A presumably normally consolidated soil may exhibit an apparent preconsolidation stress  $\sigma'_{qp}$ , Figure 3-12a.  $\sigma'_{qp}$  may be caused by several mechanisms; for example, the most common cause is secondary compression or the gradual reduction in void ratio (accompanied by an increase in attractive force between particles) at constant effective stress over a long time. Other causes of  $\sigma'_{qp}$  include a change in pore fluid, which causes attractive forces between particles to increase, or cementation due to precipitation of cementitious materials from flowing groundwater. This apparent preconsolidation is sensitive to strain and may not be detected because of sample disturbance. Existence of  $\sigma'_{qp}$  in the field can substantially reduce settlement for a given load and can be used to reduce the factor of safety or permit greater pressures to be placed on the foundation soil, provided that collapse will not be a problem. Refer to Chapter 5-7 to 5-10 for estimating potential collapse.

(4) Overconsolidated soil. An overconsolidated soil will be at a void ratio  $e_0$  and effective vertical confining pressure  $\sigma'$ , represented by point B, Figure 3-12b. At some time in the past the soil was subject to the preconsolidation stress  $\sigma'_p$ , but this pressure was later reduced, perhaps by soil erosion or removal of glacial ice, to the existing overburden pressure  $\sigma'_0$ . The in situ settlement for an applied load will be the sum of recompression settlement between points B and F and any virgin consolidation from a

Table 3-7

Estimates of the Virgin Compression Index,  $C_c$

| Soil                                       | $C_c$   |
|--|---|
| Organic soils with sensitivity less than 4 | 0.009(LL - 10)                                      |
| Organic soils, peat                        | 0.0115 $W_n$  |
| Clays                                      | 1.15( $e_o$ - 0.35)<br>0.012 $W_n$<br>0.01(LL - 13) |
| Varved clays                               | (1 + $e_o$ ) · [0.1 + 0.006( $W_n$ - 25)]           |
| Uniform silts                              | 0.20  |
| Uniform sand                               |   |
| Loose                                      | 0.05 to 0.06  |
| Dense                                      | 0.02 to 0.03  |

Note: LL = liquid limit, percent  
 $W_n$  = natural water content, percent  
 $e_o$  = initial void ratio

final effective vertical applied pressure  $\sigma'_f$  exceeding the preconsolidation stress  $\sigma'_p$ . Reloading a specimen in the consolidometer will give the laboratory curve shown in Figure 3-12b.

(a) Reconstruction of the field virgin consolidation curve with slope  $C_c$  may be estimated by the procedure in Table 3-6b. Refer to Table 3-7 for methods of estimating  $C_c$ .

(b) The rebound loop in the laboratory curve is needed to develop the recompression line BF. Evaluation of the recompression index  $C_r$  is illustrated in Figure 3-13. The recompression index is equal to or slightly smaller than the swelling index,  $C_s$ . Approximate correlations of the swelling index are shown in Figure 3-14.

(c) Settlement  $\rho_{cj}$  of stratum  $j$  in inches may be estimated as the sum of recompression and virgin consolidation settlements. The final void ratio is found graphically from Figure 3-12b. The change in void ratio may be calculated by

$$\Delta e_j = C_r \cdot \log_{10} \frac{\sigma'_{pj}}{\sigma'_{oj}} + C_c \cdot \log_{10} \frac{\sigma'_{fj}}{\sigma'_{pj}} \quad (3-23)$$

where  $C_r$  is the average slope of the recompression line BF. If  $\sigma'_{fj} < \sigma'_{pj}$ , ignore the right-hand term of Equation 3-23 containing  $C_c$  and substitute  $\sigma'_{fj}$  for  $\sigma'_{pj}$  in the term containing  $C_r$ . Settlement of stratum  $j$  is

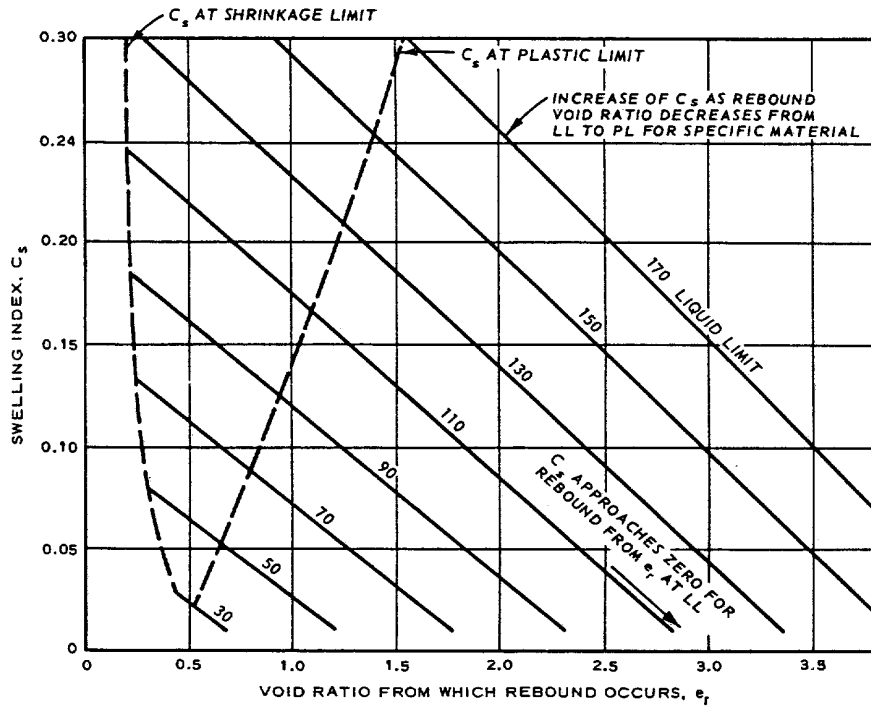


Figure 3-14. Approximate correlations for the swelling index of silts and clays (Figure 3-10, TM 5-818-1)

found from Equation 3-20 and ultimate settlement  $\rho_c$  of compressible soil in the profile is found from Equation 3-22.

(5) Underconsolidated soil. Occasionally, a compressible soil stratum may be found to have excess hydrostatic pore pressures such as when the stratum had not reached equilibrium pore water pressures under existing overburden pressures or the groundwater level had been lowered. The effective stress will increase as the pore pressures dissipate and cause recompression settlement until the effective stress equals the preconsolidation stress. Virgin consolidation settlement will continue to occur with increasing effective stress until all excess pore pressures are dissipated. If the initial effective stress is less than the preconsolidation stress  $\sigma'_p$ , then the ultimate settlement may be found as for an overconsolidated soil from Equations 3-23 and 3-20.  $\sigma'_{oj}$  is the initial effective stress found from Equation 1-1, the initial total overburden pressure minus the initial total pore water pressure.  $\sigma'_{fj}$  is the final effective stress found from the final total overburden pressure minus the equilibrium or final pore water pressure. If  $\sigma'_{oj}$  equals  $\sigma'_p$ , then the ultimate settlement may be found as for a normally consolidated soil from Equations 3-21 and 3-20.

b. Adjustment for Overconsolidation Effects. The effects of overconsolidation and departure from 1-D compression on the initial excess pore pressure may require correction to the calculated settlement and rate of settlement. The following semi-empirical procedures have been used to correct for these effects. Numerical methods of analysis offer a rational alternative approach to include 3-D effects, but these have not proved useful in practice.

(1) Skempton and Bjerrum correction. The corrected consolidation settlement  $\rho_{\lambda c}$  of a clay stratum is found by

$$\rho_{\lambda c} = \lambda \rho_c \quad (3-24)$$

where  $\lambda$  is the settlement correction factor, Figure 3-15. The equivalent dimension of the loaded area should be corrected to the top of the compressible stratum by the approximate stress distribution method as illustrated in step 9, Table 3-5, or Appendix C. The corrected settlement is still assumed 1-D, although overconsolidation effects are considered.  $\lambda = 1$  if  $B/H > 4$  or if depth to the compressible stratum is  $> 2B$ .

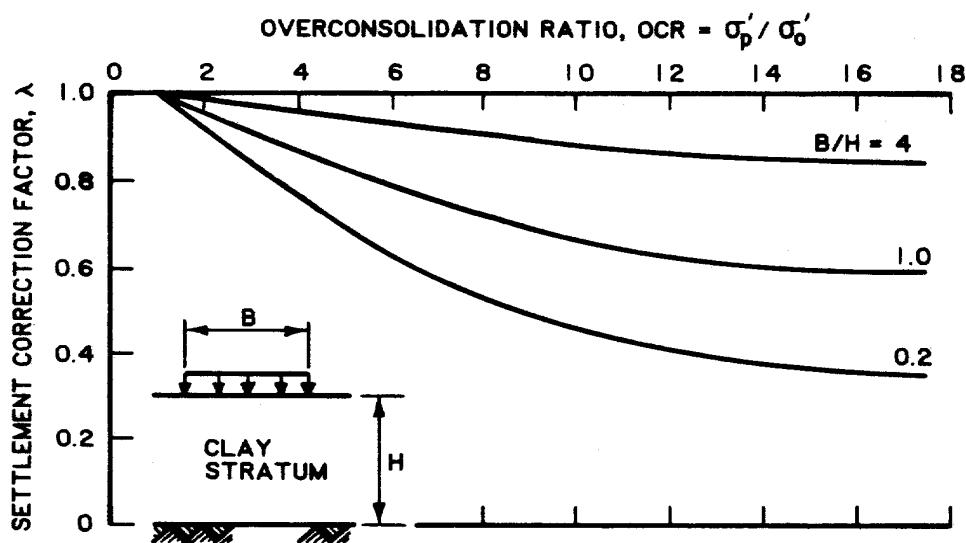


Figure 3-15. Settlement correction factor for overconsolidation effects. Reprinted by permission of the Transportation Research Board, National Research Council from Special Report 163, 1976, "Estimating Consolidation Settlement of Shallow Foundations On Overconsolidated Clay," by G. A. Leonards, p. 15.

(2) Stress path correction. This alternative approach attempts to simulate stress paths that occur in the field, as illustrated in Table 3-8. This procedure may require special laboratory tests using triaxial cells capable of undrained loading followed by consolidation. These tests have not usually been performed and are without standard operating guidelines. Approximations necessary to estimate suitable points in the soil profile for testing and estimates of stresses applied to soil elements at the selected points may introduce errors more significant than the Skempton and Bjerrum correction procedure.

3-13. Time Rate of Settlement. The solution for time rate of primary consolidation settlement is based on the Terzaghi 1-D consolidation theory in which settlement as a function of time is given by

$$\rho_{ct} = \frac{U_t \cdot \rho_{\lambda c}}{100} \quad (3-25)$$

where

Table 3-8

Summary of the Stress Path Procedure (Data from Item 35)

| Step | Procedure   |
|------|---|
| 1    | Select one or more points within the soil profile beneath the proposed structure.   |
| 2    | Determine initial stresses and pore pressures at the selected points.   |
| 3    | Estimate for each point the stress path for loading to be imposed by the structure. The stress path usually depends on undrained loading initially, followed by consolidation.  |
| 4    | Perform laboratory tests which follow the estimated stress paths; duplicate initial stresses, measure strains from undrained loading, then consolidate to the final effective stress $\sigma'_f$ and measure strains. |
| 5    | Use the strains measured to estimate settlement of the proposed structure.  |

$\rho_{ct}$  = consolidation settlement at time  $t$ , ft

$U_t$  = degree of consolidation of the compressible stratum at time  $t$ , percent

$\rho_{\lambda c}$  = ultimate consolidation settlement adjusted for overconsolidation effects, ft

Refer to Table 3-9 for the general procedure to determine time rate of settlement from primary consolidation.

a. Evaluation of the Degree of Consolidation. Solution of the Terzaghi consolidation theory to determine  $U_t$  is provided in Table 3-10 as a function of time factor  $T_v$  for four cases of different distributions of the initial excess pore water pressure. Figure 3-16 illustrates example distributions of the initial excess pore water pressure for single (drainage from one surface) and double (drainage from top and bottom surfaces) drainage.

(1) Time factor. The time factor is given by

$$T_v = \frac{C_v t}{H_e^2} \quad (3-26)$$

where

$c_v$  = coefficient of consolidation of the stratum, ft/day

$H_e$  = equivalent height of the compressible stratum, ft

Table 3-9

Time Rate of Settlement

| Step | Description  |
|------|--|
| 1    | Evaluate lower and upper bound values of the coefficient of consolidation, $c_v$ , of each soil stratum in the profile for each consolidation load increment from deformation-time plots of data from 1-D consolidationometer tests. Plot $c_v$ as a function of the logarithm of applied pressure. Refer to Table 3-11 and Figure 3-17 for methods of calculating $c_v$ .   |
| 2    | Select appropriate values of $c_v$ from the $c_v$ versus logarithm pressure plots using $\sigma'_f$ found from step 5, Table 3-5. Preliminary estimates of $c_v$ may be made from Figure 3-18.   |
| 3    | Select minimum and maximum values of $c_v$ and calculate the effective thickness $H'$ of a multilayer soil profile using the procedures in Table 3-12 relative to one of the soil layers with a given $c_{vi}$ . If the soil profile includes pervious incompressible seams, then evaluate $T_v$ and $U_t$ in steps 4 to 6 for each compressible layer and calculate $U_t$ of the soil profile by step 7.  |
| 4    | Evaluate minimum and maximum time factors $T_v$ of the compressible soil profile from Equation 3-26  |
|      | $T_v = \frac{c_v t}{H_e^2}$  |
|      | for various times $t$ using $c_v$ from step 3 (or $c_{vi}$ for multilayer soil). The equivalent compressible soil height $H_e$ is 1/2 of the actual height (or 1/2 of the effective height $H'$ of multiple soil layers) for double drainage from top and bottom surfaces of the compressible soil and equal to the height of the compressible soil for single drainage.   |
| 5    | Select the case, Table 3-10 and Figure 3-16 that best represents the initial pore water pressure distribution. If none of the given pressure distributions fit the initial distribution, then approximate the initial distribution as the sum or difference of some combination of the given standard distributions in Table 3-10 as illustrated in Figure 3-19. Note the cases and relative areas of the standard pore water pressure distributions used to approximate the initial distribution. |
| 6    | Evaluate minimum and maximum values of the degree of consolidation $U_t$ for given $T_v$ from Table 3-10. If none of the four cases in Table 3-10 model the initial pore pressure distribution, then the overall degree of consolidation may be evaluated by dividing the pore pressure distribution into areas that may be simulated by the cases in Table 3-10 and using Equation 3-28   |

Table 3-9. Concluded

| Step | Description   |
|------|---|
|      | $U_t = \frac{U_{t1}A_1 + U_{t2}A_2 + \dots + U_{ti}A_i}{A}$   |
|      | <p>where</p> <p><math>U_{ti}</math> = degree of consolidation of case <math>i</math> , <math>i = 1</math> to <math>4</math><br/> <math>A_i</math> = area of pore pressure distribution of case <math>i</math><br/> <math>A</math> = area of approximated pore pressure distribution</p> <p><math>U_t</math> may also be the degree of consolidation of a soil bounded by internal drainage layers (pervious soil). Omit step 7 if <math>U_t</math> is the degree of consolidation of the soil where pervious seams are not present.</p> |
| 7    | <p>Evaluate influence of internal drainage layers (pervious seams) on settlement by, Equation 3-29</p> $U_t = \frac{1}{\rho_c} \cdot (U_{t1}\rho_{c1} + U_{t2}\rho_{c2} + \dots + U_{tn}\rho_{cn})$ <p>where <math>U_t</math> is the degree of consolidation at time <math>t</math> and <math>\rho_c</math> is the ultimate consolidation settlement of the compressible soil profile. Subscripts 1, 2, ..., n indicate each compressible layer between seams.</p>  |
| 8    | <p>Determine the consolidation settlement as a function of time <math>\rho_{ct}</math> , where <math>\rho_{ct} = U_t \cdot \rho_{\lambda c}</math> , Equation 3-25.</p>   |

The equivalent thickness of a compressible stratum for single drainage (drainage from one boundary) is the actual height of the stratum.  $H_e$  is 1/2 of the actual height of the stratum for double drainage (drainage from top and bottom boundaries).

(2) Coefficient of consolidation. The coefficient of consolidation  $c_v$  may be found experimentally from conventional (step load) laboratory 1-D consolidometer test results by four methods described in Table 3-11, Figure 3-17 and Appendix E. Both Casagrande and Taylor methods, Table 3-11, are recommended and they may provide reasonable lower and upper bound values of the coefficient of consolidation. The Casagrande logarithm time method is usually easier to use with the less pervious cohesive soils; whereas, the Taylor square root of time method is easier to use with the more pervious cohesionless soils.



Table 3-10

Degree of Consolidation as a Function of Time Factor  $T_v$

| $T_v$ | Average Degree of Consolidation, $U_t$ Percent) |        |        |        |
|-------|---|--------|--------|--------|
|       | Case 1*   | Case 2 | Case 3 | Case 4 |
| 0.004 | 7.14  | 6.49   | 0.98   | 0.80   |
| 0.008 | 10.09   | 8.62   | 1.95   | 1.60   |
| 0.012 | 12.36   | 10.49  | 2.92   | 2.40   |
| 0.020 | 15.96   | 13.67  | 4.81   | 4.00   |
| 0.028 | 18.88   | 16.38  | 6.67   | 5.60   |
| 0.036 | 21.40   | 18.76  | 8.50   | 7.20   |
| 0.048 | 24.72   | 21.96  | 11.17  | 9.69   |
| 0.060 | 27.64   | 24.81  | 13.76  | 11.99  |
| 0.072 | 30.28   | 27.43  | 16.28  | 14.36  |
| 0.083 | 32.51   | 29.67  | 18.52  | 16.51  |
| 0.100 | 35.68   | 32.88  | 21.87  | 19.77  |
| 0.125 | 39.89   | 36.54  | 26.54  | 24.42  |
| 0.150 | 43.70   | 41.12  | 30.93  | 28.86  |
| 0.175 | 47.18   | 44.73  | 35.07  | 33.06  |
| 0.200 | 50.41   | 48.09  | 38.95  | 37.04  |
| 0.250 | 56.22   | 54.17  | 46.03  | 44.32  |
| 0.300 | 61.32   | 59.50  | 52.30  | 50.78  |
| 0.350 | 65.82   | 64.21  | 57.83  | 56.49  |
| 0.400 | 69.79   | 68.36  | 62.73  | 61.54  |
| 0.500 | 76.40   | 76.28  | 70.88  | 69.95  |
| 0.600 | 81.56   | 80.69  | 77.25  | 76.52  |
| 0.800 | 88.74   | 88.21  | 86.11  | 85.66  |
| 1.000 | 93.13   | 92.80  | 91.52  | 91.25  |
| 1.500 | 98.00   | 97.90  | 97.53  | 97.45  |
| 2.000 | 99.42   | 99.39  | 99.28  | 99.26  |

\*See Figure 3-16

(a) The Casagrande logarithm time method, Figure 3-17a, determines

$$c_v = \frac{0.197 h_e^2}{t_{50}} \quad (3-27a)$$

where

$c_v$  = coefficient of consolidation of stratum,  $\text{ft}^2/\text{day}$   
 $h_e$  = equivalent specimen thickness,  $\text{ft}$   
 $t_{50}$  = time at 50 percent of primary consolidation, days

The equivalent specimen thickness is the actual specimen height for single drainage and 1/2 of the specimen height for double drainage. This method usually provides a low value or slow rate of consolidation.

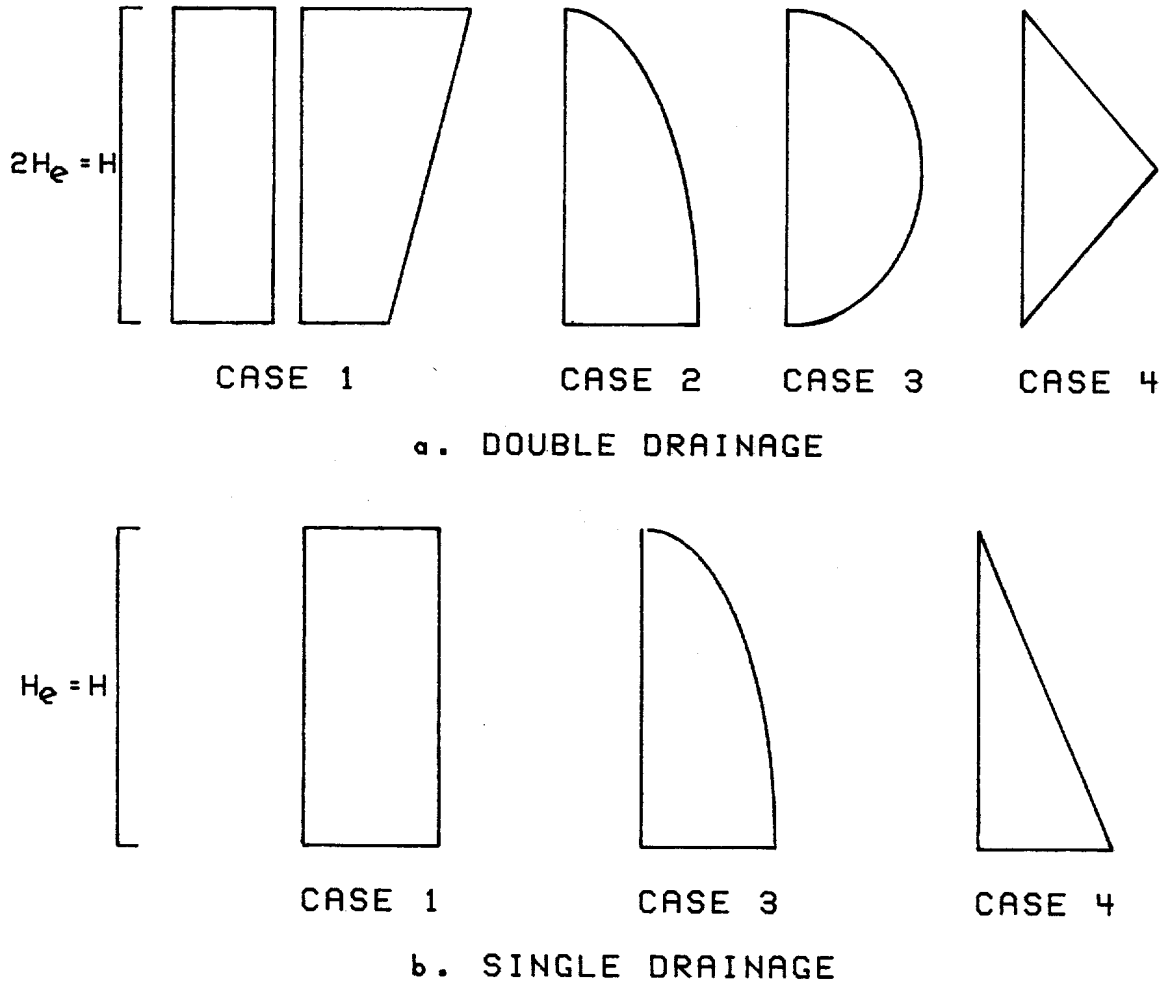


Figure 3-16. Example distributions of excess pore water pressure for double and single drainage.  $H$  is the actual stratum thickness and  $H_e$  is the equivalent height.

(b) The Taylor square root of time method, Figure 3-17b, determines

$$c_v = \frac{0.848h_e^2}{t_{90}} \quad (3-27b)$$

This method usually calculates a faster rate of consolidation than the Casagrande method and may better simulate field conditions.

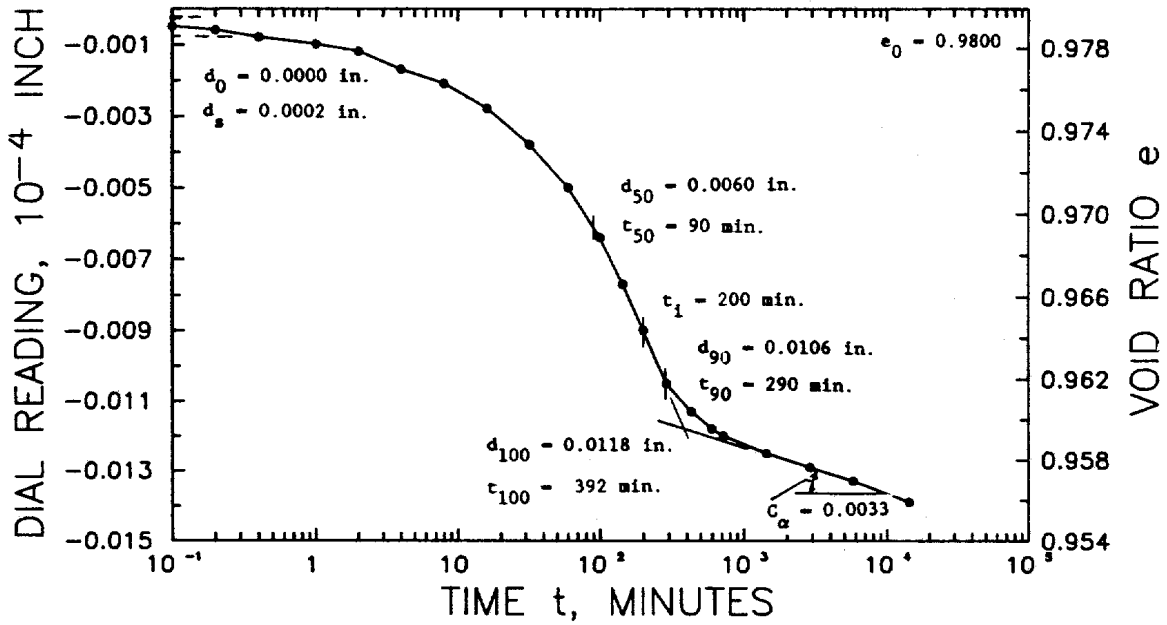
(c)  $c_v$  should be plotted as a function of the applied consolidation pressure. An appropriate value of  $c_v$  can be selected based on the final effective pressure  $\sigma'_f$  of the soil for a specific case.

(d) Figure 3-18 illustrates empirical correlations of the coefficient of consolidation with the liquid limit.

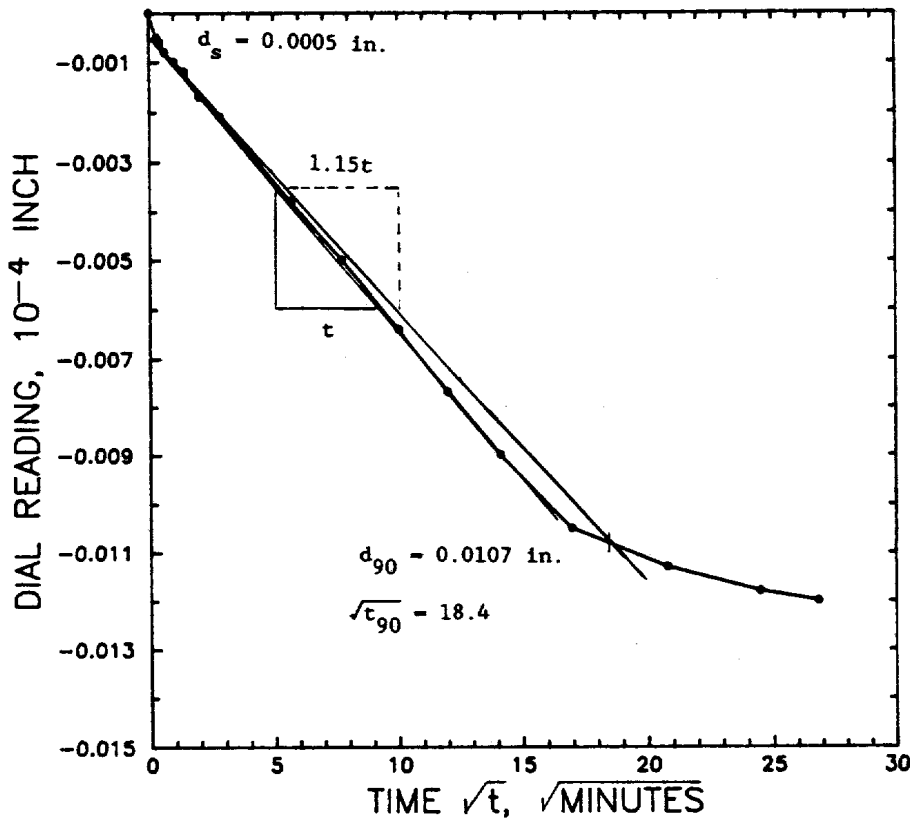
Table 3-11

Evaluation of the Coefficient of Consolidation  $c_v$   
by the Step Load Test (Data from Item 66)

| Method           | Equation for $c_v$          | Procedure  | Example  |
|------------------|-----------------------------|--|--|
| Terzaghi         | $\frac{0.848h_e^2}{t_{90}}$ | <p>1. Measure initial specimen height <math>h_o</math> and set initial dial reading <math>d_o</math>.</p> <p>2. Measure dial reading <math>d</math> as a function of time <math>t</math> and final specimen height <math>h_f</math>. Plot <math>d</math> versus <math>\log_{10}t</math>. Determine <math>d_s</math>, the corrected zero point (<math>d_o - d_s =</math> initial compression), by measuring vertical distance between time of about 0.1 min. and a time that is 4 times this.</p> <p>3. Determine time <math>t_{100}</math> and compression <math>d_{100}</math> to 100 percent consolidation as the intersection of the tangent and asymptote of the consolidation curve. Then determine <math>d_{90}</math> and <math>t_{90}</math>.</p> <p>4. Determine equivalent thickness of drainage path, <math>h_e = (h_o + h_f)/2</math> if single drainage;<br/><math>h_e = (h_o + h_f)/4</math> if double drainage</p> <p>5. Calculate <math>c_v</math></p> | <p><math>h_o = 1.148</math> inches<br/><math>d_o = 0.0000</math> inch<br/><math>h_f = 1.140</math> inches<br/><math>d_s = 0.0002</math> inch<br/>Refer to Figure 3-17a</p> <p><math>t_{100} = 392</math> min. or 0.27 day<br/><math>d_{100} = 0.0118</math> in.<br/><math>d_{90} = d_s + 0.9(d_{100} - d_s)</math><br/><math>= 0.0002 + 0.9(0.0118 - 0.0002)</math><br/><math>= 0.0002 + 0.0104</math><br/><math>= 0.0106</math> inch.<br/><math>t_{90} = 290</math> min. or 0.20 day<br/>from Figure 3-17a</p> <p><math>h_e = (h_o + h_f)/4</math><br/><math>= 2.288/4 = 0.572</math> inch or<br/>0.0477 ft</p> <p><math>c_v = \frac{0.85 \cdot 0.0477^2}{0.20} = 0.010</math> ft<sup>2</sup>/day</p> |
| Casagrande       | $\frac{0.197h_e^2}{t_{50}}$ | <p>Same as Terzaghi above except determine time to reach 50 percent of consolidation <math>t_{50}</math></p>   | <p><math>d_{50} = d_s + 0.5(d_{100} - d_s)</math><br/><math>= 0.0002 + 0.5(0.0118 - 0.0002)</math><br/><math>= 0.0002 + 0.0058</math><br/><math>= 0.0060</math> inch</p> <p><math>t_{50} = 90</math> min. or 0.063 day<br/><math>c_v = \frac{0.197 \cdot 0.0477^2}{0.063} = 0.007</math> ft<sup>2</sup>/day</p>  |
| Inflection Point | $\frac{0.405h_e^2}{t_i}$    | <p>Same as above except note time to reach inflection point of curve <math>t_i</math></p>  | <p><math>t_i = 200</math> min. or 0.14 day<br/>from Figure 3-17a</p> <p><math>c_v = \frac{0.405 \cdot 0.0477^2}{0.14} = 0.007</math> ft<sup>2</sup>/day</p>  |
| Taylor           | $\frac{0.848h_e^2}{t_{90}}$ | <p>1. Measure initial specimen height <math>h_o</math> and set initial dial reading <math>d_o</math></p> <p>2. Measure dial reading <math>d</math> as a function of time <math>t</math> and final specimen height <math>h_f</math>. Plot <math>d</math> versus <math>\sqrt{t}</math> or square root of time.</p> <p>3. Extend straight line portion back to <math>\sqrt{t} = 0</math> to obtain corrected initial reading <math>d_o</math>.</p> <p>4. Through <math>d_o</math> draw a straight line with inverse slope 1.15 times tangent and intersect laboratory curve to obtain <math>t_{90}</math></p> <p>5. Determine <math>h_e</math> as above</p> <p>6. Calculate <math>c_v</math></p>  | <p><math>h_o = 1.148</math> inches<br/><math>d_o = 0.0000</math> inch<br/><math>h_f = 1.140</math><br/>Refer to Figure 3-17b</p> <p><math>d_o = 0.0005</math> inch from<br/>Figure 3-17b</p> <p><math>\sqrt{t_{90}} = 18.4</math> or<br/><math>t_{90} = 339</math> min. or 0.23 day<br/>Refer to Figure 3-17b</p> <p><math>h_e = 0.0477</math> ft</p> <p><math>c_v = \frac{0.848 \cdot 0.0477^2}{0.23} = 0.008</math> ft<sup>2</sup>/day</p>   |



a. VOID RATIO-LOGARITHM TIME



b. DISPLACEMENT-SQUARE ROOT TIME

Figure 3-17. Example time plots from 1-D consolidometer test,  $\Delta\sigma = 1$  TSF

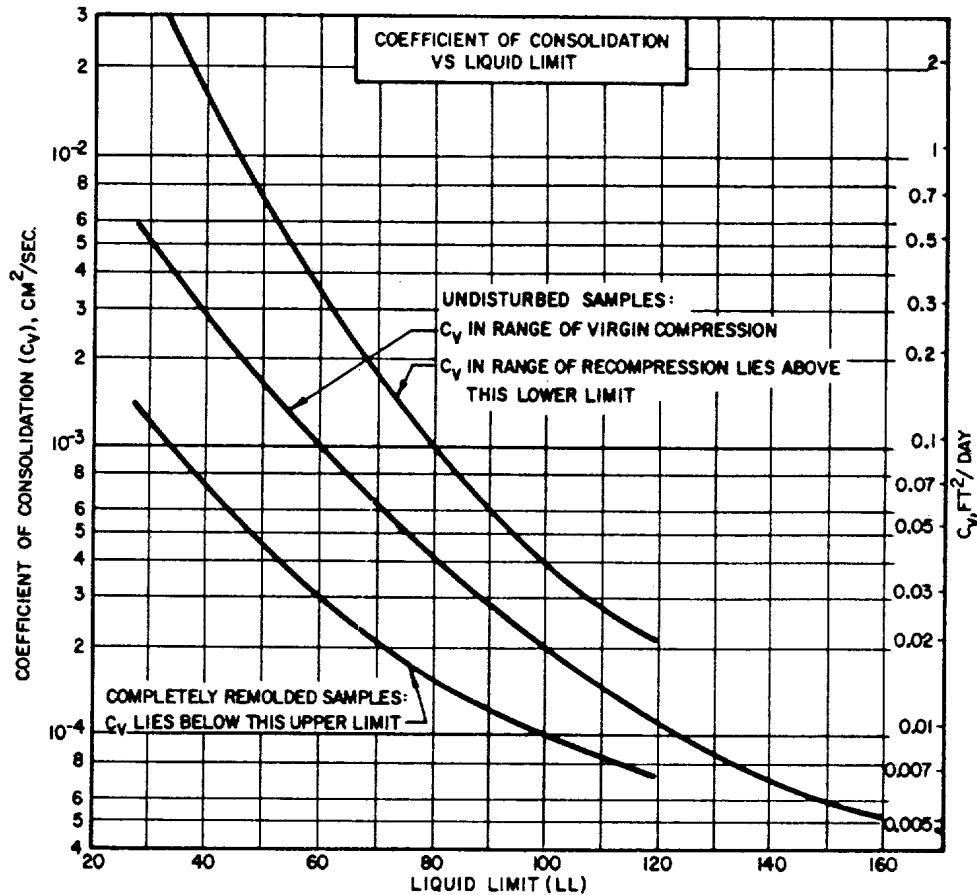


Figure 3-18. Correlations between coefficient of consolidation and liquid limit (NAVFAC DM 7.1)

(e) The procedure shown in Table 3-12 should be used to transform a compressible soil profile with variable coefficients of consolidation to a stratum of equivalent thickness  $H'$  and coefficient of consolidation  $c_v$ .  $T_v$  may be calculated from Equation 3-26 with  $H_e = H'$ . Refer to 3-13d, "Internal Drainage Layers", to estimate  $U_t$  of a soil profile with pervious incompressible sand seams interspersed between compressible soil.

b. Superposition of Excess Pore Pressure Distribution. An initial pore pressure distribution that is not modeled by any of the four cases in Table 3-10 and Figure 3-16 may sometimes be approximated by superposition of any of the four cases and the overall or weighted degree of consolidation found by

$$U_t = \frac{U_{t1}A_1 + U_{t2}A_2 + \dots + U_{ti}A_i}{A} \quad (3-28)$$

where  $A$  represents the areas of the initial pore pressure distributions. Subscripts 1, 2, ...,  $i$  indicate each pore pressure distribution. Linearity of the differential equations describing consolidation permits this assumption.

(1) Example excess pore water pressure distributions. Some example complex excess pore water pressure distributions are shown in Figure 3-19.

Table 3-12

Procedure to Evaluate the Effective Thickness and Average Degree of Consolidation for Multiple Soil Layers (After NAVFAC DM 7.1)

| Step | Description  |
|------|--|
| 1    | Select any layer $i$ , with coefficient of consolidation $c_{vi}$ and thickness $H_i$  |
| 2    | Transform the thickness of every other layer to an effective thickness $H'_j$<br><br>$H'_1 = H_1 \left[ \frac{C_{vi}}{C_{v1}} \right]^{1/2}$ $H'_2 = H_2 \left[ \frac{C_{vi}}{C_{v2}} \right]^{1/2}$ $H'_n = H_n \left[ \frac{C_{vi}}{C_{vn}} \right]^{1/2}$               |
| 3    | Calculate the total effective thickness by<br>$H' = H'_1 + H'_2 + \dots + H'_i + \dots + H'_n$   |
| 4    | Treat the entire thickness as a single layer of effective thickness $H'$ with a coefficient of consolidation $c_v = c_{vi}$ and evaluate the time factor $T_v$ from Equation 3-26. Evaluate the degree of consolidation with the assistance of Table 3-10 and Figure 3-16. |

(2) Application. For single drainage a decreasing excess pore pressure distribution may be modeled as illustrated in Figure 3-19b. If  $T_v = 0.2$ , the degree of consolidation is 50.41 and 37.04 percent for cases 1 and 4, respectively, Table 3-10. The overall degree of consolidation from Equation 3-27 for the example in Figure 3-19b is

$$U_t = \frac{50.41 \cdot H_e \cdot H_o - 37.04 \cdot 0.5 \cdot H_e \cdot H_o/2}{H_e \cdot H_o - 0.5 \cdot H_e \cdot H_o/2}$$

$$U_t = \frac{50.41 \cdot 1.0 - 37.04 \cdot 0.25}{1.0 - 0.25} = 54.87 \text{ percent}$$

The total area of the complex pore pressure distribution equals the area of case 1 less area of case 4, Figure 3-19b.

c. Internal Drainage Layers. Internal drainage layers of pervious soil within an otherwise low permeable clay stratum will influence the rate of settlement. This influence can be considered by summation of the degrees of consolidation of each compressible layer between the pervious seams by (item 52)

$$U_t = \frac{1}{\rho_c} \cdot (U_{t1} \cdot \rho_{c1} + U_{t2} \cdot \rho_{c2} + \dots + U_{tn} \cdot \rho_{cn}) \quad (3-29)$$

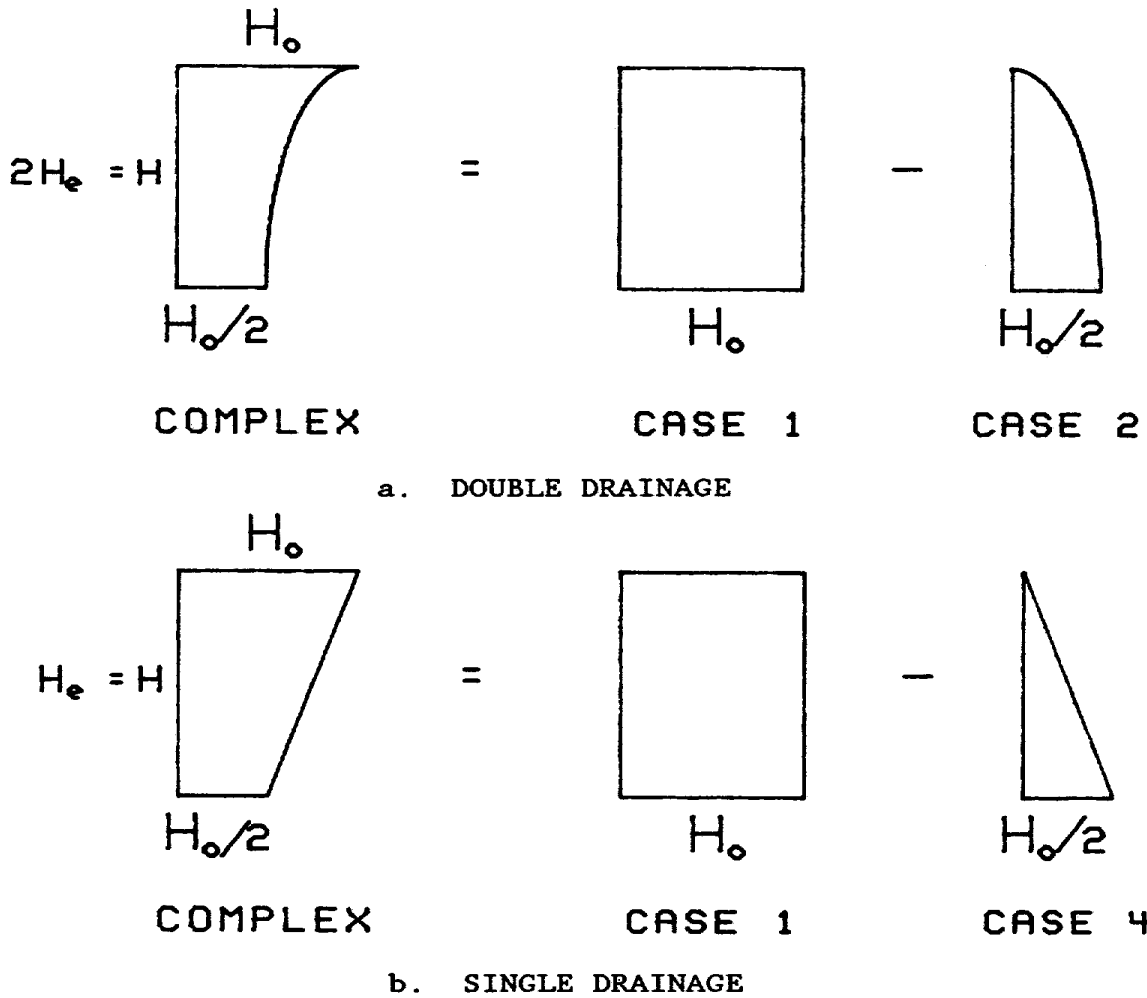
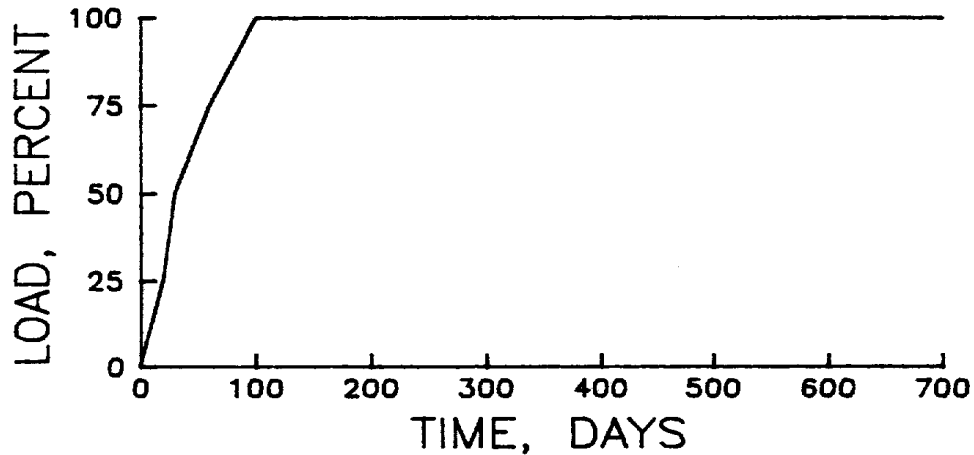


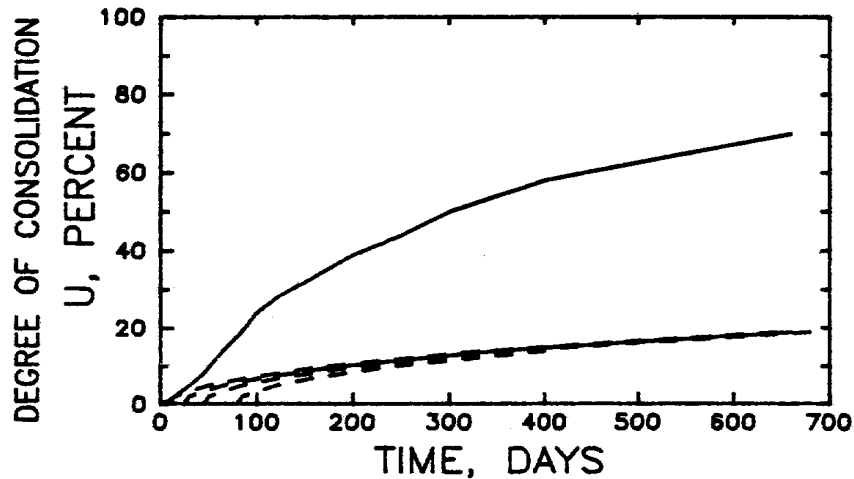
Figure 3-19. Example complex excess pore water pressure distributions

where  $U_t$  is the degree of consolidation at time  $t$  and  $\rho_c$  is the ultimate consolidation settlement of the entire compressible stratum. The subscripts 1, 2, ...,  $n$  indicate each compressible layer between pervious seams.

d. Time-Dependent Loading. The rate of load application to foundation soils is usually time-dependent. Estimates of the degree of consolidation of time-dependent loads may be made by dividing the total load into several equal and convenient increments such as the 25 percent increments illustrated in Figure 3-20. Each increment is assumed to be placed instantaneously at a time equal to the average of the starting and completion times of the placement of the load increment. The degree of consolidation  $U$  of the underlying compressible soil is evaluated for each of the equal load increments as a function of time and divided by the number of load increments to obtain a weighted  $U$ . Only one curve need be evaluated for the soil if the thickness of the compressible stratum and coefficient of consolidation are constant. The weighted  $U$  of each load increment may then be summed graphically as illustrated in Figure 3-20 to determine the degree of consolidation of the time-dependent loading. Chapter 5 of NAVFAC DM 7.1 provides a nomograph for evaluating  $U$  for a uniform rate of load application.



a. TIME-DEPENDENT LOADING



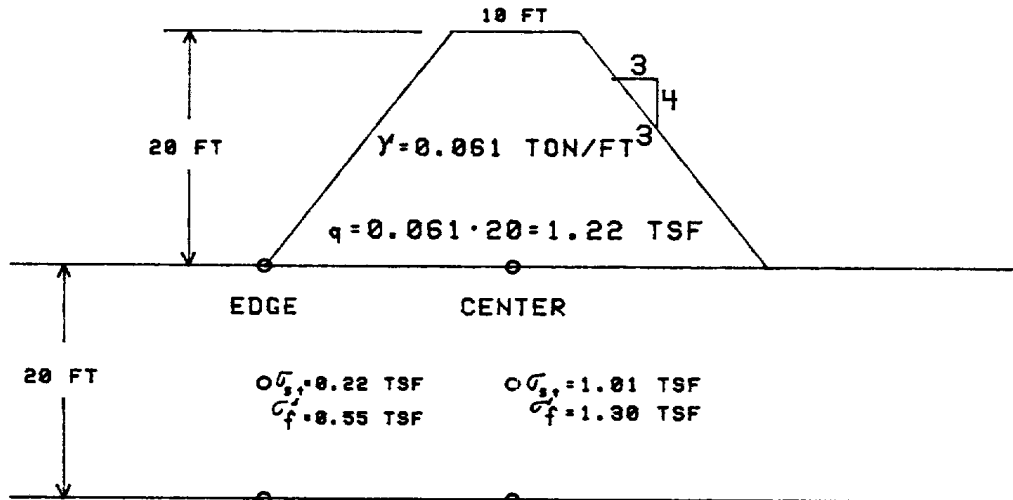
b. DEGREE OF CONSOLIDATION

Figure 3-20. Degree of consolidation for time-dependent loading

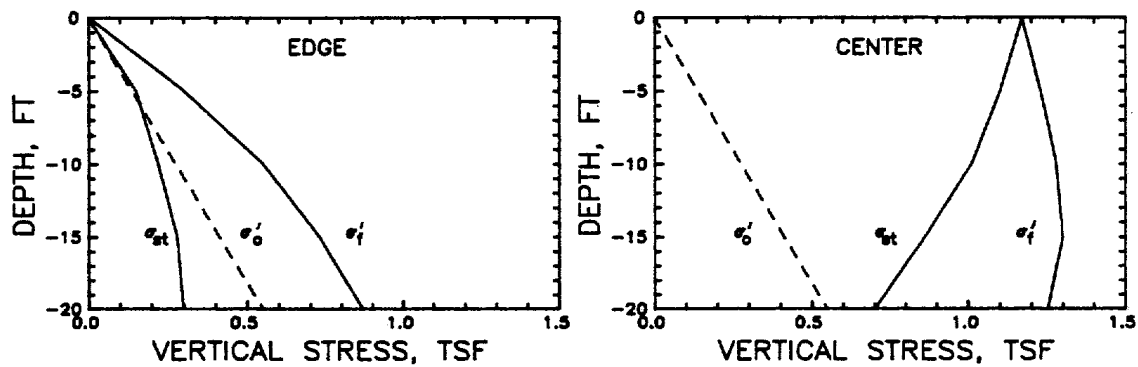
3-14. Example Application of Primary Consolidation. An embankment, Figure 3-21, is to be constructed on a compressible clay stratum 20 ft thick. The groundwater level is at the top of the compressible clay stratum. A consolidometer test was performed on an undisturbed specimen of the soil stratum after the standard load procedure described in EM 1110-2-1906. The specimen was taken from a depth of 10 ft and drainage was allowed on both top and bottom surfaces. A plot of the laboratory consolidation void ratio versus logarithm pressure relationship is shown in Figure 3-13.

a. Ultimate Primary Consolidation. The procedure described in Table 3-5 was applied to evaluate ultimate settlement beneath the edge and center of the embankment by hand calculations. The solution is worked out in Table 3-13a.





a. ELEVATION DETAIL



b. VERTICAL STRESS DISTRIBUTION

Figure 3-21. Embankment for example application

b. Time Rate of Consolidation. The procedure described in Table 3-9 was applied to evaluate the rate of settlement beneath the edge and center of the embankment by hand calculations assuming an instantaneous rate of loading. The solution is worked out in Table 3-13b.

3-15. Accuracy of Settlement Predictions. Experience shows that predictions of settlement are reasonable and within 50 percent of actual settlements for many soil types. Time rates of settlement based on laboratory tests and empirical correlations may not be representative of the field because time rates are influenced by in situ fissures, existence of high permeable sand or low permeable bentonite seams, impervious boundaries, and nonuniform soil parameters as well as the rate of construction.

a. Preconsolidation Stress. Soil disturbance of laboratory samples used for 1-D consolidation tests decreases the apparent preconsolidation stress.

Table 3-13

Evaluation of Consolidation Settlement by Hand Calculations  
for Example Application of Embankment, Figure 3-21

a. Total Settlement

| Step | Description  |
|------|--|
| 1    | The preconsolidation stress $\sigma'_p$ after the Casagrande construction procedure, Table 3-6a, is 6.6 tsf shown in Figure 3-13 (neglecting a minimum and maximum range). Since $\sigma'_p > \sigma'_o$ , the soil is overconsolidated with an OCR of about 22. The field virgin consolidation line is evaluated by the procedure in Table 3-6b.  |
| 2    | The initial effective stress distribution $\sigma'_o$ , is shown in Figure 3-21b. The wet unit weight $\gamma$ is 0.061 ton/ft <sup>3</sup> and $\gamma_w$ is 0.031 ton/ft. $\sigma'_o$ at 10 ft of depth is 0.3 tsf.  |
| 3    | The initial void ratio of the specimen prior to consolidation is $e_o = 1.05$ , Figure 3-13.   |
| 4    | The virgin compression index $C_c = 0.42$ and the recompression index $C_r = 0.078$ , Figure 3-13.   |
| 5    | The pressure distribution applied by the embankment was calculated using the trapezoidal distribution, Table C-1b (Appendix C). At 10 ft below ground surface the vertical stress applied by the embankment at the edge is 0.22 tsf and at the center is 1.01 tsf. The final effective pressure $\sigma'_f$ 10 ft below ground surface at the edge is 0.55 tsf and at the center 1.30 tsf. The estimated pressure distributions are shown in Figure 3-21b. |
| 6    | The change in void ratio $\Delta e$ at the 10 ft depth may be found from Equation 3-23 where the right-hand part of the equation containing $C_c$ is ignored because $\sigma'_f < \sigma'_p$ ,   |
|      | $\Delta e = C_r \cdot \log \frac{\sigma'_f}{\sigma'_o}$ <p style="margin-left: 100px;">Edge: <math>\Delta e_e = 0.078 \cdot \log_{10} \frac{0.55}{0.30} = 0.020</math></p> <p style="margin-left: 100px;">Center: <math>\Delta e_c = 0.078 \cdot \log_{10} \frac{1.30}{0.30} = 0.050</math></p>  |
| 7, 8 | Settlement of the stratum from Equation 3-20 is  |
|      | <p style="margin-left: 40px;">Edge: <math>\rho_{ce} = \frac{0.020}{1.00 + 1.05} \cdot 20 = 0.195 \text{ ft or } 2.34 \text{ inches}</math></p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">Center: <math>\rho_{cc} = \frac{0.050}{1.00 + 1.05} \cdot 20 = 0.488 \text{ ft or } 5.85 \text{ inches}</math></p>  |
|      | Improved reliability may be obtained by testing additional specimens at different depths within the compressible stratum, calculating settlements within smaller depth increments, and adding the calculated settlements, Equation 3-22.   |

Table 3-13. Continued

| Step | Description   |
|------|---|
| 9    | Settlement may be corrected for overconsolidation effects after the Skempton and Bjerrum procedure, Equation 3-24. $\lambda$ is about 0.8 from Figure 3-15 for an overconsolidation ratio > 18.<br><br><i>Edge:</i> $\rho_{3ce} = 0.8 \cdot 2.34 = 1.87$ inches<br><i>Center:</i> $\rho_{3cc} = 0.8 \cdot 5.85 = 4.68$ inches |

b. Time Rate of Settlement

| Step | Description  |
|------|--|
| 1,2  | Minimum and maximum estimates of the coefficient of consolidation may be made using the methods in Table 3-11 from a plot of the deformation as a function of time data, Figure 3-17. These data indicate $c_v$ values from 0.007 ft <sup>2</sup> /day to 0.010 ft <sup>2</sup> /day, Table 3-11. The range of applied consolidation pressures is from 1 to 2 tsf using double drainage during the consolidation test. |
| 3    | The time factors for the range of $c_v$ from 0.007 to 0.010 ft <sup>2</sup> /day is, Equation 3-26,<br><br>$\frac{0.007t}{10^2} < T_v < \frac{0.010t}{10^2} = 0.00007t < T_v < 0.00010t$ <p>where the time <math>t</math> is in days. The compressible stratum is assumed to drain on both top and bottom surfaces; therefore, the equivalent height <math>H_e</math> is 10 ft.</p>                                    |
| 4    | The excess pore water pressure distribution given by $\sigma_{st}$ in Figure 3-21 appears to be similar to case 2 at the edge and case 1 at the center, Figure 3-16a. The average degree of consolidation in percent after 1, 10, and 50 years using Table 3-10 is   |

| Time  |       | $T_v$ |       | $U_r$ , Percent |      |                 |      |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-----------------|------|-----------------|------|
| Years | Days  | Min   | Max   | Edge (Case 2)   |      | Center (Case 1) |      |
|       |       |       |       | Min             | Max  | Min             | Max  |
| 1     | 364   | 0.025 | 0.036 | 14.7            | 18.8 | 17.1            | 21.4 |
| 10    | 3640  | 0.255 | 0.364 | 54.7            | 65.4 | 56.7            | 67.0 |
| 50    | 18200 | 1.274 | 3.640 | 95.6            | 98.9 | 95.8            | 98.9 |

5 Cases 1 and 2 of Figure 3-16a are considered representative of the initial excess pore water pressure distributions so that superposition of the cases in Table 3-9, step 5 and 6, is not necessary.

Table 3-13. Concluded

| Step | Description  |
|------|--|
| 6    | Consolidation settlement as a function of time $t$ is, Equation 3-24 |

| Time, Years | Settlement $\rho_{ct}$ , inches |      |        |      |
|-------------|---------------------------------|------|--------|------|
|             | Edge                            |      | Center |      |
|             | Min                             | Max  | Min    | Max  |
| 1           | 0.27                            | 0.35 | 0.80   | 1.00 |
| 10          | 1.02                            | 1.22 | 2.65   | 3.14 |
| 50          | 1.79                            | 1.85 | 4.48   | 4.63 |
| $\infty$    |                                 | 1.87 |        | 4.68 |

b. Virgin Compression Index. Soil disturbance decreases the compression index.

c. Swelling and Recompression Indices. Soil disturbance increases the swelling and recompression indices.

d. Coefficient of Consolidation. Soil disturbance decreases the coefficient of consolidation for both virgin compression and recompression, Figure 3-18, in the vicinity of initial overburden and preconsolidation stresses. The value of  $c_v$  decreases abruptly at the preconsolidation stress for good undisturbed samples.

e. Field Test Embankment. A field test embankment may be constructed for significant projects to estimate field values of soil parameters such as  $C_c$  and  $c_v$ . Installation of elevation markers, inclinometers, and piezometers allow the measurement of settlement, lateral movement, and pore pressures as a function of time. These field soil parameters may subsequently be applied to full-scale structures.

3-16 Computer Solutions. Several computer programs are available to expedite calculation of settlement and rates of settlement of structures constructed on multilayer soil profiles.

a. Vertical Stress Distribution. The vertical stress distribution from Boussinesq and Westergaard solutions may be computed beneath foundations, single and multiple footings, and embankments from Program CSETT (item 61) and Program I0016 (item 45).

b. Ultimate Consolidation Settlement. Long-term consolidation settlement of structures may be computed assuming the Terzaghi 1-D consolidation by Program MAGSETTI (item 45) using output from Program CSETT or I0016.

c. Ultimate Consolidation and Rate of Settlement. One-dimensional consolidation settlement and rates of settlement by Terzaghi 1-D consolidation theory may be computed by Program FD31 (item 45) and Program CSETT (item 61).

(1) Program FD31 does not consider the influence of the vertical stress distribution with depth, and, therefore, it is applicable to fills or embankments with lateral dimensions substantially greater than the thickness of the consolidating soil.

(2) Program CSETT considers loaded regions of simple and complex geometric shapes for single or multiple and time-dependent loads. Loads may be 2- or 3-D. Stress distributions may be calculated by either Boussinesq or Westergaard methods. The program allows analysis of multiple soil layers and a variety of drainage conditions. Output consists of total settlement, settlement of individual layers, and degree of consolidation as a function of time and location requested by the user.

d. Settlement of Soft Soil. Settlement from desiccation and consolidation in soft, compressible soil with large void ratios may be computed by Program PCDDF (item 8). This program is applicable to dredged material and considers time-dependent loads, influence of void ratio on self-weight, permeability, nonlinear effective stress relationships, and large strains.

e. Settlement of Shallow Foundations in Sand. Corps Program I0030, "CSANDSET", can calculate the immediate settlement in sands of 14 different procedures including Alpan, Schultze and Sherif, Terzaghi and Peck, Schmertmann, and elastic methods. Program I0030 considers water table depth, embedment depth, and foundation dimensions for a variety of soil conditions in multilayer sands. Soil input data include SPT, CPT, elastic modulus, and water table depth.

f. Vertical Displacement of Various Soil Types. Appendix F provides a user's manual and listing of computer program VDISPL for calculating immediate settlement of granular materials using Schmertmann's procedure modified to consider prestress. Program VDISPL also can calculate immediate settlement of an elastic soil, consolidation/swell of an expansive soil, and settlement of a collapsible soil (see Chapter 5). Finite element program CON2D (item 15) may be used to calculate plane strain 2-D consolidation settlement of embankments and structures on multiple soil layers using the Cam Clay elasto-plastic constitutive soil model. CON2D may also analyze consolidation of saturated and partly saturated earth masses for time-dependent vertical loads to determine settlement, rate of settlement, and pore pressure distribution. This program may analyze the condition of saturated and partly saturated earth mass.

#### Section IV. Secondary Compression and Creep

3-17. Description. Secondary compression and creep are time-dependent deformations that appear to occur at essentially constant effective stress with negligible change in pore water pressure. Secondary compression and creep may be a dispersion process in the soil structure causing particle movement and may be associated with electrochemical reactions and flocculation. Although creep is caused by the same mechanism as secondary compression, they differ in the geometry of confinement. Creep is associated with deformation without volume and pore water pressure changes in soil subject to shear; whereas, secondary compression is associated with volume reduction without significant pore water pressure changes.

a. Model. Secondary compression and creep may be modeled by empirical or semi-empirical viscoelastic processes in which hardening (strengthening) or softening (weakening) of the soil occurs. Hardening is dominant at low stress levels; whereas, weakening is dominant at high stress levels. Deformation in soil subject to a constant applied stress can be understood to consist of three stages. The first stage is characterized by a change in rate of deformation that decreases to zero. The second or steady state stage occurs at a constant rate of deformation. A third stage may also occur at sufficiently large loads in which the rate of deformation increases ending in failure as a result of weakening in the soil. Soil subject to secondary compression in which the volume decreases as during a 1-D consolidometer test may gain strength or harden with time leading to deformation that eventually ceases, and, therefore, the second (steady state) and third (failure states) may never occur.

b. Relative Influence. Secondary compression and creep are minor relative to settlement caused by elastic deformation and primary consolidation in many practical applications. Secondary compression may contribute significantly to settlement where soft soil exists, particularly soft clay, silt, and soil containing organic matter such as peat or Muskeg or where a deep compressible stratum is subject to small pressure increments relative to the magnitude of the effective consolidation pressure.

3-18. Calculation of Secondary Compression. Settlement from secondary compression  $\rho_s$  has been observed from many laboratory and field measurements to be approximately a straight line on a semi-logarithmic plot with time, Figure 3-17a, following completion of primary consolidation. The decrease in void ratio from secondary compression is

$$\Delta e_{st} = C_{\alpha} \cdot \log \frac{t}{t_{100}} \quad (3-30)$$

where

- $\Delta e_{st}$  = change in void ratio from secondary compression at time t
- $C_{\alpha}$  = coefficient of secondary compression
- t = time at which secondary compression settlement is to be calculated, days
- $t_{100}$  = time corresponding to 100 percent of primary consolidation, days

Secondary compression settlement is calculated from Equation 3-20 similar to primary consolidation settlement.

a. Coefficient of Secondary Compression.  $C_{\alpha}$  is the slope of the void ratio-logarithm time plot for time exceeding that required for 100 percent of primary consolidation,  $t_{100}$ .  $t_{100}$  is arbitrarily determined as the intersection of the tangent to the curve at the point of inflection with the tangent to the straight line portion representing a secondary time effect, Figure 3-17a.

b. Estimation of  $C_{\alpha}$ . A unique value of  $C_{\alpha}/C_c$  has been observed, Table 3-14, for a variety of different types of soils. The ratio  $C_{\alpha}/C_c$  is constant and the range varies between 0.025 and 0.100 for all soils. High values of  $C_{\alpha}/C_c$  relate to organic soils.  $C_{\alpha}$  will in general increase with

Table 3-14

Coefficient of Secondary Compression  $C_\alpha$   
(Data from Item 43)

| Soil      | $C_\alpha/C_c$ |
|-----------|----------------|
| Clay      | 0.025 - 0.085  |
| Silt      | 0.030 - 0.075  |
| Peat      | 0.030 - 0.085  |
| Muskeg    | 0.090 - 0.100  |
| Inorganic | 0.025 - 0.060  |

time if the effective consolidation pressure  $\sigma'$  is less than a critical pressure or the preconsolidation stress  $\sigma'_p$ . For  $\sigma'$  greater than  $\sigma'_p$ ,  $C_\alpha$  will decrease with time; however,  $C_\alpha$  will remain constant with time within the range of effective pressure  $\sigma' > \sigma'_p$  if  $C_c$  also remains constant (e.g., the slope of the  $e$ - $\log \sigma$  curve is constant for  $\sigma' > \sigma'_p$ ). A first approximation of the secondary compression index  $C_\alpha$  is  $0.0001W_n$  for  $10 < W_n < 3000$  where  $W_n$  is the natural water content in percent (after NAVFAC DM 7.1).

c. Accuracy. Soil disturbance decreases the coefficient of secondary compression in the range of virgin compression. Evaluation of settlement caused by secondary compression has often not been reliable.

d. Example Problem. The coefficient of secondary compression was determined to be 0.0033 and time  $t_{100}$  is 392 minutes or 0.27 day, Figure 3-17a, for this example problem. The change in void ratio after time  $t = 10$  years or 3640 days is, Equation 3-30,

$$\Delta e = C_\alpha \cdot \log_{10} \frac{t}{t_{100}} = 0.0033 \cdot \log_{10} \frac{3640}{0.27} = 0.0136$$

The settlement from Equation 3-20 for an initial void ratio  $e_{100} = 0.96$  is

$$\rho_s = \frac{0.0136}{1 + 0.96} \cdot 20 = 0.139 \text{ ft or } 1.67 \text{ inches}$$

for a stratum of 20-ft thickness.

CHAPTER 4  
EVALUATION OF SETTLEMENT FOR  
DYNAMIC AND TRANSIENT LOADS

4-1. General. Dynamic and transient forces cause particle rearrangements and can cause considerable settlement, particularly in cohesionless soils, when the particles move into more compact positions. A large portion of dynamic live forces applied to foundation soil is from traffic on pavements. Dynamic forces from a rolling wheel depressing a pavement cause a multidirectional combination of cyclic shear and compression strains that precludes presentation of an appropriate settlement analysis in this chapter. This chapter provides guidance for analysis of settlement from earthquakes and repeated loads.

a. Amount of Settlement. The amount of settlement depends on the initial density of the soil, thickness of the soil stratum, and the maximum shear strain developed in the soil. Cohesionless soils with relative densities  $D_r$  greater than about 75 percent should not develop significant settlement; however, intense dynamic loading can cause some settlement of 1 to 2 percent of the stratum thickness even in dense sands.

b. Cause of Differential Settlement. A major cause of differential settlement is the compaction of loose sands during dynamic loading. Vibrations caused by machinery often cause differential settlement that may require remedial repairs or limitations on machine operations.

c. Time Effects. Time required for settlement from shaking can vary from immediately to almost a day. Settlement in dry sands occurs immediately during shaking under constant effective vertical stress. Shaking of saturated sands induces excess pore water pressures which lead to settlement when the pore pressures dissipate.

d. Accuracy. Errors associated with settlement predictions from dynamic loads will exceed those for static loads and can be 50 percent or more. These first order approximations should be checked with available experience.

e. Minimizing Settlement. Dynamic settlement may be insignificant provided that the sum of dynamic and static bearing stresses remain less than 1/2 of the allowable bearing capacity. Settlements that might occur under sustained dynamic loadings may be minimized by precompaction of the soil using dynamic methods. Dynamic compaction subjects the soil to severe dynamic loads that reduces the influence of any later shaking on settlement. Refer to Chapter 6 for dynamic compaction methods of minimizing settlement. Refer to ER 1110-2-1806 for general guidance and direction for seismic design and evaluation for all Corps of Engineer civil works projects.

4-2. Settlement from Earthquakes. Earthquakes primarily cause shear stress, shear strain, and shear motion from deep within the earth that propagates up toward the ground surface. This shear can cause settlement initially in deep soil layers followed by settlement in more shallow layers. Settlement caused by ground shaking during earthquakes is often nonuniformly distributed and can cause differential movement in structures leading to major damage. Settlement can occur from compaction in moist or dry cohesionless soil and from dissipation of excess hydrostatic pore pressure induced in saturated soil by earthquake ground motions. Ground motions are multidirectional; however, measure-



ments are generally made in two horizontal and one vertical acceleration components that propagate upward from underlying rock. The vertical component of acceleration is often considered to account for less than 25 percent of the settlement, but this percentage may be exceeded. Soil affected by ground motion and subsequent settlement may extend to considerable depth depending on the source of motion.

a. Tentative Simplified Procedure for Sand. A tentative simplified procedure to estimate settlement from the shaking forces of earthquakes on saturated sands that are at initial liquefaction and on dry sands is given in Table 4-1. Input data for this procedure include the blowcount  $N$  from SPT data as a function of depth, effective and total overburden pressures  $\sigma'_o$  and  $\sigma_o$ , and an estimate of the maximum horizontal acceleration of the ground surface from earthquake records (e.g., Regulation Guide 1.6, Nuclear Regulatory Commission, items 33 and 34; Office, Chief of Engineer policy for Corps of Engineer specifications for ground motions is provided by the Earthquake Engineering and Geosciences Division, Geotechnical Laboratory, USAE Waterways Experiment Station).

(1) Application. The procedure is applied to the Tokachioki earthquake in Table 4-2.

(2) Validation. This tentative procedure has not been fully validated. The example problems in Table 4-2 are based on estimated field behaviors and not on measured data against which to validate a settlement analysis.

b. WES Procedure for Sands. The Waterways Experiment Station is currently preparing a procedure on a validated (against centrifuge test data) 2-D soil-structure interactive, nonlinear dynamic effective stress analysis which computes dynamic response histories of motions, stresses, pore water pressures, and volume changes for the range of responses and pore water pressures up to and including the initial liquefaction condition. The effects of pore water pressures on moduli, motions, stresses, and volume changes are taken into account for the entire time history of an earthquake.

4-3. Settlement from Repeated Loads and Creep. Structures subject to repeated vertical loads experience a long-term settlement from the compression of cumulative cyclic loads and secondary compression or creep. Operating machinery, pile driving, blasting, wave or wind action are common causes of this type of dynamic loading. Methods of estimating secondary compression are provided in Section IV, Chapter 3.

a. Compaction Settlement from Machine Vibrations. A procedure to estimate settlement in sand layers from machine vibrations is described in Table 4-3. The procedure is applied to an example in Table 4-4.

b. Settlement Calculated from Laboratory Cyclic Strain Tests. Drained cyclic triaxial tests may be performed on pervious soil to evaluate the cyclic settlement through a cyclic strain resistance  $r_e$  (item 25).

(1) Test procedure. The soil should be consolidated to simulate the in situ stress state of effective horizontal and vertical pressures. The soil is subsequently subject to three different cyclic stress levels to evaluate  $r_e$ .

Table 4-1

A Suggested Tentative Procedure for Computation of  
Earthquake Settlement in Sand (Data from Item 63)

a. Saturated Sand that Reaches Initial Liquefaction

| Step    | Description   |  |          |                |          |       |       |           |     |       |  |       |     |        |                 |       |       |                 |      |        |       |           |       |       |       |           |       |       |                 |      |
|---------|---|--|----------|----------------|----------|-------|-------|-----------|-----|-------|--|-------|-----|--------|-----------------|-------|-------|-----------------|------|--------|-------|-----------|-------|-------|-------|-----------|-------|-------|-----------------|------|
| 1       | Determine the blow count $N$ from SPT tests as a function of depth and divide the profile into discrete layers of sand with each layer containing sand with similar blow count.   |  |          |                |          |       |       |           |     |       |  |       |     |        |                 |       |       |                 |      |        |       |           |       |       |       |           |       |       |                 |      |
| 2       | Determine correction factor $C_{ER}$ as follows where $C_{ER}$ = estimated rod energy in percent/60   |  |          |                |          |       |       |           |     |       |  |       |     |        |                 |       |       |                 |      |        |       |           |       |       |       |           |       |       |                 |      |
|         | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Country</th> <th>Hammer</th> <th>Hammer Release</th> <th><math>C_{ER}</math></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">Japan</td> <td>Donut</td> <td>Free-Fall</td> <td>1.3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Donut</td> <td>Rope and Pulley<br/>with special<br/>throw release</td> <td>1.12*</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">USA</td> <td>Safety</td> <td>Rope and Pulley</td> <td>1.00*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Donut</td> <td>Rope and Pulley</td> <td>0.75</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Europe</td> <td>Donut</td> <td>Free-Fall</td> <td>1.00*</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">China</td> <td>Donut</td> <td>Free-Fall</td> <td>1.00*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Donut</td> <td>Rope and Pulley</td> <td>0.83</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Country  | Hammer   | Hammer Release | $C_{ER}$ | Japan | Donut | Free-Fall | 1.3 | Donut | Rope and Pulley<br>with special<br>throw release | 1.12* | USA | Safety | Rope and Pulley | 1.00* | Donut | Rope and Pulley | 0.75 | Europe | Donut | Free-Fall | 1.00* | China | Donut | Free-Fall | 1.00* | Donut | Rope and Pulley | 0.83 |
| Country | Hammer  | Hammer Release                                   | $C_{ER}$ |                |          |       |       |           |     |       |  |       |     |        |                 |       |       |                 |      |        |       |           |       |       |       |           |       |       |                 |      |
| Japan   | Donut   | Free-Fall  | 1.3      |                |          |       |       |           |     |       |  |       |     |        |                 |       |       |                 |      |        |       |           |       |       |       |           |       |       |                 |      |
|         | Donut   | Rope and Pulley<br>with special<br>throw release | 1.12*    |                |          |       |       |           |     |       |  |       |     |        |                 |       |       |                 |      |        |       |           |       |       |       |           |       |       |                 |      |
| USA     | Safety  | Rope and Pulley                                  | 1.00*    |                |          |       |       |           |     |       |  |       |     |        |                 |       |       |                 |      |        |       |           |       |       |       |           |       |       |                 |      |
|         | Donut   | Rope and Pulley                                  | 0.75     |                |          |       |       |           |     |       |  |       |     |        |                 |       |       |                 |      |        |       |           |       |       |       |           |       |       |                 |      |
| Europe  | Donut   | Free-Fall  | 1.00*    |                |          |       |       |           |     |       |  |       |     |        |                 |       |       |                 |      |        |       |           |       |       |       |           |       |       |                 |      |
| China   | Donut   | Free-Fall  | 1.00*    |                |          |       |       |           |     |       |  |       |     |        |                 |       |       |                 |      |        |       |           |       |       |       |           |       |       |                 |      |
|         | Donut   | Rope and Pulley                                  | 0.83     |                |          |       |       |           |     |       |  |       |     |        |                 |       |       |                 |      |        |       |           |       |       |       |           |       |       |                 |      |
|         | *Prevalent method in USA today  |  |          |                |          |       |       |           |     |       |  |       |     |        |                 |       |       |                 |      |        |       |           |       |       |       |           |       |       |                 |      |
| 3       | Estimate the total and effective overburden pressure $\sigma_o$ and $\sigma'_o$ in tsf units from known or estimated soil unit weights and pore water pressures of each layer.  |  |          |                |          |       |       |           |     |       |  |       |     |        |                 |       |       |                 |      |        |       |           |       |       |       |           |       |       |                 |      |
| 4       | Estimate the relative density $D_r$ in percent from results of SPT data using Figure 4-1, improved correlations for overconsolidated soil (item 50), or the expression  |  |          |                |          |       |       |           |     |       |  |       |     |        |                 |       |       |                 |      |        |       |           |       |       |       |           |       |       |                 |      |
|         | $D_r = 21 \cdot \frac{N_J}{\sigma'_o + 0.7} \quad (4-1a)$   |  |          |                |          |       |       |           |     |       |  |       |     |        |                 |       |       |                 |      |        |       |           |       |       |       |           |       |       |                 |      |
|         | where $N_J$ is the blowcount by Japanese standards and $\sigma'_o$ is the effective overburden pressure. $D_r$ for normally consolidated material may be estimated by (item 42)   |  |          |                |          |       |       |           |     |       |  |       |     |        |                 |       |       |                 |      |        |       |           |       |       |       |           |       |       |                 |      |
|         | $D_r = 11.7 + 0.76 \cdot [222N + 1600 - 736\sigma'_o - 50c_u^2]^{1/2} \quad (4-1b)$   |  |          |                |          |       |       |           |     |       |  |       |     |        |                 |       |       |                 |      |        |       |           |       |       |       |           |       |       |                 |      |
|         | where   |  |          |                |          |       |       |           |     |       |  |       |     |        |                 |       |       |                 |      |        |       |           |       |       |       |           |       |       |                 |      |
|         | $\sigma'_o$ = effective overburden pressure, tsf  |  |          |                |          |       |       |           |     |       |  |       |     |        |                 |       |       |                 |      |        |       |           |       |       |       |           |       |       |                 |      |
|         | $c_u$ = uniformity coefficient, $D_{60}/D_{10}$   |  |          |                |          |       |       |           |     |       |  |       |     |        |                 |       |       |                 |      |        |       |           |       |       |       |           |       |       |                 |      |
|         | $D_{60}$ = grain diameter at which 60 percent of soil weight is finer   |  |          |                |          |       |       |           |     |       |  |       |     |        |                 |       |       |                 |      |        |       |           |       |       |       |           |       |       |                 |      |
|         | $D_{10}$ = grain diameter at which 10 percent of soil weight is finer   |  |          |                |          |       |       |           |     |       |  |       |     |        |                 |       |       |                 |      |        |       |           |       |       |       |           |       |       |                 |      |

Table 4-1a. Continued

| Step | Description |
|------|-------------|
|------|-------------|

5 Determine the correction factor  $C_N$  from Figure 4-2 using  $\sigma'_o$  and  $D_r$ .

6 Calculate normalized blowcount

$$(N_1)_{60} = C_{FR} \cdot C_N \cdot N \quad (4-2)$$

where  $(N_1)_{60}$  = SPT blowcount normalized to an effective energy delivered to the drill rod at 60 percent of theoretical free-fall energy.

7 Calculate the cyclic shear stress ratio causing initial liquefaction to occur for the given earthquake of magnitude  $M$

$$\left[ \frac{\tau_{av}}{\sigma'_o} \right]_M = 0.65 \cdot \frac{a_{max}}{g} \cdot \frac{\sigma_o}{\sigma'_o} \cdot r_d \quad (4-3)$$

where

- $\tau_{av}$  = average cyclic shear stress induced by earthquake shaking, tsf
- $\sigma'_o$  = effective overburden pressure, tsf
- $\sigma_o$  = total overburden pressure, tsf
- $a_{max}$  = maximum horizontal acceleration of the ground surface in units of  $g$  from earthquake records of magnitude  $M$  (Regulation Guide 1.60, Nuclear Regulatory Commission; refer to Earthquake Engineering and Geosciences Division, Geotechnical Laboratory, USAE Waterways Experiment Station for Corps of Engineers)
- $g$  = acceleration of gravity, 32.2 ft/sec/sec
- $r_d$  = stress reduction factor; 1.0 at the ground surface decreasing to 0.9 at depth 30 ft below ground surface

8 Convert  $(\tau_{av} / \sigma'_o)_M$  to an equivalent earthquake of magnitude  $M = 7.5$  by

$$\left[ \frac{\tau_{av}}{\sigma'_o} \right]_{7.5} = \left[ \frac{\tau_{av}}{\sigma'_o} \right]_M \cdot \frac{1}{r_m} \quad (4-4)$$

where the scaling factor  $r_m$  is

Table 4-1a. Continued

| Step                      | Description  |                           |   |       |     |    |      |     |    |      |      |    |      |      |   |      |      |       |      |
|---------------------------|--|---------------------------|---|-------|-----|----|------|-----|----|------|------|----|------|------|---|------|------|-------|------|
|                           | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Magnitude of Earthquake M</th> <th>*No Representative Cycles at <math>0.65\tau_{max}</math></th> <th><math>r_m</math></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>8.5</td> <td>26</td> <td>0.89</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7.5</td> <td>15</td> <td>1.00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6.75</td> <td>10</td> <td>1.13</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6.00</td> <td>5</td> <td>1.32</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5.25</td> <td>2 - 3</td> <td>1.50</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Magnitude of Earthquake M | *No Representative Cycles at $0.65\tau_{max}$ | $r_m$ | 8.5 | 26 | 0.89 | 7.5 | 15 | 1.00 | 6.75 | 10 | 1.13 | 6.00 | 5 | 1.32 | 5.25 | 2 - 3 | 1.50 |
| Magnitude of Earthquake M | *No Representative Cycles at $0.65\tau_{max}$  | $r_m$                     |   |       |     |    |      |     |    |      |      |    |      |      |   |      |      |       |      |
| 8.5                       | 26   | 0.89                      |   |       |     |    |      |     |    |      |      |    |      |      |   |      |      |       |      |
| 7.5                       | 15   | 1.00                      |   |       |     |    |      |     |    |      |      |    |      |      |   |      |      |       |      |
| 6.75                      | 10   | 1.13                      |   |       |     |    |      |     |    |      |      |    |      |      |   |      |      |       |      |
| 6.00                      | 5  | 1.32                      |   |       |     |    |      |     |    |      |      |    |      |      |   |      |      |       |      |
| 5.25                      | 2 - 3  | 1.50                      |   |       |     |    |      |     |    |      |      |    |      |      |   |      |      |       |      |

\* Representative of the number of equivalent stress cycles caused by the earthquake where  $\tau_{max}$  = maximum cycle stress

9 Evaluate volumetric strain  $\epsilon_c$  in percent after initial liquefaction from Figure 4-3 using calculated values of  $(N_1)_{60}$  of step 6 and  $(\tau_{av}/\sigma'_o)_{7.5}$  of step 8.

10 Evaluate earthquake settlement  $\rho_e$  after initial liquefaction in inches from

$$\rho_e = \sum_{j=1}^n \frac{\epsilon_c}{100} \cdot h_j \quad (4-5)$$

where  $h_j$  = thickness of each stratum  $j$  in inches

b. Dry Sand

| Step | Description   |
|------|---|
| 1-6  | Repeat steps 1 through 6 in Table 4-1a above to evaluate $D_r$ and $(N_1)_{60}$ .   |
| 7    | Evaluate mean effective pressure $\sigma'_m$ of each stratum in tsf (e.g., $\sigma'_m = \frac{(1 + 2K_o)}{3} \cdot \sigma'_o = 0.65\sigma'_o$ if the coefficient of lateral earth pressure $K_o = 0.47$ ). $\sigma'_m$ is considered the total mean pressure in dry sand. |
| 8    | Calculate   |
|      | $G_{max} = 10 \cdot [(N_1)_{60}]^{1/3} \cdot [\sigma'_m]^{1/2} \quad (4-6)$   |

where  $G_{max}$  = maximum shear modulus, tsf

Table 4-1a. Concluded

| Step | Description  |
|------|--|
| 9    | <p>Evaluate using <math>G_{\max}</math> from step 8</p> $\gamma_{\text{eff}} \cdot \frac{G_{\text{eff}}}{G_{\max}} = \frac{0.65 \cdot a_{\max} \cdot \sigma_o \cdot r_d}{g \cdot G_{\max}} \quad (4-7)$ <p>where</p> <p><math>\gamma_{\text{eff}}</math> = effective cyclic shear strain induced by an earthquake<br/> <math>G_{\text{eff}}</math> = effective shear modulus at earthquake induced shear stress, tsf<br/> <math>a_{\max}</math> = maximum horizontal acceleration at the ground surface in units of <math>g</math><br/> <math>\sigma_o</math> = total overburden pressure, tsf<br/> <math>g</math> = acceleration of gravity, 32 ft/sec/sec<br/> <math>r_d</math> = stress reduction factor; 1.0 at the ground surface decreasing to 0.9 at a depth 30 ft below ground surface</p> |
| 10   | Evaluate $\gamma_{\text{eff}}$ from Figure 4-4 using $\gamma_{\text{eff}} \cdot G_{\text{eff}} / G_{\max}$ from step 9 and $\sigma'_m$ from step 7; multiply by 100 to convert to percent.   |
| 11   | Use $\gamma_{\text{eff}}$ and evaluate volumetric strain in percent $\epsilon_{c,7.5}$ from Figure 4-5 using $D_r$ or $(N_1)_{60}$ for an $M = 7.5$ magnitude earthquake.  |
| 12   | Evaluate volumetric strain ratio from Figure 4-6 for the given magnitude of earthquake $M$ and multiply this ratio by $\epsilon_{c,7.5}$ to calculate $\epsilon_{c,M}$ .   |
| 13   | Multiply $\epsilon_{c,M}$ by 2 to consider the multidirection effect of earthquake shaking on settlement and evaluate total earthquake induced settlement of each stratum $j$ of thickness $h_j$ for $n$ strata by   |
|      | $\rho_e = \sum_{j=1}^n \frac{2\epsilon_{c,M}}{100} \cdot h_j \quad (4-8)$  |

Table 4-2

Example Applications of Simplified Procedure  
to Estimate Earthquake Settlement

a. Saturated Sand at Initial Liquefaction Condition

| Layer | Thick-<br>ness,<br>ft | N    | $C_{ER}$ | $\sigma'_o$ ,<br>psf | $C_N$ | $(N_1)_{60}$ | $\frac{\tau_{av}}{\sigma_o}$ | $\epsilon_c$ ,<br>percent | $\rho_e$<br>in. |
|-------|-----------------------|------|----------|----------------------|-------|--------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------|
| 1     | 4.0                   | 1.0  | 0.82*    | 240                  |       |              |                              |                           |                 |
| 2     | 3.3                   | 0.5  | 0.82*    | 575                  | 1.7   | 0.7          | 0.155                        | 10.0                      | 4.0             |
| 3     | 3.3                   | 0.5  | 0.82*    | 764                  | 1.57  | 0.6          | 0.185                        | 10.0                      | 4.0             |
| 4     | 3.3                   | 0.5  | 1.09     | 954                  | 1.44  | 0.8          | 0.200                        | 10.0                      | 4.0             |
| 5     | 3.3                   | 2.0  | 1.09     | 1144                 | 1.34  | 2.9          | 0.210                        | 5.5                       | 2.2             |
| 6     | 3.3                   | 5.0  | 1.09     | 1334                 | 1.24  | 6.8          | 0.215                        | 3.2                       | 1.3             |
| 7     | 3.3                   | 23.0 | 1.21     | 1523                 | 1.16  | 32.0         | 0.220                        | 0.0                       | 0.0             |
| 8     | 3.3                   | 33.0 | 1.21     | 1713                 | 1.09  | 44.0         | 0.225                        | 0.0                       |                 |
| 9     | 3.3                   | 28.0 | 1.21     | 1903                 | 1.03  | 35.0         | 0.225                        | 0.0                       |                 |
| 10    | 3.3                   | 33.0 | 1.21     | 2093                 | 0.97  | 39.0         | 0.225                        | 0.0                       |                 |

Note: \*Corrected by 0.75  
 Water Table = 4 ft  
 Estimated Maximum Acceleration  $a_{max} = 0.2 g$   
 Total Settlement = 15.5  
 Observed Maximum Settlement  $\approx$  20

b. Dry Sand

| Layer | Thick-<br>ness,<br>ft | $\sigma'_o$ ,<br>psf | $G_{max}$ ,<br>ksf | $\gamma_{eff} \frac{G_{eff}}{G_{max}}$ | $\gamma_{eff}$ | $\epsilon_{c,7.5}$ ,<br>percent | $\epsilon_{c,6.6}$<br>percent | $\rho_e$ ,<br>in. |
|-------|-----------------------|----------------------|--------------------|--|----------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1     | 5                     | 240                  | 520                | 0.00013                                | 0.0005         | 0.14                            | 0.11                          | 0.13              |
| 2     | 5                     | 715                  | 900                | 0.00023                                | 0.0008         | 0.23                            | 0.18                          | 0.22              |
| 3     | 10                    | 1425                 | 1270               | 0.00032                                | 0.0012         | 0.35                            | 0.28                          | 0.67              |
| 4     | 10                    | 2375                 | 1630               | 0.00040                                | 0.0014         | 0.40                            | 0.32                          | 0.77              |
| 5     | 10                    | 3325                 | 1930               | 0.00045                                | 0.0015         | 0.45                            | 0.36                          | 0.86              |
| 6     | 10                    | 4275                 | 2190               | 0.00046                                | 0.0013         | 0.38                            | 0.30                          | 0.71              |

Note: Total estimated settlement = 2.7 inches  
 Total Settlement = 3.37

$D_r = 45$  percent  
 $a_{max} = 0.45 g$

$(N_1)_{60} = 9$

Reprinted by permission of the American Society of Civil Engineers from Journal of Geotechnical Engineering, Vol 118, 1987, "Evaluation of Settlements in Sands Due to Earthquake Shaking", by K. Tokimatsu and H. B. Seed, p. 871, 876

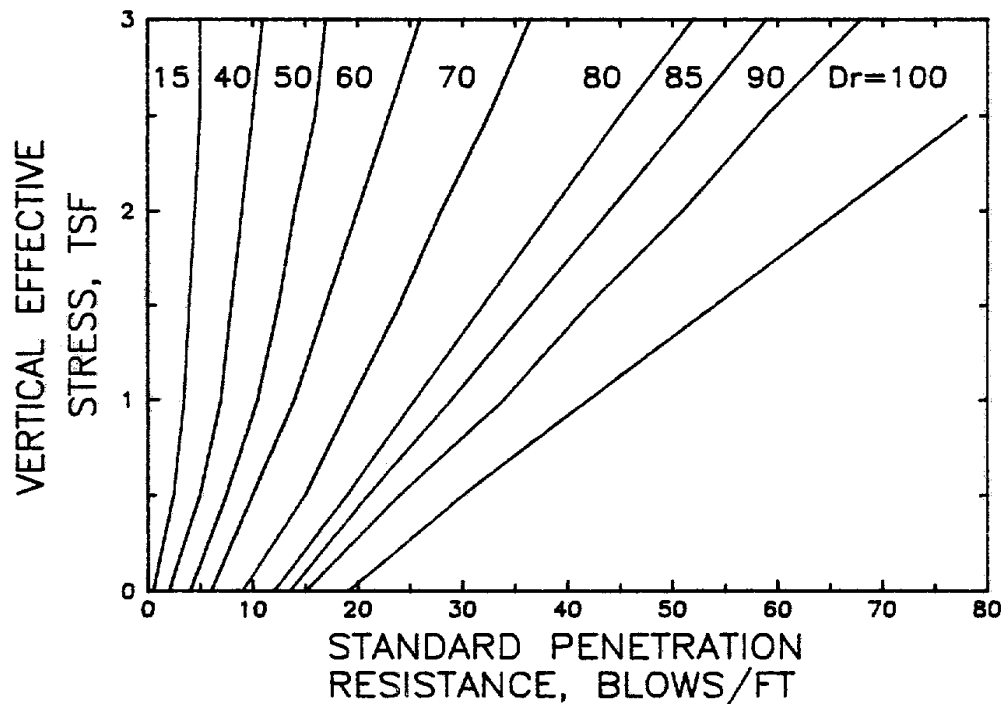


Figure 4-1. Correlations between relative density and blow count N from SPT after Gibbs and Holtz (data from NAVFAC DM-7.1)

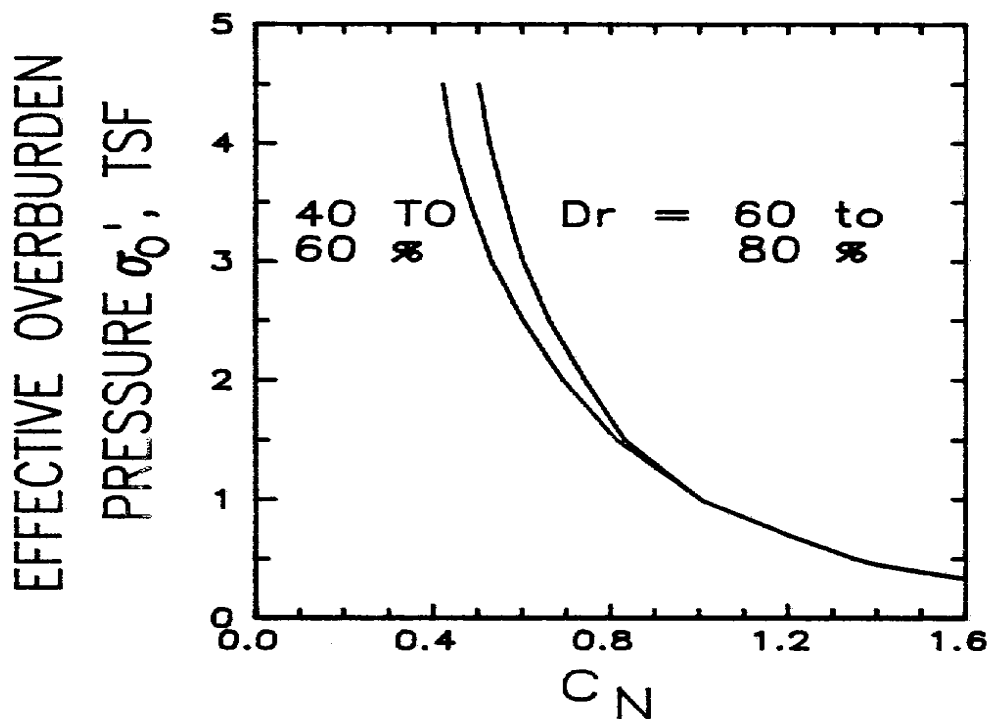


Figure 4-2. Curves for determination of  $C_N$  (data from item 62)

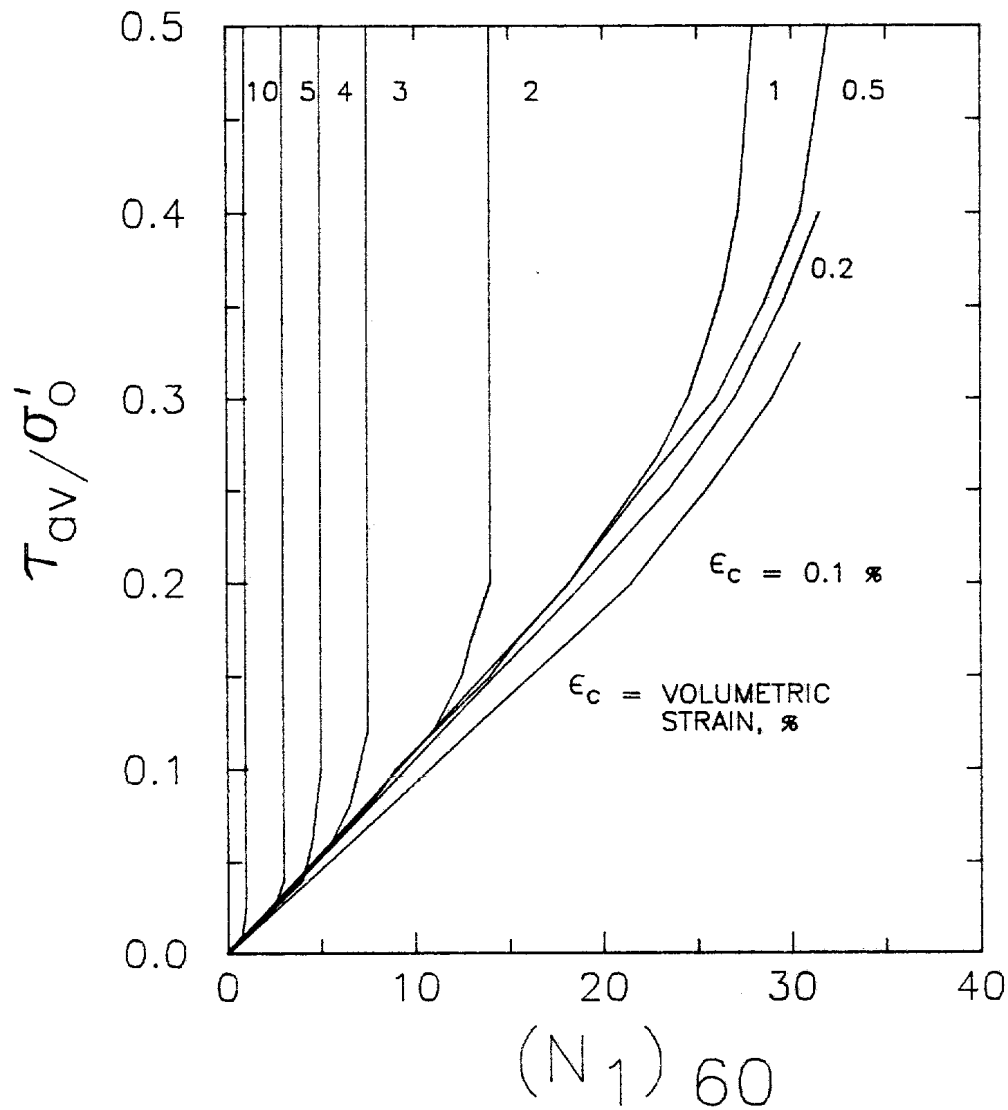


Figure 4-3. Proposed relationship between cyclic stress ratio  $(N_1)_{60}$  and volumetric strain  $\epsilon_c$  for saturated clean sands for  $M = 7.5$  earthquake. Reprinted by permission of the American Society of Civil Engineers from Journal of Geotechnical Engineering, Vol 118, 1987, "Evaluation of Settlements in Sands Due to Earthquake Shaking", by K. Tokimatsu and H. B. Seed, p. 866.



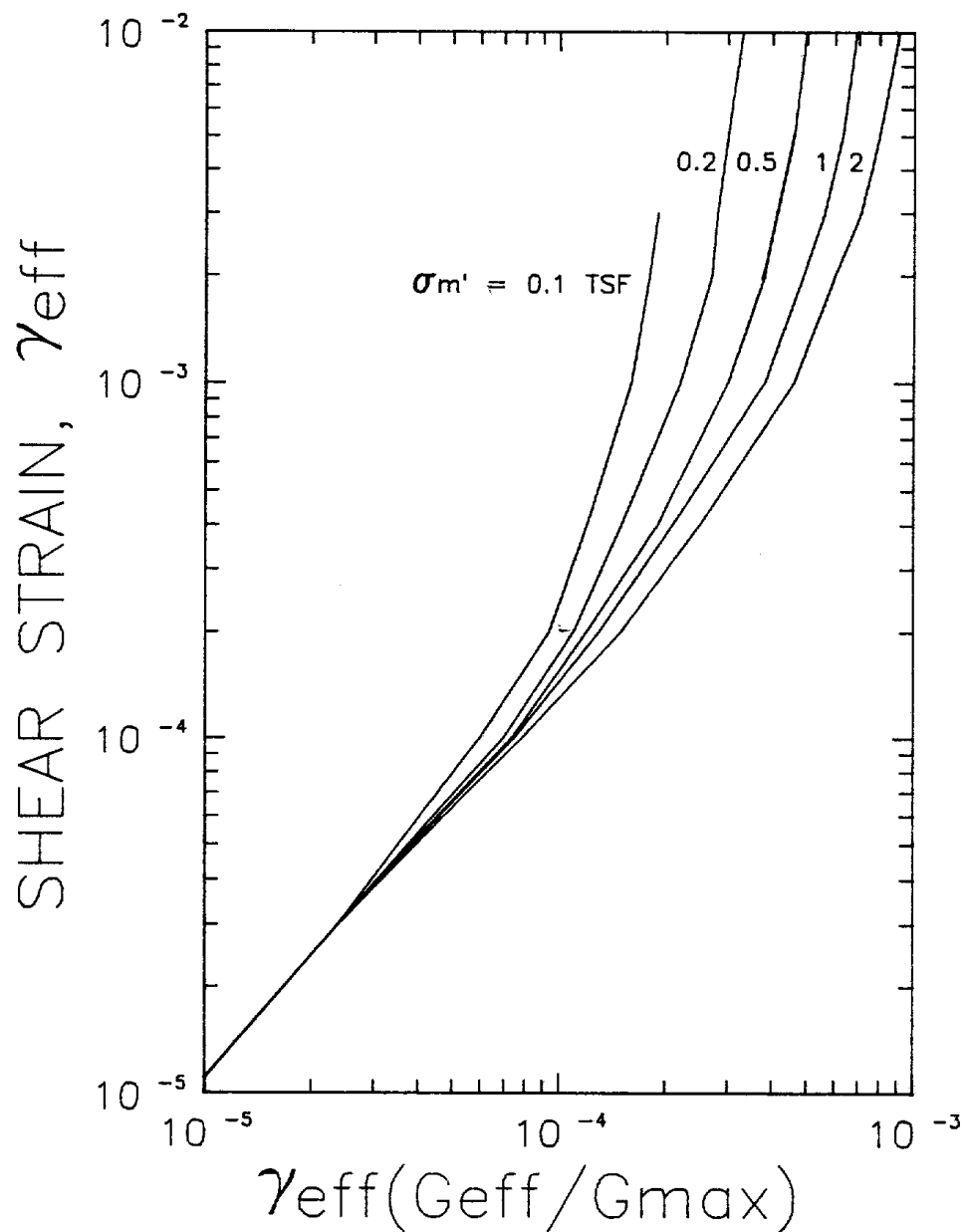


Figure 4-4. Plot for determination of induced strain in sand deposits. Reprinted by permission of the American Society of Civil Engineers from Journal of Geotechnical Engineering, Vol 118, 1987, "Evaluation of Settlements in Sands Due to Earthquake Shaking", by K. Tokimatsu and H. B. Seed, p. 873.

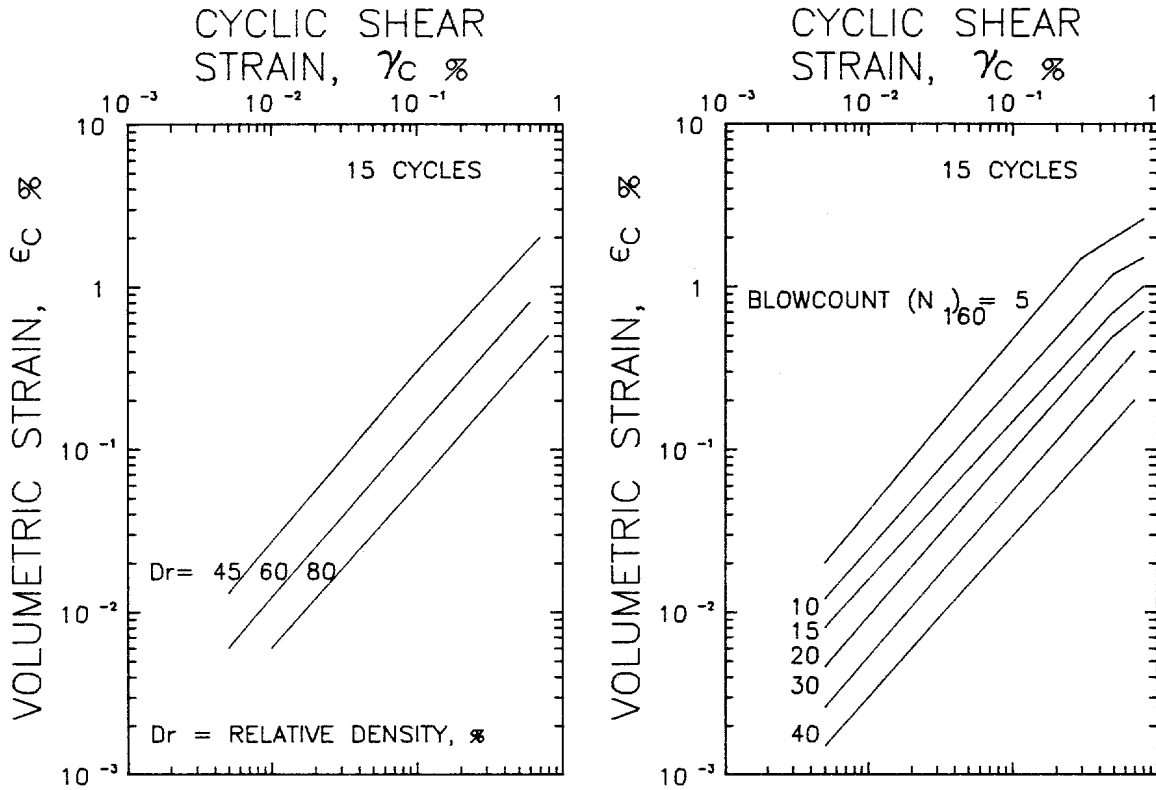


Figure 4-5. Relationships between volumetric strain  $\epsilon_c$  and cyclic shear strain  $\gamma_c$  for dry sand and earthquake magnitude  $M = 7.5$ . Reprinted by permission of the American Society of Civil Engineers from Journal of Geotechnical Engineering, Vol 118, 1987, "Evaluation of Settlements in Sands Due to Earthquake Shaking", by K. Tokimatsu and H. B. Seed, p. 874.

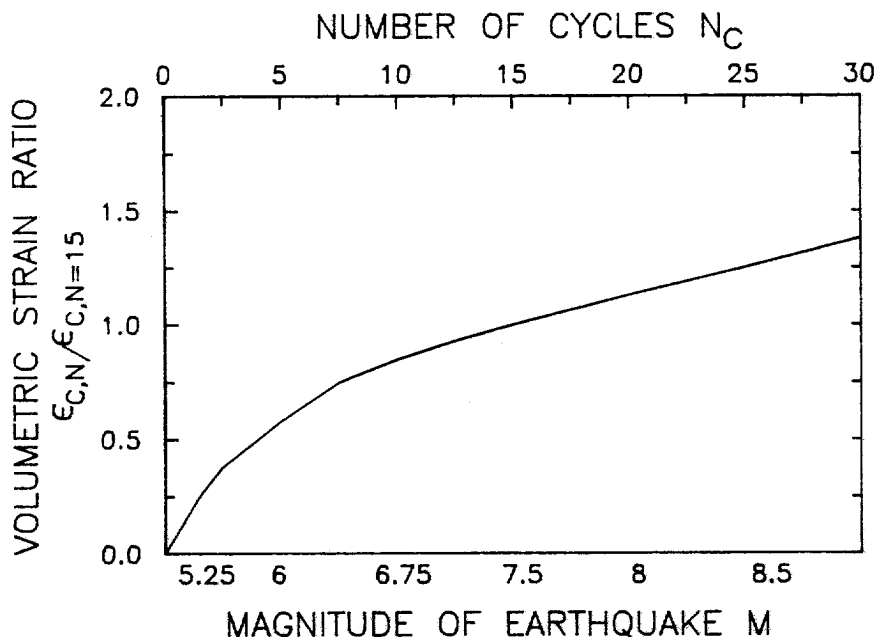


Figure 4-6. Relationship between volumetric strain ratio and number of cycles (earthquake magnitude) for dry sands. Reprinted by permission of the American Society of Civil Engineers from Journal of Geotechnical Engineering, Vol 118, 1987, "Evaluation of Settlements in Sands Due to Earthquake Shaking", by K. Tokimatsu and H. B. Seed, p. 874.

(a) The soil should be consolidated so that a plot of one-half of the deviator stress versus the effective horizontal confining pressure provides a slope indicative of a realistic effective coefficient of lateral earth pressure. The slope  $s$  of this curve required to obtain a given coefficient of lateral earth pressure  $K_0$  is

$$s = 0.5 \cdot \left( \frac{1}{K_0} - 1 \right) \quad (4-9)$$

For example, the slope  $s$  should be 0.7 if  $K_0$  is 0.42. The soil should be consolidated to an effective horizontal confining pressure simulating the in situ soil.

(b) Additional vertical dynamic loads should be applied so that the soil specimen is subject to three different cyclic stress levels of 200 to 300 cycles per stress level. The effective lateral confining pressure is maintained constant.

(c) The cumulative strain as a function of the number of cycles  $N$  at each stress level should be plotted as shown in Figure 4-7a. The slope of the curves in Figure 4-7a is the strain resistance  $R_e = dN/d\varepsilon$ .

(d) The strain resistance should be plotted versus the number of cycles as shown in Figure 4-7b for each stress level. A straight line should subsequently be plotted through these data points for each stress level. The slope of this line is the cyclic strain resistance  $r_e$ .

Table 4-3

Settlement From Machine Vibrations  
(After NAVFAC DM-7.3)

| Step | Description   |
|------|---|
| 1    | Evaluate initial relative density $D_{roj}$ of each soil layer $j$ from the blow count $N$ by Equations 4-1, Figure 4-1, or improved correlations (item 50).  |
| 2    | Estimate or measure maximum displacement of vibration $A_{max}$ in inches and frequency of vibration $f$ in revolutions per minutes at the base of the foundation.  |
| 3    | Calculate the frequency of vibration in radians per second from $\omega_o = \frac{2\pi f}{60} \quad (4-10)$   |
| 4    | Calculate acceleration of vibrations in $g$ at foundation level $a_o$ $a_o = \frac{\omega_o^2 \cdot A_{max}}{12 \cdot 32.2} \quad (4-11)$   |
| 5    | Calculate $a_j$ acceleration of vibration in $g$ at midpoint of each soil layer $j$ by $d_{mj} > R: \quad a_j = a_o \cdot \left[ \frac{R}{d_m} \right]^{1/2} \quad (4-12a)$ $d_{mj} \leq R: \quad a_j = a_o \quad (4-12b)$  |
|      | where <p style="margin-left: 40px;"><math>d_{mj}</math> = distance from foundation base to midpoint of soil layer <math>j</math>, ft<br/> <math>R</math> = equivalent radius of foundation <math>\sqrt{LB/\pi}</math>, ft</p>   |
| 6    | Calculate the critical acceleration in $g$ of each soil layer $j$ $a_{critj} = \frac{-1n \cdot \left[ 1 - \frac{D_{roj}}{100} \right]}{\beta_v} \quad (4-13)$   |
|      | where <p style="margin-left: 40px;"><math>D_{roj}</math> = initial relative density at zero acceleration of layer <math>j</math>, percent<br/> <math>\beta_v</math> = coefficient of vibratory compaction</p> <p><math>\beta_v</math> depends on water content <math>W</math> in percent and varies approximately</p> |

Table 4-3. Concluded

---


$$W < 5 \text{ percent: } \beta_v = 0.2 + 0.12W$$

$$5 \leq W \leq 18 \text{ percent: } \beta_v = 0.77 + 0.006W$$

$\beta_v$  decreases if the water content is greater than 18 percent.

- 7 Estimate the final relative density  $D_{rfj}$  of each layer  $j$  from

$$a_j > a_{critj} \quad D_{rfj} = 100 \cdot [1 - e^{-\beta_v \cdot (a_{critj} + a_j)}] \quad (4-14a)$$

$$a_j \leq a_{critj} \quad D_{rfj} = D_{roj} \quad (4-14b)$$

- 8 Calculate the change in relative density  $\Delta D_{jr}$  of each soil layer  $j$  by

$$\Delta D_{rj} = D_{rfj} - D_{roj} \quad (4-15)$$

- 9 Calculate the settlement in feet of each soil layer  $j$  by

$$\rho_{vj} = 0.0025 \cdot \frac{\Delta D_{rj}}{100} \cdot \gamma_{do} \cdot H_j \quad (4-16)$$

where

$\gamma_{do}$  = initial dry density of the sand layer, lbs/ft<sup>3</sup>

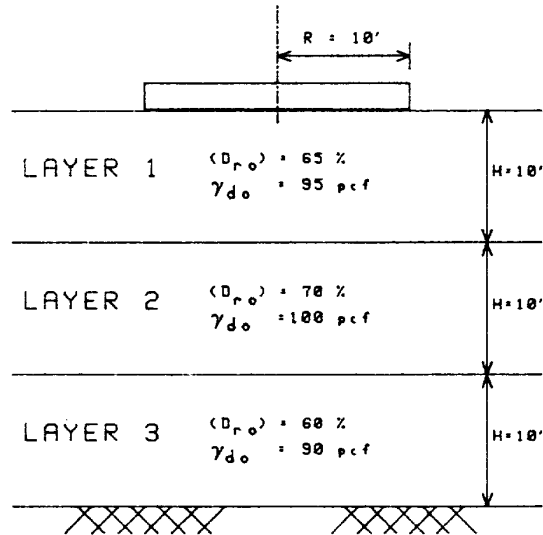
$H_j$  = stratum of thickness, ft

Equation 4-16 is based on the range of maximum and minimum dry densities for sands reported in item 6

- 10 Add the settlements of each layer to find the total settlement.
-

Table 4-4

Example Calculation for Vibrations Induced Compaction  
Settlement Under Operating Machinery (From NAVFAC DM-7.3)



GIVEN: SOIL PROFILE AS SHOWN, FOOTING WITH A RADIUS OF 10 FEET SUBJECTED TO A VIBRATORY LOAD CAUSING A PEAK DYNAMIC DISPLACEMENT  $A_{mas} = 0.007$  IN. OPERATING FREQUENCY  $f = 2500$  RPM. WATER CONTENT  $W = 16\%$ , USE  $\beta_v = 0.88$

$$\omega_o = \frac{2500}{60} \cdot 2\pi = 261.8 \text{ RAD/SEC}$$

$$a_o = \frac{(261.8)^2 \cdot 0.007}{12 \cdot 32.2} = 1.24g$$

LAYER 1: DEPTH TO MID LAYER  $d_m = 5' < R = 10'$

USE  $a_j = a_o = 1.24g$

$$a_{critj} = \frac{-\ln\left[1 - \frac{D_{roj}}{100}\right]}{\beta_v}$$

$$a_{critj} = \frac{-\ln\left[1 - \frac{65}{100}\right]}{0.88} = 1.19g$$

$$a_j = 1.24g > a_{critj}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{USE } D_{rfj} &= 100 \left[ 1 - e^{-\beta_v \cdot [a_{critj} + a_j]} \right] \\ &= 100 \left[ 1 - e^{-0.88 \cdot (1.19 + 1.24)} \right] \\ &= 100 \cdot (1 - .118) = 88\% \end{aligned}$$

$$\Delta D_{rj} = D_{rfj} - D_{roj} = 88 - 65 = 23\%$$

$$\begin{aligned} \rho_{vj} &= 0.0025 \cdot \frac{\Delta D_{rj}}{100} \cdot \gamma_{do} \cdot H_j \\ &= 0.0025 \cdot 0.23 \cdot 95 \cdot 10 = 0.55 \text{ FT OR } 6.6 \text{ IN.} \end{aligned}$$

LAYER 2: DEPTH TO MID LAYER  $d_m = 15'$

$$a_j = a_o \cdot \left[ \frac{R}{d_m} \right]^{1/2} = 1.24 \cdot \left[ \frac{10}{15} \right]^{1/2} = 1.01g$$

$$a_{critj} = \frac{-\ln(1 - 0.7)}{0.88} = 1.37g$$

$$a_i = 1.01g < a_{critj}$$

$$D_{rj} = D_{roj} = 70\%$$

NO SIGNIFICANT COMPACTION SETTLEMENT LIKELY

LAYER 3: DEPTH TO MID LAYER  $d_m = 25'$

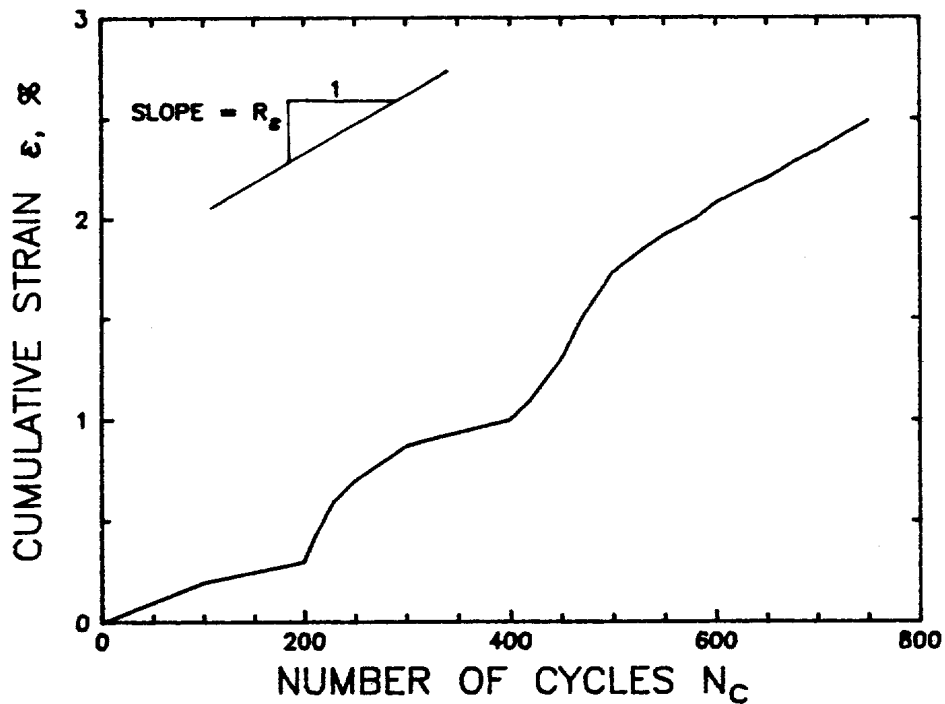
$$a_i = 1.24 \cdot \left[ \frac{10}{25} \right]^{1/2} = 0.78g$$

$$a_{critj} = \frac{-\ln(1 - 0.6)}{0.88} = 1.04g$$

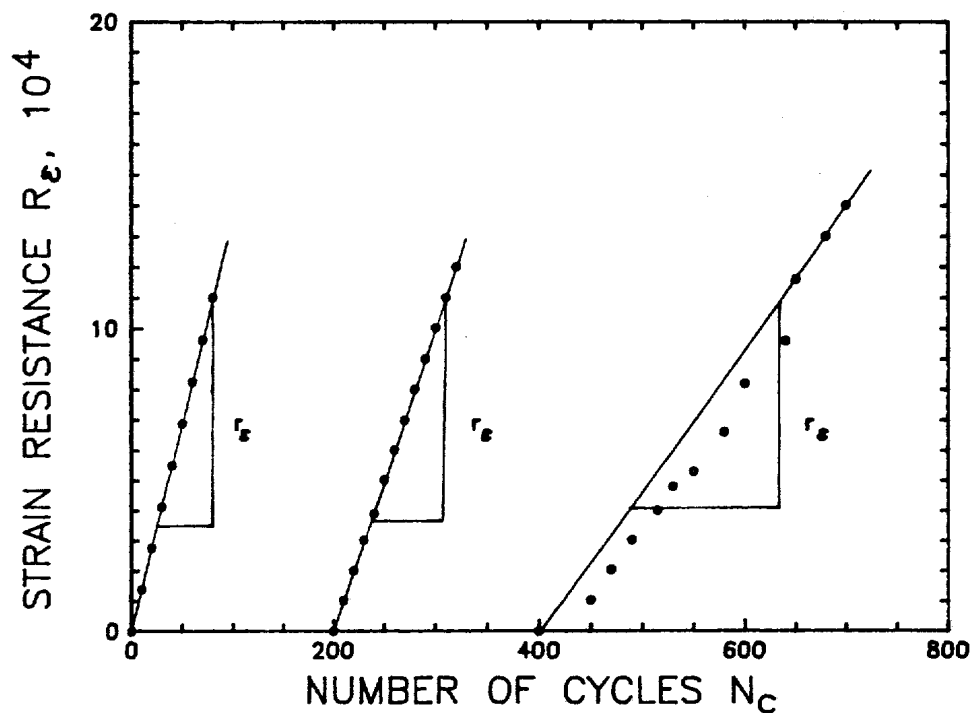
$$a_j < a_{critj}$$

NO SIGNIFICANT COMPACTION SETTLEMENT LIKELY

ANTICIPATED COMPACTION SETTLEMENT = 6.6 IN.  
RELATIVE DENSITY OF TOP LAYER SHOULD BE INCREASED TO 70% OR GREATER



a. CUMULATIVE STRAIN VERSUS NUMBER OF CYCLES



b. STRAIN RESISTANCE VERSUS NUMBER OF CYCLES

Figure 4-7. Example of strain and strain resistance as a function of cycles  $N_c$  for different stress levels

(e) The cyclic strain resistance decreases with increasing stress levels and approaches zero when the shear strength is fully mobilized. The cyclic strain resistance may increase with increasing depth because the percentage of mobilized shear strength may decrease with increasing depth.

(2) Calculation of settlement. The settlement of a pervious layer of thickness H caused by repeated loads may be given for this drained soil by (item 25)

$$\rho_r = \frac{H}{r_e} \cdot 1n N \quad (4-17)$$

where

$\rho_r$  = settlement of the layer from repeated load, ft  
H = thickness of stratum, ft  
 $r_e$  = cyclic strain resistance of stratum from laboratory tests  
N = number of cycles of repeated load

The appropriate value of  $r_e$  to select from the laboratory test results depends on the maximum anticipated stress level in the soil caused by the repeated loads. For example, the maximum anticipated stress in the soil level may be calculated from the exciting force by methods in Appendix C. The exciting force may be calculated from guidance provided in NAVFAC DM-7.3.

(3) Alternative settlement calculation. An alternative method of evaluating effects of repeated loads on settlement of clayey soil from laboratory cyclic triaxial tests is to apply the creep strain rate formulation (item 24)

$$\epsilon_t = \epsilon_{t1} + \frac{e^\alpha}{1 - \lambda_d} \cdot [t^{1 - \lambda_d} - t_1^{1 - \lambda_d}] \quad (4-18a)$$

If  $\lambda_d = 1$ , then

$$\epsilon_t = \epsilon_{t1} + e^\alpha \cdot 1n \frac{t}{t_1} \quad (4-18b)$$

where

$\epsilon$  = strain at time t  
 $\epsilon_{t1}$  = strain at time  $t_1$  or after one cycle  
e = base e or 2.7182818  
 $\alpha$  =  $C \cdot \sigma_{rd} - B$   
B, C = constants from Table 4-5  
 $\sigma_{rd}$  = repeated deviator stress, tsf  
 $\lambda_d$  = decay constant found from slope of logarithmic strain rate  $\epsilon_N / \epsilon_1$  versus logarithm number of cycles  $N_c$ , Figure 4-8,

(a) Settlement may be found by substituting  $\epsilon_t$  of Equation 4-18b for  $\epsilon_c$  of Equation 4-5, Table 4-1a. Evaluation of  $\epsilon_t$  from Equations 4-18 is appropriate for repeated loads with frequencies between 0.1 Hz and 10 Hz, a typical range for traffic loads; however, settlement may be underestimated because traffic loads are more complex than compressive vertical loads. Repeated loads with various periods and rest intervals between repeated loads do not appear to cause significant change in strain.



Table 4-5

Constants B and C to Evaluate Creep Constant  $\alpha$  as a Function of Overconsolidation Ratio OCR (Data from Item 24)

| OCR | C   | B   |
|-----|-----|-----|
| 4   | 3.5 | 9.5 |
| 10  | 2.8 | 9.2 |
| 20  | 3.7 | 9.5 |

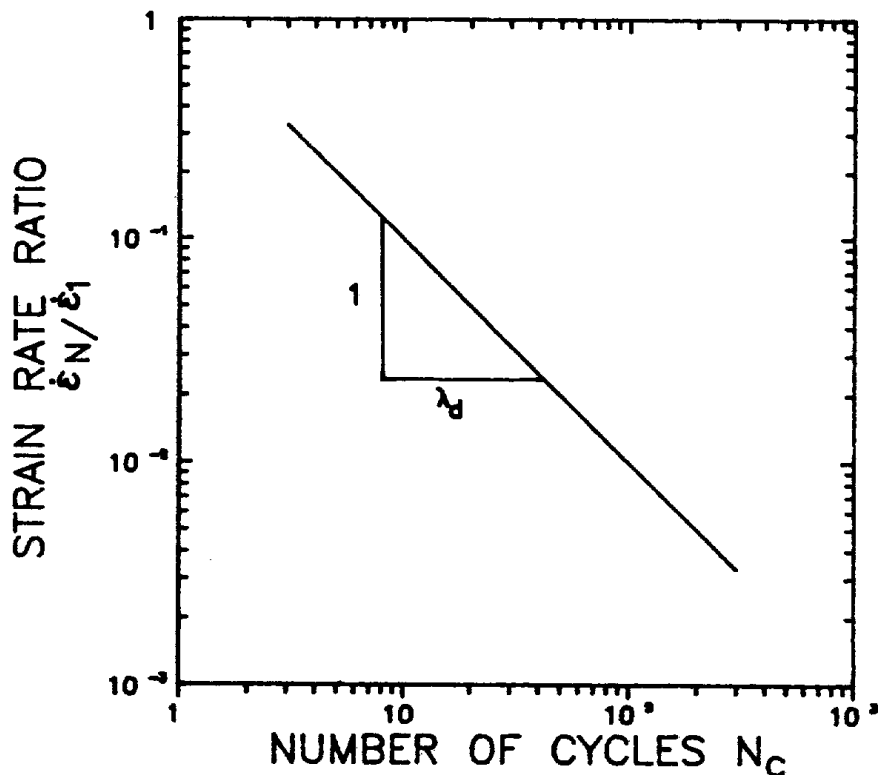


Figure 4-8. Example decay constant

(b) An application of Equations 4-18 to London clay where  $\lambda_d = 1$ ,  $\epsilon_{t1} = 0.0$  at  $t_1 = 1$  second,  $\sigma_{rd} = 1$  tsf, and OCR = 4 is

$$\begin{aligned} \epsilon_t &= \epsilon_{t1} + e^{\alpha} \cdot 1n \frac{t}{t_1} = e^{(3.5 \cdot 1.0 - 9.5)} \cdot 1n t \\ &= \frac{1n t}{e^6} = 1n t / 403.4 = 0.0025 1n t \end{aligned}$$

After 10 seconds the strain  $\epsilon_{10}$  is 0.0058. Settlement is the strain times thickness of the stratum.

CHAPTER 5  
APPLICATIONS WITH UNSTABLE FOUNDATION SOIL

5-1. Unstable Soils. Many types of soils change volume from causes different from elastic deformation, consolidation, and secondary compression. These volume changes cause excessive total and differential movements of overlying structures and embankments in addition to load induced settlement of the soil. Such unstable conditions include the heaving of expansive clays and collapse of silty sands, sandy silts, and clayey sands from alteration of the natural water content. Refer to Chapter 6 for coping with movements.

a. Effects of Excessive Movements. Excessive total and, especially, differential movements have caused damages to numerous structures that have not been adequately designed to accommodate the soil volume changes. Types of damage include impaired functional usefulness of the structure, external and interior cracked walls, and jammed and misaligned doors and windows. Important factors that lead to damages are the failure to recognize the presence of unstable soil and to make reasonable estimates of the magnitude of maximum heave or settlement/collapse. Adequate engineering solutions such as special foundation designs and soil stabilization techniques exist to accommodate the anticipated soil movement. A thorough field investigation is necessary to properly assess the potential movement of the soil. A qualitative estimate of potential vertical movement of proposed new construction may sometimes be made by examination of the performance of existing structures adjacent to the new construction.

b. Influence of Time on Movement. The time when heave or settlement/collapse occurs cannot be easily predicted because the location and time when water becomes available to the foundation soil cannot readily be foreseen. Heave or settlement can occur almost immediately in relatively pervious foundation soil, particularly in local areas subject to poor surface drainage and in soil adjacent to leaking water lines. More often, heave or settlement will occur over months or years depending on the availability of moisture. Soil movement may be insignificant for many years following construction permitting adequate performance until some change occurs in field conditions to disrupt the moisture regime. Predictions of when heave or settlement occurs is usually of little engineering significance. Important engineering problems include reliable determination of the magnitude of potential heave or settlement and development of ways to minimize this potential for movement and potential distress of the structure.

Section I. Heaving Soil

5-2. General. Expansive or swelling soils are found in many areas throughout the United States and the entire world. These soils change volume within the active zone for heave from changes in soil moisture. Refer to TM 5-818-7, Foundations in Expansive Soil, for details on mechanisms of heave, analysis and design of foundations in expansive soil.

a. Soils Susceptible to Heave. These soils consist of plastic clays and clay shales that often contain colloidal clay minerals such as the montmorillonites or smectite. They include marls, clayey siltstone and sandstone, and saprolites. Some soils, especially dry residual clayey soil, may heave on

wetting under low applied pressure, but collapse at higher pressure. Other clayey soil may initially collapse on wetting, but heave over long periods of time as water slowly wets the less pervious clay particles. Desiccation can cause expansive soil to shrink.

b. Depth of Active Zone. The depth of the active zone  $Z_a$  illustrated in Figure 5-1 is defined as the least soil depth above which changes in water content, and soil heave may occur because of change in environmental conditions following construction. The water content distribution should not change with time below  $Z_a$ . Experience indicates  $Z_a$  may be approximated following guidelines in Table 5-1.

c. Equilibrium Pore Water Pressure Profile. The pore water pressure beneath the center of the foundation is anticipated to reach an equilibrium distribution; whereas, the pore water pressure profile beneath the perimeter will cycle between dry and wet extremes depending on the availability of water and the climate. Placement of a foundation on the soil may eliminate or reduce evaporation of moisture from the ground surface and eliminate transpiration of moisture from previously existing vegetation. Figure 5-1 illustrates three methods described below for estimating the equilibrium pore water pressure profile  $u_{wf}$  in units of tsf. If undisturbed soil specimens are taken from the field near the end of the dry season, then the maximum potential heave may be estimated from results of swell tests performed on these specimens.

(1) Saturated profile (Method 1, Figure 5-1). The equilibrium pore water pressure in the saturated profile within depth  $Z_a$  is

$$u_{wf} = 0 \quad (5-1a)$$

This profile is considered realistic for most practical cases including houses or buildings exposed to watering of perimeter vegetation and possible leaking of underground water and sewer lines. Water may also condense or collect in permeable soil beneath foundation slabs and penetrate into underlying expansive soil unless drained away or protected by a moisture barrier. This profile should be used if other information on the equilibrium pore water pressure profile is not available.

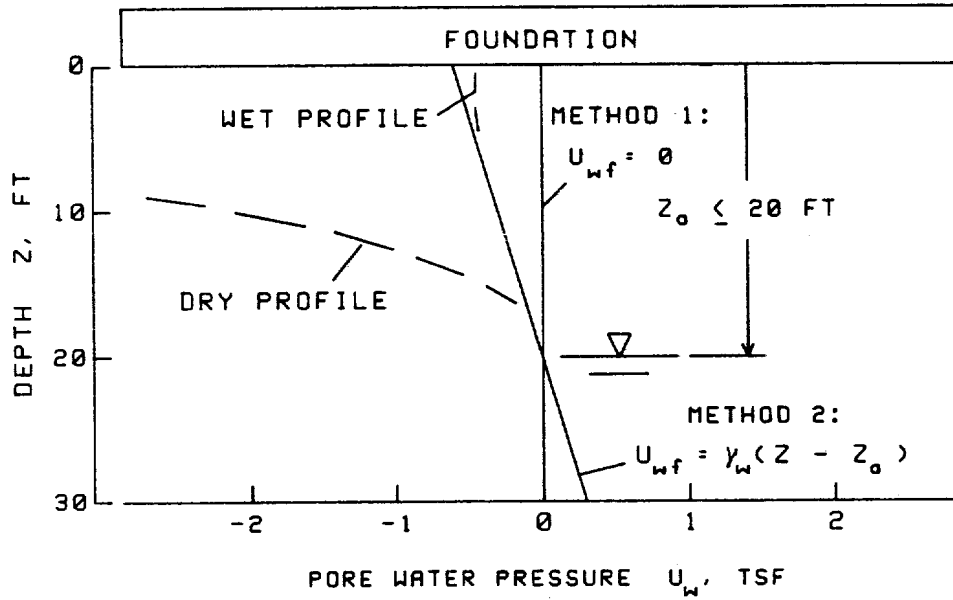
(2) Hydrostatic with shallow water table (Method 2, Figure 5-1). The equilibrium pore water pressure in this profile is zero at the groundwater level and decreases linearly with increasing distance above the groundwater level in proportion to the unit weight of water

$$u_{wf} = \gamma_w (z - Z_a) \quad (5-1b)$$

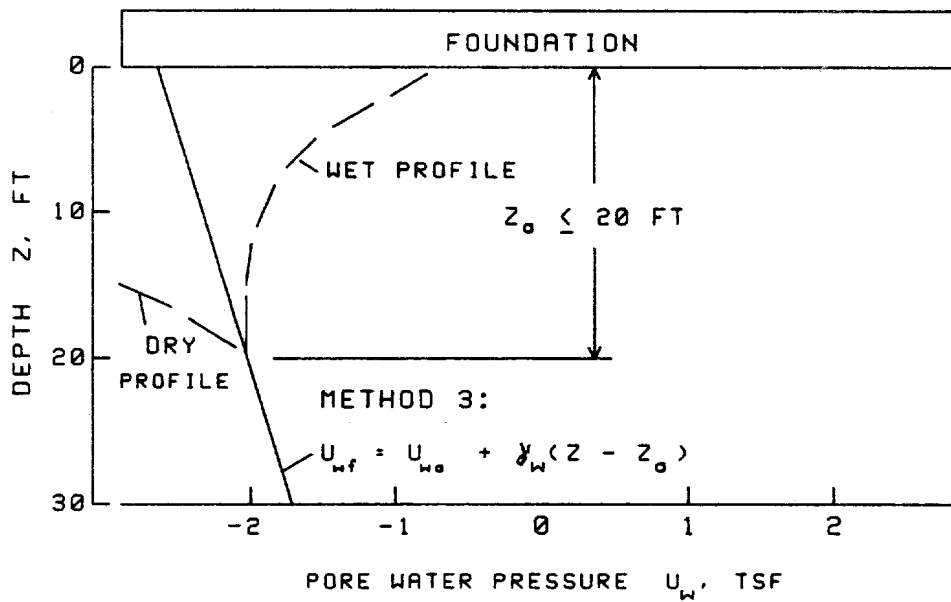
where

$\gamma_w$  = unit weight of water, 0.031 ton/ft<sup>3</sup>  
 $z$  = depth below the foundation, ft

This profile is considered realistic beneath highways and pavements where surface water is drained from the pavement and where underground sources of water such as leaking pipes or drains do not exist. This assumption leads to smaller estimates of anticipated heave than Method 1.



a. SHALLOW GROUNDWATER LEVEL



b. DEEP GROUNDWATER LEVEL

Figure 5-1. Anticipated equilibrium pore water pressure profiles

Table 5-1

Guidelines For Estimating Depth  
of the Active Zone  $Z_a$

| Relative To                 | Guideline  |                             |  |       |    |           |    |      |    |
|-----------------------------|--|-----------------------------|--|-------|----|-----------|----|------|----|
| Water table                 | $Z_a$ will extend to depths of shallow groundwater levels $\leq 20$ ft   |                             |  |       |    |           |    |      |    |
| Swell pressure              | $Z_a$ will be located within depths where $\sigma_{sj} - \sigma_{fj} \geq 0$ , $\sigma_{sj}$ = average swell pressure of stratum $j$ and $\sigma_{fj}$ = total average vertical overburden pressure after construction in stratum $j$  |                             |  |       |    |           |    |      |    |
| Fissures                    | $Z_a$ will be within the depth of the natural fissure system caused by seasonal swell/shrinkage  |                             |  |       |    |           |    |      |    |
| Climate                     | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2" style="text-align: center;"><u><math>Z_a</math>, ft</u></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">humid</td> <td style="text-align: center;">10</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">semi-arid</td> <td style="text-align: center;">15</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">arid</td> <td style="text-align: center;">20</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | <u><math>Z_a</math>, ft</u> |  | humid | 10 | semi-arid | 15 | arid | 20 |
| <u><math>Z_a</math>, ft</u> |  |                             |  |       |    |           |    |      |    |
| humid                       | 10   |                             |  |       |    |           |    |      |    |
| semi-arid                   | 15   |                             |  |       |    |           |    |      |    |
| arid                        | 20   |                             |  |       |    |           |    |      |    |

(3) Hydrostatic without shallow water table (Method 3, Figure 5-1). The pore water pressure of this profile is similar to Method 2, but includes a value of the negative pore water pressure  $u_{wa}$  at depth  $Z_a$ .

$$u_{wf} = u_{wa} + \gamma_w(Z - Z_a) \quad (5-1c)$$

$u_{wa}$  may be evaluated by methodology described in TM 5-818-7.

5-3. Identification. Soils susceptible to swelling can be most easily identified by simple classification tests such as Atterberg limits and natural water content. Two equations that have provided reasonable estimates of free swell are (item 30,64)

$$\log S_f = 0.0367LL + 0.0833W_n + 0.458 \quad (5-2a)$$

and (item 49)

$$S_f = 2.27 + 0.131LL - 0.27W_n \quad (5-2b)$$

where

- $S_f$  = free swell, percent
- LL = liquid limit, percent
- $W_n$  = natural water content, percent

The percent swell under confinement can be estimated from the free swell by (item 20)

$$S = S_f \cdot (1 - 0.72\sqrt{\sigma_f}) \quad (5-3)$$

where

S = swell under confinement, percent  
 $\sigma_f$  = vertical confining pressure, tsf

These identification procedures were developed by correlations of classification test results with results of 1-D swell tests performed in consolidometers on undisturbed and compacted soil specimens. Soils with liquid limit less than 35 percent and plasticity index less than 12 percent have relatively low potential for swell and may not require swell testing. Refer to TM 5-818-7 for further details on identification of expansive soils.

5-4. Potential Vertical Heave. Useful estimates of the anticipated heave based on results from consolidometer swell tests can often be made.

a. Selection of Suitable Test Method. Suitable standard test methods for evaluating the potential for 1-D heave or settlement of cohesive soils are fully described in EM 1110-2-1906 and ASTM D 4546. A brief review of three 1-D consolidometer tests useful for measuring potential swell or settlement using a standard consolidometer illustrated in Figure E-1, Appendix E, is provided below.

(1) Free swell. After a seating pressure (e.g., 0.01 tsf applied by the weight of the top porous stone and load plate) is applied to the specimen in a consolidometer, the specimen is inundated with water and allowed to swell vertically until primary swell is complete. The specimen is loaded following primary swell until its initial void ratio/height is obtained. The total pressure required to reduce the specimen height to the original height prior to inundation is defined as the swell pressure  $\sigma_s$ .

(2) Swell overburden. After a vertical pressure exceeding the seating pressure is applied to the specimen in a consolidometer, the specimen is inundated with water. The specimen may swell, swell then contract, contract, or contract then swell. The vertical pressure is often equivalent to the in situ overburden pressure and may include structural loads depending on the purpose of the test.

(3) Constant volume. After a seating pressure and additional vertical pressure, often equivalent to the in situ overburden pressure, is applied to the specimen in a consolidometer, the specimen is inundated with water. Additional vertical pressure is applied as needed or removed to maintain a constant height of the specimen. A consolidation test is subsequently performed as described in Appendix E. The total pressure required to maintain a constant height of the specimen is the measured swell pressure. This measured swell pressure is corrected to compensate for sample disturbance by using the results of the subsequent consolidation test. A suitable correction procedure is similar to that for estimating the maximum past pressure.

b. Calculation From Void Ratio. The anticipated heave is

$$S_{\max} = \sum_{j=1}^n S_{\max j} = \sum_{j=1}^n \frac{e_{fj} - e_{oj}}{1 + e_{oj}} \cdot H_j \quad (5-4a)$$

where

$S_{\max}$  = maximum potential vertical heave, ft  
 $n$  = number of strata within the depth of heaving soil  
 $S_{\max j}$  = heave of soil in stratum  $j$ , ft  
 $H_j$  = thickness of stratum  $j$ , ft  
 $e_{fj}$  = final void ratio of stratum  $j$   
 $e_{oj}$  = initial void ratio of stratum  $j$

The initial void ratio, which depends on a number of factors such as the maximum past pressure, type of soil, and environmental conditions, may be measured by standard consolidometer test procedures described in EM 1110-2-1906 or ASTM D 4546. The final void ratio depends on changes in soil confinement pressure and water content following construction of the structure; it may be anticipated from reasonable estimates of the equilibrium pore water pressure  $u_{wf}$ , depth of active zone  $Z_a$ , and edge effects by rewriting Equation 5-4a in terms of swell pressure shown in Equation 5-4b below.

c. Calculation from Swell Pressure. The anticipated heave in terms of swell pressure is

$$S_{\max} = \sum_{j=1}^n \frac{C_{sj}}{1 + e_{oj}} \cdot \log_{10} \frac{\sigma_{sj}}{\sigma'_{fj}} \cdot H_j \quad (5-4b)$$

where

$C_{sj}$  = swell index of stratum  $j$   
 $\sigma_{sj}$  = swell pressure of stratum  $j$ , tsf  
 $\sigma'_{fj}$  = final or equilibrium average effective vertical pressure of stratum  $j$ ,  $\sigma_{fj} - u_{wffj}$ , tsf  
 $\sigma_{fj}$  = final average total vertical pressure of stratum  $j$ , tsf  
 $u_{wffj}$  = average equilibrium pore water pressure in stratum  $j$ , tsf

The number of strata  $n$  required in the calculation is that observed within the depth of the active zone for heave.

(1) Swell index. The swell or rebound index of soil in each stratum may be determined from results of consolidometer tests as described in Section III, Chapter 3, and Figure 3-13. Preliminary estimates of the swell index may be made from Figure 3-14.

(a) The swell index  $C_s$  measured from a swell overburden test (Swell Test described in EM 1110-2-1906 or Method B described in ASTM D 4546) may be less than that measured from a constant volume test (Swell Pressure Test described in EM 1110-2-1906 or Method C described in ASTM D 4546). The larger values of  $C_s$  are often more appropriate for analysis of potential heave and design.

(b) A simplified first approximation of  $C_s$  developed from Corps of Engineer project sites through Central Texas is  $C_s \approx 0.03 + 0.002(LL-30)$ .

(2) Swell pressure. The swell pressure of soil in each stratum may be found from results of consolidometer swell tests on undisturbed specimens as described in EM 1110-2-1906 or ASTM D 4546. Preliminary estimates of swell pressure may be made from (item 32)

$$\log_{10}\sigma_s = \bar{2}.1423 + 0.0208LL + 0.01065\gamma_d - 0.0269W_p \quad (5-5a)$$

where

$\sigma_s$  = swell pressure, tsf  
 $\gamma_d$  = dry density, lbs/ft<sup>3</sup>

An alternative equation (item 46) is

$$\sigma_s = 0.00258 \cdot PI^{1.12} \cdot \left[ \frac{C}{W_p} \right]^2 + 0.273 \quad (5-5b)$$

where

PI = plasticity index, percent  
C = clay content, percent less than 2 microns

(3) Final effective vertical pressure. The final total pressure  $\sigma_f$  may be estimated from the sum of the increase in soil stresses from the structural loads calculated by methods in Appendix C or Figure 1-2 and the initial overburden pressure  $\sigma_o$ . The final effective pressure  $\sigma'_f$  is  $\sigma_f$  less the assumed equilibrium pore water pressure profile  $u_{wf}$ , Figure 5-1.

5-5. Potential Differential Heave. Differential heave results from edge effects beneath a finite covered area, drainage patterns, lateral variations in thickness of the expansive foundation soil, and effects of occupancy. The shape, geometry, and loads of the structure also promote differential movement. Examples of the effect of occupancy include broken or leaking underground water lines and irrigation of vegetation adjacent to the structure. Other causes of differential heave include differences in distribution of loads and footing sizes.

a. Predictability of Variables. Reliable estimates of the anticipated differential heave and location of differential heave are not possible because of uncertainty in such factors as future availability of moisture, horizontal variations in soil parameters, areas of soil wetting, and effects of future occupancy.

b. Magnitude of Differential Heave. The difference in potential heave between locations beneath a foundation can vary from zero to the maximum potential vertical heave. Differential heave is often the anticipated total heave for structures on isolated spot footings or drilled shafts because soil beneath some footings or portions of slab foundations may experience no wetting and no movement. Refer to Chapter 2 for details on effect of differential movement on performance of the foundation.

(1) A reasonable estimate of the maximum differential movement or differential potential heave  $\Delta S_{max}$  is the sum of the maximum calculated settlement  $\rho_{max}$  of soil beneath a nonwetted point of the foundation and the maximum potential heave  $S_{max}$  following wetting of soil beneath some adjacent point of the foundation separated by the distance  $l$ . If all of the soil



heaves, then  $\Delta S_{\max}$  is the difference between  $S_{\max}$  and  $S_{\min}$  between adjacent points where  $S_{\min}$  is the minimum heave.

(2) The location of  $S_{\max}$  may be beneath the most lightly loaded portion of the foundation such as beneath the center of the slab.

(3) The location of  $\rho_{\max}$  may be beneath columns and consist only of immediate elastic settlement  $\rho_i$  in soil where wetting does not occur or will be  $S_{\min}$  if wetting does occur in expansive soil.

(4) The deflection ratio is  $\Delta S_{\max}/L$  where  $L$  may be the distance between stiffening beams.

5-6. Application. A stiffened ribbed mat is to be constructed on an expansive soil. The soil parameters illustrated in Table 5-2 were determined on specimens of an undisturbed soil sample taken 10 ft beneath the mat. Additional tests at other depths will improve reliability of these calculations. The active zone for heave is estimated to extend 20 ft below ground surface or 20 ft below the base of the mat and 17 ft below the base of the columns. The maximum anticipated heave  $S_{\max}$  and differential heave  $\Delta S_{\max}$  are to be estimated beneath portions of the mat. Stiffening beams are 3 ft deep with 20-ft spacing in both directions, Figure 5-2. Column loads of 25 tons interior and 12.5 tons perimeter lead to an applied pressure on the column footings  $q = 1.0$  tsf. Minimum pressure  $q_{\min}$  beneath the 5-inch-thick-flat slab is approximately 0.05 tsf. The heave calculations assume a zero stiffness mat. Computer program VDISPL in Appendix F is useful for calculating potential heave beneath footings and mat foundations in multilayered expansive soil. VDISPL also considers heave in an excavation from changes in pore water pressure.

a. Calculation of Potential Heave.

(1) Maximum potential heave  $S_{\max}$ . The maximum heave is anticipated beneath unloaded portions of the mat. The potential heave is estimated assuming the equilibrium pore water pressure  $u_{wE} = 0$  or the soil is saturated; therefore, the final effective pressure  $\sigma'_f = \sigma_f$  or the final total pressure.

(a) Table 5-3a illustrates the estimation of anticipated heave  $S_{\max}$  beneath lightly loaded portions of the mat using Equation 5-4b, increment thickness  $\Delta H = 2$  ft, and results of a single consolidometer swell test.

(b) Table 5-3a and Figure 5-3a show that  $S_{\max} = 0.3$  ft or 3.6 inches and that heave is not expected below 16 ft of depth where the swell pressure approximately equals the total vertical pressure  $\sigma_f$ .

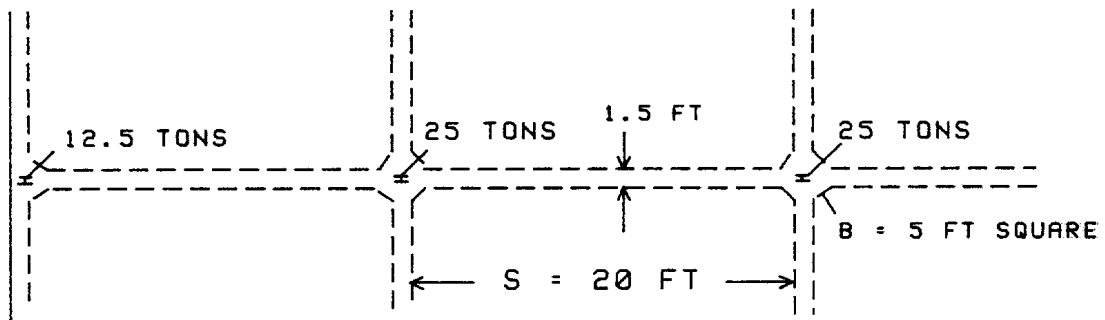
(c) Most heave occurs at depths less than 5 ft below the flat portion of the mat. Replacing the top 4 ft of expansive soil with nonexpansive backfill will reduce  $S_{\max}$  to 0.115 ft or 1.4 inches, Table 5-3a and Figure 5-3a.

(2) Minimum potential heave  $S_{\min}$ . The minimum potential heave on wetting of the soil to a saturated profile (Method 1, Figure 5-1) is expected beneath the most heavily loaded portions of the mat or beneath the columns. Table 5-3b and Figure 5-3b show that the minimum heave  $S_{\min}$  calculated after Equation 5-4b substituting  $S_{\min}$  for  $S_{\max}$  is 0.092 ft beneath the column or

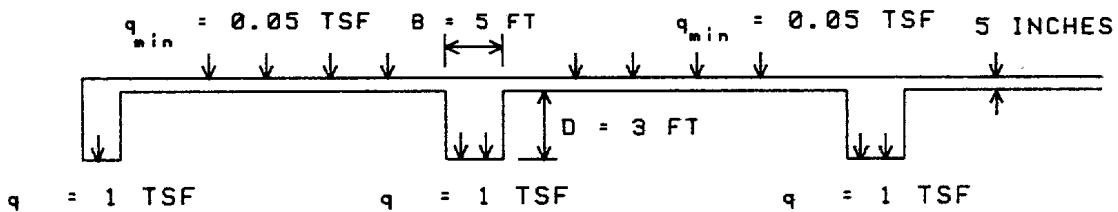
Table 5-2

Soil Parameters For Example Estimation  
of Anticipated Heave

| Parameter  | Value |
|--|-------|
| Elastic modulus $E_s$ , tsf                            | 200   |
| Swell Pressure $\sigma_s$ , tsf                        | 1.0   |
| Compression index $C_c$                                | 0.25  |
| Swell index $C_s$                                      | 0.10  |
| Initial void ratio $e_o$                               | 0.800 |
| Unit wet soil weight $\gamma$ ,<br>ton/ft <sup>3</sup> | 0.06  |
| Active zone for heave $Z_a$ , ft                       | 20    |



a. PLAN



b. ELEVATION

Figure 5-2. Plan and elevation of stiffened mat in expansive soil

Table 5-3

Heave Calculations for Example Application

a. Beneath Slab

| Depth<br>$z$ , ft | Overburden<br>Pressure<br>$\sigma_o = \gamma z$ , tsf | Total<br>Pressure<br>$\sigma_f = \sigma'_f$ , tsf | $\frac{S_{maxj}}{\Delta H}$ | $S_{maxj}$ , ft | $S_{max}$ , ft |
|-------------------|---|---|-----------------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 0                 | 0.00  | 0.05  | 0.072                       | 0.115           | 0.303          |
| 2                 | 0.12  | 0.17  | 0.043                       | 0.073           | 0.188          |
| 4                 | 0.24  | 0.29  | 0.030                       | 0.052           | 0.115          |
| 6                 | 0.36  | 0.41  | 0.022                       | 0.037           | 0.063          |
| 8                 | 0.48  | 0.53  | 0.015                       | 0.025           | 0.026          |
| 10                | 0.60  | 0.65  | 0.010                       | 0.016           | 0.001          |
| 12                | 0.72  | 0.77  | 0.006                       | 0.009           | -0.015         |
| 14                | 0.84  | 0.89  | 0.003                       | 0.003           | -0.024         |
| 16                | 0.96  | 1.01  | 0.000                       | -0.007          | -0.027         |
| 18                | 1.08  | 1.13  | -0.007                      | -0.020          | -0.020         |
| 20                | 1.20  | 1.25  | -0.013                      |                 | 0.000          |

b. Beneath Columns

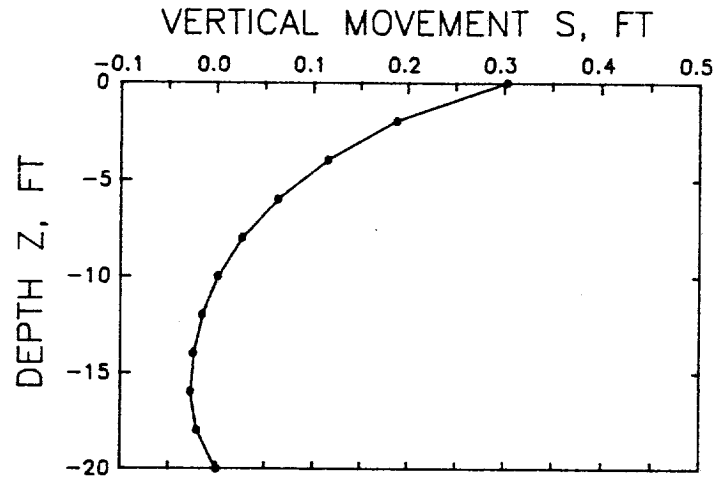
| Depth<br>$z$ , ft | $\frac{z}{B}$ | Overburden<br>Pressure<br>$\sigma_o = \gamma z$ , tsf | Column*<br>Pressure<br>$\Delta\sigma_z$ , tsf | Total<br>Pressure<br>$\sigma_f = \sigma'_f$ , tsf | $\frac{S_{minj}}{\Delta H}$ | $S_{minj}$ , ft | $S_{min}$ , ft |
|-------------------|---------------|---|---|---|-----------------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 0                 | 0.0           | 0.00  | 1.00  | 1.00  | 0.000                       | -0.003          | 0.092          |
| 1                 | 0.2           | 0.06  | 0.96  | 1.02  | -0.006                      | 0.000           | 0.095          |
| 3                 | 0.6           | 0.18  | 0.61  | 0.79  | 0.006                       | 0.018           | 0.095          |
| 5                 | 1.0           | 0.30  | 0.30  | 0.60  | 0.012                       | 0.024           | 0.077          |
| 7                 | 1.4           | 0.42  | 0.20  | 0.62  | 0.012                       | 0.021           | 0.053          |
| 9                 | 1.8           | 0.54  | 0.16  | 0.70  | 0.009                       | 0.016           | 0.032          |
| 11                | 2.2           | 0.66  | 0.09  | 0.75  | 0.007                       | 0.011           | 0.016          |
| 13                | 2.6           | 0.78  | 0.07  | 0.85  | 0.004                       | 0.005           | 0.005          |
| 15                | 3.0           | 0.90  | 0.05  | 0.95  | 0.001                       | 0.000           | 0.000          |
| 17                | 3.4           | 1.02  | 0.04  | 1.06  | -0.001                      |                 | 0.000          |

\* Increase in pressure beneath columns calculated from Figure 1-2, Table C-1a (point under corner rectangular area) where  $\Delta\sigma_z = 4q$  or Figure C-2 where  $\Delta\sigma_z = 4q$ .

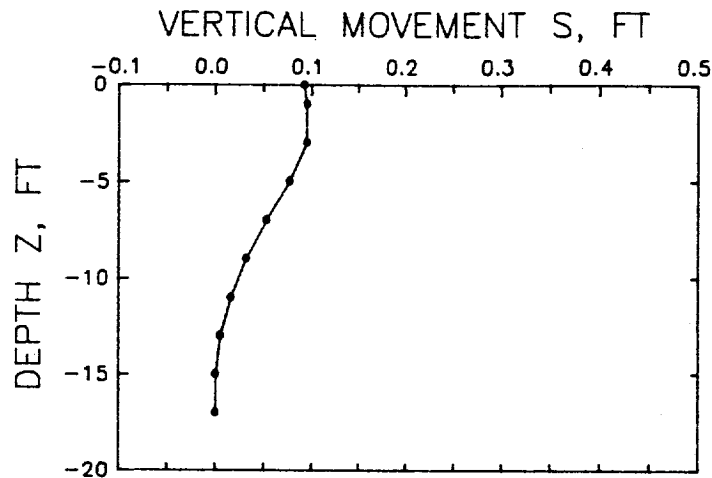
$S_{min}$  is 0.092 ft or 1.1 inches beneath the column. Heave is not expected below 13 ft beneath the columns.

b. Maximum Differential Heave  $\Delta S_{max}$ .

(1)  $\Delta S_{max}$  is the sum of  $S_{max}$  and the immediate settlement  $\rho_i$  if soil wetting is nonuniform. The maximum immediate settlement  $\rho_i$  is anticipated to occur as elastic settlement beneath the loaded columns if soil wetting does not occur in this area. A common cause of nonuniform wetting is



a. BENEATH SLAB



b. BENEATH COLUMN

Figure 5-3. Calculated heave profile beneath mat foundation

leaking underground water lines. From the improved Janbu approximation, Equation 3-17 and Figure 3-8, with reference to Figure 5-2

$$\mu_o = 0.92 \text{ for } D/B = 1.0$$

$$\mu_1 = 0.7 \text{ for } L/B = 1.0 \text{ and } H/B > 10$$

$$\rho_i = \mu_o \cdot \mu_1 \cdot \left[ \frac{q \cdot B}{E_s} \right] = 0.92 \cdot 0.7 \cdot \frac{1.0 \cdot 5.0}{200}$$

The maximum differential heave  $\Delta S_{\max} = S_{\max} + \rho_i = 3.6 + 0.2 = 3.8$  inches or 0.317 ft. The deflection ratio  $\Delta/L$  is  $\Delta S_{\max}/L = 0.317/20$  or  $1/64$  where  $L$  is 20 ft, the stiffening beam spacing. This deflection ratio cannot be

tolerated, Chapter 2. If the top 6 ft of expansive soil is replaced with nonexpansive backfill  $\Delta S_{\max} = 0.063 + 0.016 = 0.079$  ft or 0.95 inch. Ribbed mat foundations and superstructures may be designed to accommodate differential heave of 1 inch after methods in TM 5-818-7 or item 28.

(2)  $\Delta S_{\max}$  is the difference between  $S_{\max}$  and  $S_{\min}$  if soil wetting occurs beneath the columns or  $3.6 - 1.4 = 2.2$  inches. Replacement of the top 4 ft of soil beneath the ribbed mat will reduce this differential heave to about  $1.4 - 1.1$  or about 0.3 inch ignoring the difference in settlement beneath the fill and original expansive soil within 1 ft beneath the column.

## Section II. Collapsible Soil

5-7. General. Many collapsible soils are mudflows or windblown silt deposits of loess often found in arid or semiarid climates such as deserts, but dry climates are not necessary for collapsible soil. Loess deposits cover parts of the western, midwestern, and southern United States, Europe, South America, Asia including large areas of Russia and China, and Southern Africa. A collapsible soil at natural water content may support a given foundation load with negligible settlement, but when water is added to this soil the volume can decrease significantly and cause substantial settlement of the foundation, even at relatively low applied stress or at the overburden pressure. The amount of settlement depends on the initial void ratio, stress history of the soil, thickness of the collapsible soil layer, and magnitude of the applied foundation pressure. Collapsible soils exposed to perimeter watering of vegetation around structures or leaking utility lines are most likely to settle. Collapse may be initiated beneath the ground surface and propagate toward the surface leading to sudden and nonuniform settlement of overlying facilities.

a. Structure. Soils subject to collapse have a honeycombed structure of bulky shaped particles or grains held in place by a bonding material or force illustrated in Figure 5-4. Common bonding agents include soluble compounds such as calcareous or ferrous cementation that can be weakened or partly dissolved by water, especially acidic water. Removal of the supporting material or force occurs when water is added enabling the soil grains to slide or shear and move into voids.

b. Collapse Trigger. Table 5-4 illustrates four types of wetting that can trigger the collapse of soil. Dynamic loading may also cause a shear failure in the bonding material and induce collapse. This mechanism is particularly important for roads, airfields, railways, foundations supporting vibrating machinery, and other foundations subject to dynamic forces.

5-8. Identification. Typical collapsible soils are lightly colored, low in plasticity with liquid limits below 45, plasticity indices below 25, and relatively low dry densities between 65 and 105 lbs/ft<sup>3</sup> (60 to 40 percent porosity). Collapse rarely occurs in soil with a porosity less than 40 percent. Most past criteria for determining the susceptibility of collapse are based on relationships between the void ratio, water content, and dry density, Table 5-5. The methods in Table 5-5 apply to fine-grained soil.

(1) The Gibbs and Bara method (item 18) assumes collapse of soil with sufficient void space to hold the liquid limit water.

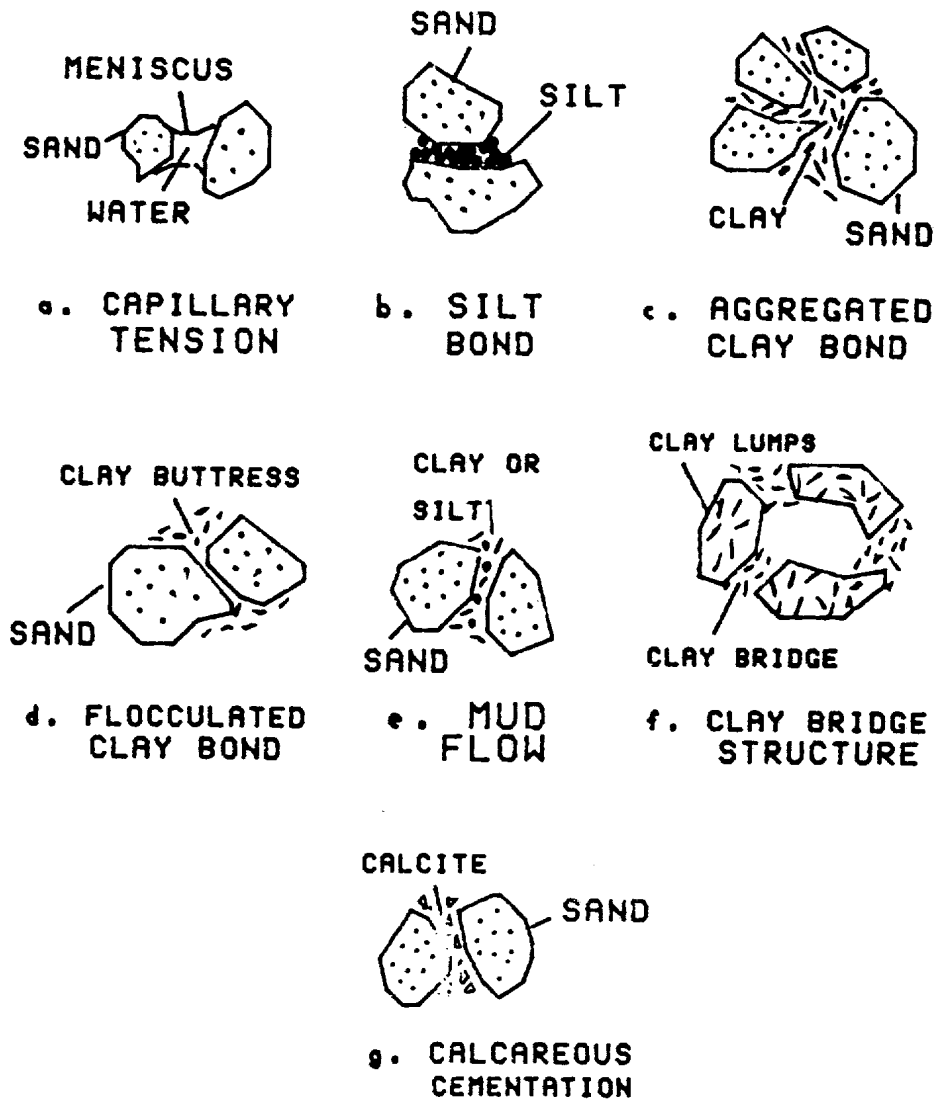


Figure 5-4. Mechanisms for collapse of loose, bulky grains

(2) Fine-grained soils that are not susceptible to collapse by the criteria in Table 5-5 may have potential for expansion described in Section I of this chapter.

5-9. Potential Collapse. When water becomes available to collapsible soil, settlement in addition to elastic settlement will occur without any additional applied pressure. This settlement will occur quickly in a free draining or pervious soil, but more slowly in a poor draining or less pervious soil. When construction occurs on soil where surface water filters through the collapsible soil over time, some collapse will occur in situ and reduce collapse that will occur on wetting following construction. Procedures for estimating the potential for collapse are uncertain because no single criterion can be applied to all collapsible soil. The amount of settlement depends on the extent of the wetting front and availability of water, which rarely can be predicted prior to collapse. Laboratory classification and consolidation tests can fail to indicate soil that eventually does collapse in the field. The following

Table 5-4

Wetting That Can Trigger Soil Collapse

| Type of Wetting                   | Description   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Local, shallow                    | Wetting of a random nature caused by water sources from pipelines or uncontrolled drainage of surface water; no rise in groundwater level; settlement occurs in upper soil layer within wetted area   |
| Intense local                     | Intense deep, local wetting caused by discharge of deep industrial effluent, leaking underground utility lines, or irrigation. Flow rates sufficient to cause a continuous rise in groundwater level may saturate the entire zone of collapsible soil within a short time (i.e., < 1 year) and cause uneven and damaging settlement under existing structural loads or only the soil weight |
| Slow, uniform rise in groundwater | Slow, relatively uniform rise of groundwater from sources outside of the collapsible soil area will cause uniform and gradual settlement  |
| Slow increase in water content    | Gradual increase in water content of thick collapsible soil layer from steam condensation or reduction in evaporation from the ground surface following placement of concrete or asphalt will cause incomplete settlement   |

procedures to estimate collapse attempt to follow the stress path to which the soil will be subjected in the field. Immediate settlement prior to collapse may be estimated by methods in Sections I and II, Chapter 3.

a. Wetting at Constant Load. An acceptable test procedure is described in detail as Method B of ASTM D 4546 or the Swell Test Procedure in Appendix VIIIA of EM 1110-2-1906. A specimen is loaded at natural water content in a consolidometer to the anticipated stress that will be imposed by the structure in the field. Distilled water (or natural site water if available) is added to the consolidometer and the decrease in specimen height following collapse is noted. The settlement of collapsible soil may be estimated by

$$\rho_{col} = \frac{e_o - e_c}{1 + e_o} \cdot H \quad (5-6)$$

where

- $\rho_{col}$  = settlement of collapsible soil stratum, ft
- $e_o$  = void ratio at natural water content under anticipated vertical applied pressure  $\sigma_f$
- $e_c$  = void ratio following wetting under  $\sigma_f$
- H = thickness of collapsing soil stratum, ft

Table 5-5

Relationships for Estimating Susceptibility  
of Soil to Collapse

| Source                                    | Soil Susceptible to Collapse  |  |               |                            |       |            |       |                  |        |         |         |                |      |                        |
|---|---|--|---------------|----------------------------|-------|------------|-------|------------------|--------|---------|---------|----------------|------|------------------------|
| Northey 1969<br>(item 48)                 | Denisov introduced a coefficient of subsidence $k_d = e_{LL}/e_o$ ; the soil is collapsible if<br><br>$0.5 < k_d < 0.75$ where $e_{LL}$ = void ratio at liquid limit<br>$LL$ = limit limit, percent<br>$e_o$ = natural void ratio   |  |               |                            |       |            |       |                  |        |         |         |                |      |                        |
| After Gibbs<br>and Bara 1962<br>(item 18) | $\gamma_d < 162.3/(1 + 0.026LL)$ where $\gamma_d$ = natural dry density, lbs/ft <sup>3</sup><br>or $e_o > 2.6LL/100$  |  |               |                            |       |            |       |                  |        |         |         |                |      |                        |
| Feda 1966<br>(item 16)                    | $\frac{e_o}{100G_s} - \frac{PL}{PI} > 0.85$   | $PL$ = plastic limit, percent<br>$PI$ = plasticity index, percent<br>$G_s$ = specific gravity of soil  |               |                            |       |            |       |                  |        |         |         |                |      |                        |
| Jennings and<br>Knight 1975<br>(item 26)  | Measure of collapse potential $CP$ of a specimen tested in a one-dimensional consolidometer in percent<br><br>$CP = \frac{e_o - e_c}{1 + e_o} \cdot 100$  |  |               |                            |       |            |       |                  |        |         |         |                |      |                        |
|   |   | $e_o$ = void ratio at $\sigma = 2$ tsf at natural water content prior to wetting<br><br>$e_c$ = void ratio after soaking at $\sigma = 2$ tsf |               |                            |       |            |       |                  |        |         |         |                |      |                        |
|   | <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: center; border-bottom: 1px solid black;">CP<br/>Percent</th> <th style="text-align: center; border-bottom: 1px solid black;">Severity of<br/>of Collapse</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">0 - 1</td> <td style="text-align: center;">negligible</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">1 - 5</td> <td style="text-align: center;">moderate trouble</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">5 - 10</td> <td style="text-align: center;">trouble</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">10 - 20</td> <td style="text-align: center;">severe trouble</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">&gt; 20</td> <td style="text-align: center;">very severe<br/>trouble</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> |  | CP<br>Percent | Severity of<br>of Collapse | 0 - 1 | negligible | 1 - 5 | moderate trouble | 5 - 10 | trouble | 10 - 20 | severe trouble | > 20 | very severe<br>trouble |
| CP<br>Percent                             | Severity of<br>of Collapse  |  |               |                            |       |            |       |                  |        |         |         |                |      |                        |
| 0 - 1                                     | negligible  |  |               |                            |       |            |       |                  |        |         |         |                |      |                        |
| 1 - 5                                     | moderate trouble  |  |               |                            |       |            |       |                  |        |         |         |                |      |                        |
| 5 - 10                                    | trouble   |  |               |                            |       |            |       |                  |        |         |         |                |      |                        |
| 10 - 20                                   | severe trouble  |  |               |                            |       |            |       |                  |        |         |         |                |      |                        |
| > 20                                      | very severe<br>trouble  |  |               |                            |       |            |       |                  |        |         |         |                |      |                        |

The total settlement of the soil will be the sum of the settlement of each stratum.

b. Modified Oedometer Test (item 22). This test is a modification of the Jennings and Knight (item 26) double oedometer procedure that eliminates testing of two similar specimens, one at natural water content and the other inundated with distilled (or natural) water for 24 hr.

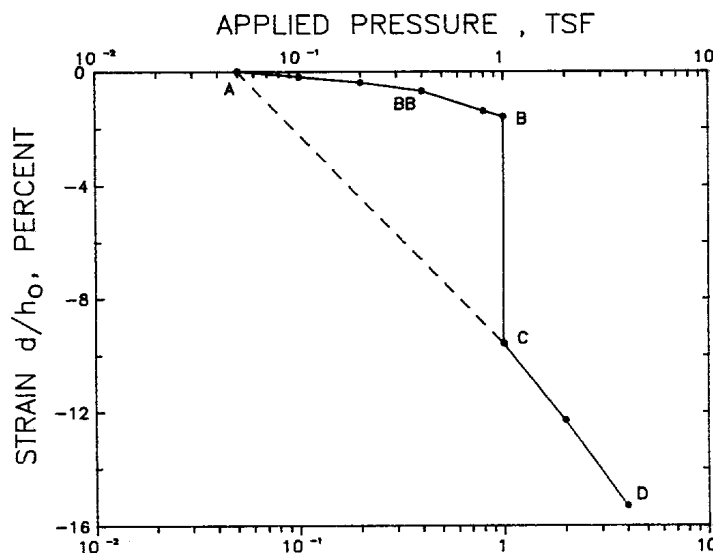
(1) Procedure. An undisturbed specimen is prepared and placed in a 1-D consolidometer at the natural water content. The initial specimen height  $h$



is recorded. A seating pressure of 0.05 tsf is placed on the specimen and the dial gauge is zeroed (compression at stress levels less than 0.05 tsf is ignored). Within 5 minutes, the vertical stress is increased in increments of 0.05, 0.1, 0.2, 0.4 tsf, etc. until the vertical stress is equal to or slightly greater than that expected in the field following construction. For each increment, dial readings are taken every 1/2 hr until less than 0.1 percent compression occurs in 1 hr. The specimen is subsequently inundated with distilled (or natural) water and the collapse observed on the dial gauge is recorded. Dial readings are monitored every 1/2 hr at this stress level until less than 0.1 percent compression occurs in 1 hr. Additional stress is placed on the specimen in increments as previously described until the slope of the curve is established. The dial readings  $d$  are divided by the initial specimen thickness  $h_0$  and multiplied by 100 to obtain percent strain. The percent strain may be plotted as a function of the applied pressure as shown in Figure 5-5 and a dotted line projected from point C to point A to approximate the collapse strain for stress levels less than those tested.

(2) Calculation of collapse. The soil profile should be divided into different layers with each layer corresponding to a representative specimen such as illustrated in Figure 5-6. The initial and final stress distribution should be calculated for each layer and entered in the compression curve such as Figure 5-5 and the vertical strain recorded at the natural water content and the inundated water content. The settlement is the difference in strain between the natural water content and wetted specimen at the same stress level

$$p_{col} = [(d/h_0)_f - (d/h_0)_o] \cdot H/100 \quad (5-7)$$



$d$  = DIAL READING, IN.  
 $h_0$  = INITIAL SPECIMEN HEIGHT, IN.

Figure 5-5. Example Compression curve of the Modified Oedometer Test.  
( $d/h_0$  is multiplied by 100 to obtain percent)

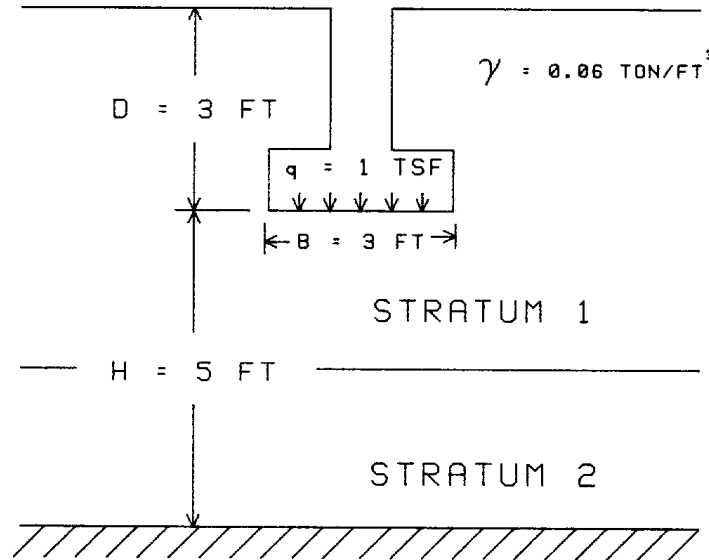


Figure 5-6. Illustration of footing for calculating settlement on collapsible soil

where

- $p_{col}$  = collapse settlement, ft  
 $(d/h_o)_f \cdot 100$  = strain after wetting at the field stress level, percent  
 $(d/h_o)_o \cdot 100$  = strain at natural water content at the field stress level, percent  
 $d$  = dial reading, in.  
 $h_o$  = initial specimen height, in.  
 $H$  = thickness of collapsible stratum, ft

Total settlement is the sum of the collapse settlement of each stratum.

5-10. Application. A 3-ft square footing illustrated in Figure 5-6 is to be placed 3-ft deep on a loess soil with a thickness of 5 ft beneath the footing. The results of a modified oedometer test performed on specimens of this soil are provided in Figure 5-5. The footing pressure  $q = 1$  tsf. Refer to Appendix F for calculation of potential collapse of a footing using program VDISPL.

a. Calculation. Table 5-6 illustrates computation of the vertical stress distribution and collapse settlement at the center and corner of this footing. The stress levels and vertical strains of the soil in Figure 5-5 are shown in Table 5-6b assuming layers 1 and 2, Figure 5-6, consist of the same soil. The average settlement of  $(4.5 + 4.0)/2 = 4.3$  inches should provide a reasonable estimate of the settlement of this footing.

b. Testing Errors. The amount of collapse depends substantially on the extent of the wetting front and initial negative pore water or suction pressure in the soil, which may not be duplicated because soil disturbance and lateral pressures may not be simulated. Collapse may also be stress path dependent and may involve a mechanism other than addition of water such as exposure to dynamic forces.

Table 5-6

Example Calculation of Settlement of a Collapsible Soil Beneath a Square Footing (Figure 5-6)

a. Stress Distribution

| Depth<br>Below<br>Footing<br>z, ft | $\frac{B}{2z}$ | Overburden                   | Influence*    |                   | Footing**     |                    | Total Stress               |       |
|------------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------|---------------|-------------------|---------------|--------------------|----------------------------|-------|
|                                    |                | Pressure<br>$\sigma_o$ , tsf | Factor<br>Cen | $I_\sigma$<br>Cor | Stress<br>Cen | $q_z$ , tsf<br>Cor | $\sigma_{fz}$ , tsf<br>Cen | Cor   |
| 0.0                                | $\infty$       | 0.18                         | 0.250         | 0.250             | 1.000         | 0.250              | 1.180                      | 0.430 |
| 2.5                                | 0.6            | 0.33                         | 0.106         | 0.195             | 0.424         | 0.195              | 0.754                      | 0.525 |
| 5.0                                | 0.3            | 0.48                         | 0.038         | 0.106             | 0.152         | 0.106              | 0.632                      | 0.586 |

\* From Figure C-2 where  $m = n = \frac{B}{2z}$  for the center and  $m = n = \frac{B}{z}$  for the corner

\*\* Center:  $q_z = 4q \cdot I$  ; Corner:  $q_z = q \cdot I$  ;  $q = 1$  tsf

b. Settlement

| Depth<br>Below<br>Footing<br>z, ft | L<br>a<br>y<br>e<br>r | Average<br>Final Stress    |       | Average<br>Initial     |      | Average<br>Final       |      |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|-------|------------------------|------|------------------------|------|
|                                    |                       | $\sigma_{fz}$ , tsf<br>Cen | Cor   | Strain, Percent<br>Cen | Cor  | Strain, Percent<br>Cen | Cor  |
| 1.25                               | 1                     | 0.967                      | 0.478 | 1.55                   | 0.85 | 9.45                   | 7.30 |
| 3.75                               | 2                     | 0.693                      | 0.555 | 1.25                   | 1.05 | 8.35                   | 7.75 |

Settlement from Equation 5-7:

*Center:*  $p_{col} = [(9.45 - 1.55) + (8.35 - 1.250)] \cdot 2.5 = 0.375 \text{ ft or } 4.5 \text{ inches}$

*Corner:*  $p_{col} = [(7.30 - 0.85) + (7.75 - 1.05)] \cdot 2.5 = 0.329 \text{ ft or } 4.0 \text{ inches}$

CHAPTER 6  
COPING WITH SOIL MOVEMENTS

Section I. Minimizing and Tolerating Soil Movements

6-1. General. Development of society leads increasingly to construction on marginal (soft, expansive, collapsible) soil subject to potential volume changes. Sufficient soil exploration and tests are necessary to provide reliable soil parameters for evaluating reasonable estimates of total and differential settlement.

a. Exploratory Borings. Exploratory borings should be made within soil areas supporting the structure and sufficient tests performed to determine upper and lower limits of the soil strength, stiffness, and other required parameters. Depth of borings should be sufficient to include the significantly stressed zones of soil from overlying structures. These depths should be twice the minimum width of footings or mats with length to width ratios less than two, four times the minimum width of infinitely long footings or embankments, or to the depth of incompressible strata, whichever is least.

b. Mitigation for Excessive Deformation Potential. If analysis by methods in this manual indicates excessive settlement or heave of the supporting soil, then the soil should be improved and/or various design measures should be applied to reduce the potential volume changes and foundation movements to within tolerable limits.

c. Additional Reference. Refer to Chapter 16, TM 5-818-1, for further information on stabilization of foundation soil.

6-2. Soil Improvement. Most foundation problems occur from high void ratios, low strength materials and unfavorable water content in the soil; therefore, basic concepts of soil improvement include densification, cementation, reinforcement, soil modification or replacement, drainage, and other water content controls. A summary with description of soil improvement methods is shown in Table 6-1. The range of soil particle sizes applicable for these soil improvement methods is shown in Table 6-2. Methods that densify soil by dynamic forces such as vibro-compaction and dynamic compaction (consolidation) may lead to a temporary, short-term reduction in strength of the foundation soil.

a. Soft Soil. Soft soils have poor volume stability and low strength and may be composed of loose sands and silts, wet clays, organic soils, or combinations of these materials. Most of the methods listed in Table 6-1 and 6-2 are used to minimize settlement in soft soil. Applicability of these methods depends on economy; effectiveness of treatment in the existing soil; availability of equipment, materials, and skills; and the effect on the environment such as disposal of waste materials. Some of the more useful methods for improving soft soil are described in more detail below.

(1) Removal by excavation. Soft soil underlain by suitable bearing soil at shallow depths (less than 20 ft) may be economical to remove by excavation and replace with suitable borrow material or with the original soil after drying or other treatment. Compacted lean clays and sands (if necessary, with chemical admixtures such as lime, flyash and/or portland cement) is an adequate replacement material if the water table is below the excavation

Table 6-1

Soil Improvement Methods (Includes Data from Item 10)

| <u>Method</u>                                       | <u>Principle</u>  | <u>Most Suitable Soils and Types</u>                                    | <u>Maximum Effective Treatment, Depth, ft</u> | <u>Advantages and Limitations</u>   |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| <u>Vibrocompaction</u>                              |   |   |   |   |
| Blasting  | Shock waves cause liquefaction, displacement, remolding                         | Saturated, clean sands, partly saturated sands and silts after flooding | 60  | Rapid, low cost, treat small areas, no improvement near surface, dangerous,   |
| Terra-probe   | Densify by vertical vibration, liquefaction induced settlement under overburden | Saturated or dry clean sand (less effective in finer sand)              | 60 (ineffective above 12-ft depth)            | Rapid, simple, good under water, soft underlayers may damp vibrations, hard to penetrate overlayers   |
| Vibratory rollers                                   | Densify by vibration, liquefaction induced settlement under roller weight       | Cohesionless soils  | 6 to 9  | Best method for thin layers or lifts  |
| Dynamic compaction (consolidation) or heavy tamping | Repeated high intensity impacts at the surface gives immediate settlement       | Cohesionless soils best, other soils can be improved                    | 45 to 60                                      | Simple, rapid, must protect from personal injury and property damage from flying debris; groundwater must be > 6 ft below surface faster than preloading but less uniform |
| Vibro-flotation                                     | Densify by horizontal vibration and compaction of backfill material             | Cohesionless soil with less than 20 percent fines                       | 90  | Economical and effective in saturated and partly saturated granular soils   |

Table 6-1. Continued

| <u>Method</u>           | <u>Principle</u>  | <u>Most Suitable Soils and Types</u>                                 | <u>Maximum Effective Treatment, Depth, ft</u> | <u>Advantages and Limitations</u>  |
|-------------------------|---|--|---|--|
| Hydro-compaction        | Densify by vibration or repeated impact on surface of prewetted soil                          | Collapsible soil   | < 10  | Most effective method to densify silty loose collapsible sands   |
| <u>Compaction Piles</u> |   |  |   |  |
| Compaction Piles        | Densify by displacement of pile volume and by vibration during driving                        | Loose sandy soils, partly saturated clayey soils, loess              | 60 (limited improvement above 3 to 6)         | Useful in soils with fines, uniform compaction, easy to check results, slow  |
| Sand Compaction Piles   | Sand placed in driven pipe; pipe partially withdrawn and redriven using vibratory hammer      | All  | -   | Compressed air may be used to keep hole open as casing partially withdrawn   |
| <u>Precompression</u>   |   |  |   |  |
| Pre-loading             | Load applied sufficiently in advance of construction to precompress soil                      | Normally consolidated soft clays, silts, organic deposits, landfills | -   | Easy, uniform, long time required (use sand drains or strip drains to reduce time)   |
| Surcharge Fills         | Fill exceeding that required to achieve a given settlement; shorter time; excess fill removed | Same as for preloading   | -   | Faster than preloading without surcharge (use sand or strip drains to reduce time)   |
| Electro-osmosis         | DC current causes water flow from anode towards cathode where it is removed                   | Normally consolidated silts and clays                                | 30 - 60                                       | No fill loading required; use in confined areas; fast; nonuniform properties between electrodes; useless in highly pervious soil |

Table 6-1. Continued

| <u>Method</u>                 | <u>Principle</u>  | <u>Most Suitable Soils and Types</u>                        | <u>Maximum Effective Treatment, Depth, ft</u> | <u>Advantages and Limitations</u>  |
|-------------------------------|---|---|---|--|
| <u>Reinforcement</u>          |   |   |   |  |
| Mix-in-place Piles and Walls  | Lime, cement or asphalt placed by rotating auger or in-place mixer  | All soft or loose inorganic soils                           | > 60  | Uses native soil; reduced lateral support required during excavation; difficult quality control          |
| Strips and Membranes          | Horizontal tensile strips or membranes buried in soil under footings                                      | All   | < 10  | Increased allowable bearing capacity; reduced deformations   |
| Vibro-replacement Stone       | Hole jetted in soft, fine-grain soil and back-filled with densely compacted gravel                        | Very soft to firm soils (undrained strength 0.2 to 0.5 tsf) | 60  | Faster than pre-compression; avoids dewatering required for remove and replace; limited bearing capacity |
| Vibro-displacement Stone      | Probe displaces soil laterally; backfill discharged through probe or placed in layers after probe removed | Soft to firm soils (undrained strength 0.3 to 0.6 tsf)      | 50  | Best in low sensitivity soils with low groundwater   |
| <u>Grouting and Injection</u> |   |   |   |  |
| Particulate Grouting          | Penetration grout fills soil voids  | Medium to Coarse sand and gravel                            | Unlimited                                     | Low cost; grout high strength  |
| Chemical Grouting             | Solutions of 2 or more chemicals react in soil pores to form gel or soil precipitate                      | Medium silts and coarser                                    | Unlimited                                     | Low viscosity; controllable gel time; good water shutoff; high cost; hard to evaluate                    |

Table 6-1. Continued

| <u>Method</u>                          | <u>Principle</u>   | <u>Most Suitable Soils and Types</u>                                     | <u>Maximum Effective Treatment, Depth, ft</u> | <u>Advantages and Limitations</u>   |
|--|--|--|---|---|
| Pressure Injected Lime and lime-flyash | Lime slurry and lime-flyash slurry injected to shallow depths under pressure                               | Expansive clays, silts and loose sands                                   | Unlimited (usually 6 to 9)                    | Rapid and economical for foundations under light structures; flyash with lime may increase cementation and strength and reduce permeability |
| Displacement or compaction grout       | Highly viscous grout acts as radial hydraulic jack when pumped under high pressure                         | Soft, fine grained soils; soils with large voids or cavities             | 40  | Corrects differential settlement; fills large voids; requires careful control   |
| Jet grouting                           | Cement grouts injected to replace and mix with soils eroded by high pressure water jet ("soilcrete column) | Alluvial, cohesive, sandy, gravelly soils, miscellaneous fill and others | Unlimited                                     | Increases soil strength and decreases permeability; wide application  |
| Electrokinetic Injection               | Stabilizing chemicals moved into soil by electroosmosis  | Saturated silts; silty clays   | Unknown                                       | Soil and structure not subject to high pressures; useless in pervious soil  |
| <u>Miscellaneous</u>                   |  |  |   |   |
| Remove and Replace                     | Soil excavated, replaced with competent material or improved by drying or admixture and recompacted        | Inorganic soil   | < 30  | Uniform; controlled when replaced; may require large area dewatering  |



Table 6-1. Concluded

| <u>Method</u>     | <u>Principle</u>   | <u>Most Suitable Soils and Types</u>        | <u>Maximum Effective Treatment, Depth, ft</u> | <u>Advantages and Limitations</u>   |
|-------------------|--|---|---|---|
| Moisture Barriers | Water access to foundation soil is minimized and more uniform          | Expansive soil                              | 15  | Best for small structures and pavements; may not be 100 percent effective   |
| Prewetting        | Soil is brought to estimated final water content prior to construction | Expansive soil                              | 6   | Low cost; best for small, light structures; soil may still shrink and swell |
| Structural Fills  | Structural fill distributes loads to underlying soft soils             | Soft clays or organic soils; marsh deposits | -   | High strength; good load distribution to underlying soft soils              |

line. Granular material such as sand, slag, and gravel should be used if the water table is above the bottom of the excavation. Additional mechanical compaction may be accomplished with vibratory or dynamic methods, Table 6-1.

(2) Precompression. Precompression densifies the foundation soil by placing a load or surcharge fill, usually a weight that exceeds the permanent structure load, on the site. The preload should eliminate most of the post-construction primary consolidation and some secondary compression and increase the soil strength.

(a) For embankments, additional fill beyond that required to construct the embankment is usually placed.

(b) For foundations other than earth structures, the preload must be removed prior to construction.

(c) Time required for preload may sometimes be appreciably reduced by sand or prefabricated vertical (PV) strip drains to accelerate consolidation of thick layers of low permeability. PV drains commonly consist of a filter fabric sleeve or jacket made of nonwoven polyester or polypropylene surrounding a plastic core. The drain is inserted into the soil using an installation mast containing a hollow mandrel or lance through which the drain is threaded. An anchor plate is attached to the end of the drain. Theoretical estimates of the rate of settlement are largely qualitative unless prior experience is available from similar sites because the analysis is sensitive to soil input

Table 6-2

Range of Particle Sizes For Various Soil Improvement Methods

| GRAVEL                              | SAND | SILT | CLAY |
|-------------------------------------|------|------|------|
| PARTICULATE GROUTING                |      |      |      |
| VIBRATORY ROLLERS                   |      |      |      |
| VIBROFLOTATION                      |      |      |      |
| COMPACTION PILES                    |      |      |      |
| CHEMICAL GROUTING                   |      |      |      |
| DYNAMIC COMPACTION                  |      |      |      |
| SAND COMPACTION PILES, JET GROUTING |      |      |      |
| TERRAPROBE                          |      |      |      |
| BLASTING                            |      |      |      |
| COMPACTION GROUT                    |      |      |      |
| STONE COLUMNS                       |      |      |      |
| PRELOADING, SURCHARGE FILLS         |      |      |      |
| LIME STABILIZATION                  |      |      |      |
| ELECTROKINETIC INJECTION            |      |      |      |
| ELECTROOSMOSIS                      |      |      |      |

parameters, particularly the coefficient of consolidation and existence of pervious bands of soil. Strip drains have largely replaced sand drains in practice.

(3) Stone or chemically stabilized soil columns. Columns made of stone or chemically stabilized soil increase the stiffness of the foundation and can substantially decrease settlement. Columns may fail by bulging if the adjacent soil gives inadequate support or fail by shear as a pile because of insufficient skin friction and end bearing resistance.

(a) Stone columns are made by vibroreplacement (wet) or vibrodisplacement (dry) methods, Table 6-1. Diameters range from 1.5 to 4 ft with spacings from 5 to 12 ft. A blanket of sand and gravel or a semirigid mat of reinforced earth is usually placed over stone column reinforced soil to improve load transfer to the columns by arching over the in situ soil. Stone columns are not recommended for soils with sensitivities greater than 5.

(b) Lime columns are made by mixing metered or known amounts of quicklime using drilling rigs to achieve concentrations of 5 to 10 percent lime by weight of dry soil. Structures are constructed on thin concrete slabs where settlement is assumed uniform over the entire area.

(c) Cement columns are made by adding 10 to 20 percent cement as a slurry. These columns are brittle, have low permeability, and have been used below sea level.

(4) Jet grouting. Jet grouting is the controlled injection of cement grouts to replace most any type of soil; this soil is eroded by water jets while grouting. The most common application has been underpinning of existing structures to reduce total and differential settlement and as cutoff walls for tunnels, open cuts, canals, and dams. Jet grouting may also be used to consolidate soft foundation soils for new structures, embankments, and retaining walls. Other applications include support of excavations for open cuts and shafts and slope stabilization.

(a) Jet grouting can either break up the soil and mix grout with the natural soil particles or break up the soil, partially remove the soil, and mix grout with the remaining soil particles.

(b) Jet grouting can substantially increase the strength and stiffness of soft clay soil to reduce settlement and substantially reduce the permeability of sandy soil.

(c) Jet grouting is generally used with rapid set cement and with fly ash. Fly ash when mixed with cement or lime produces a cementitious material with excellent structural properties. Other chemicals may be used instead of cement.

(d) A single jet nozzle can be used to both break down the soil structure and force mixing of grout with the natural soil. A water jet can also be sheathed in a stream of compressed air to erode the soil while a grout jet beneath the water jet replaces the broken or disturbed soil. Diameter and discharge pressure of the nozzles, withdrawal and rotation rates, type and quality of grout, and soil type influence volume and quality of the grouted mass. Withdrawal rates and nozzle pressures are the primary design factors. Withdrawal rates vary from 1 to 50 inches/minute and nozzle pressures often range from 3000 to 9000 psi depending on the type of soil.

(5) Dynamic compaction (Consolidation). Weights from 5 to 40 tons and more may be dropped from heights of 20 to 100 ft following a particular pattern for each site. The impact appears to cause partial liquefaction of granular deposits, thereby allowing the soil to settle into a more dense state.

(6) Removal by displacement. Sufficient cohesionless fill is placed to cause bearing failures in the underlying soft soil. The soft soil is displaced in the direction of least resistance, which is usually ahead of the embankment fill. The displaced soil causes a mudwave that should be excavated at the same rate that the embankment is placed to minimize trapping pockets of soft soil beneath the embankment.

(7) Lightweight fills. Sawdust, expanded foam plastic blocks, expanded shale or clay, oyster shell, and fly ash fills can partially replace excavated heavier soft material and reduce the net increase in pressure on underlying soft soil. The availability of lightweight fill in sufficient quantity at reasonable cost and suitable locations to dispose of the excavated soft soil limit application of this method.

(8) Structural (Self-supporting fills). Some naturally occurring materials such as dead oyster shell can form a barge-like structure from particle interlocking. Fills of loose shell have been used for highway embankments and foundations for flexible facilities such as warehouses on marsh and swamp deposits.

(9) Blasting. Cohesionless, saturated sands (less than 25 percent passing the 200 mesh) are most responsive to densification by the detonation of dynamite charges in loose deposits. Soft soils that can be liquefied or displaced by advancing fill can be removed by blasting for embankment construction. Soft soils may be displaced by blasting or toe shooting in front of the embankment. The extent of soil improvement by blasting is often uncertain.

(a) The underfill method, where backfill is placed on top of soft soil and explosives are placed under the embankment by lowering down casing into the soft deposits, is most effective when the embankment width is less than 60 ft.

(b) The ditching method, where fill is placed immediately into excavations made by blasting, is effective for depths of soft soil less than 15 ft.

(c) The relief method may be useful where ditches are blasted along each side of the embankment to provide lateral stress relief and force soft shallow soil to move laterally into the ditches.

b. Expansive Soil. Potentially expansive soils are usually desiccated and will absorb available moisture. These soils can be made to maintain volume changes within acceptable limits by controlling the soil water content and by reducing the potential of the soil to heave. Methods for improving the performance of foundations in expansive soil are illustrated in Table 6-3.

c. Collapsible Soil. Collapsible soils settle when wetted or vibrated; therefore, the usual approach toward optimizing performance of structures on collapsible soil is prewetting the construction site. Hydrocompaction (see Table 6-1) of the site prior to construction is commonly recommended. Chemical stabilization with lime, sodium silicate, or other chemicals is not always successful. Methods applicable to improving performance of structures on collapsible soil are illustrated in Table 6-4.

Table 6-3

Improving Performance in Expansive Soil

| Method  | Description  |
|---|--|
| Removal by excavation and replacement with non-expansive fill | Removal of surface expansive soil to depths of from 4 to 8 ft and replacement with compacted nonexpansive fill usually eliminates most potential soil heave because the depth of moisture change is often limited to about 8 ft.   |
| Placement of vertical moisture barriers                       | Vertical moisture barriers placed adjacent to pavements or around the perimeter of foundations down to the maximum depth of moisture changes is effective in maintaining uniform soil moisture within the barrier. Differential movements are minimized. Long-term soil wetting with uniform heave beneath impervious foundations may occur from lack of natural evapotranspiration                            |
| Lime stabilization  | Lime injected or mixed into expansive soil can reduce potential for heave by reducing the mass permeability thereby reducing amount of water seeping into the soil, by cementation, and by exchange of sodium for calcium ions. Fissures should exist in situ to promote penetration of lime injected slurry. Lime may be detrimental in soils containing sulfates.  |
| Potassium injection   | Potassium solutions injected into expansive soil can cause a base exchange, increase the soil permeability and effectively reduce the potential for swell.   |
| Prewetting  | Free water is added by ponding to bring soil to the estimated final water content prior to construction. Vertical sand drains may promote wetting of subsurface soil.  |
| Surcharge   | Placing 1 or 2 ft or more of permanent compacted fill on the surface of a level site prior to construction increases the overburden pressure on the underlying soil reducing the negative (suction) pore water pressure; therefore, the potential for swell is less and tends to be more uniform. This fill also increases elevation of the site providing positive drainage of water away from the structure. |

6-3. Foundation Techniques. Foundation design and construction methods can minimize soil volume changes and differential movement.

a. Floating Foundations. Foundation elements such as mats and footings can be placed in excavations of sufficient depth where the pressure applied by the structure to the underlying foundation soil approximately balances pressure applied by the excavated soil. Observed deformation will be elastic re-

Table 6-4

Improving Performance of Collapsible Soil

| Depth of Soil Treatment, ft | Description   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 0 to 5                      | Wetting, mixing, and compaction   |
| > 5                         | Overexcavation and recompaction with or without chemical additives such as lime or cement |
|                             | Hydrocompaction   |
|                             | Vibroflotation  |
|                             | Lime pressure injection   |
|                             | Sodium silicate injection   |
|                             | Prewetting by ponding; vertical sand drains promote wetting of subsurface soil            |

compression settlement. The exposed soil in the bottom of the excavation must be protected from disturbance and deterioration.

b. Ribbed Mats. Slab foundations supported by a grid of stiffening beams can transfer structural loads to soil of adequate stiffness and bearing capacity. The stiffness of ribbed mats also reduces differential movement in expansive soil. The depth of stiffening beams normally does not exceed 3 ft. Ribbed mats supported on compacted cohesive nonexpansive fills are commonly constructed in expansive soil areas.

c. Leveling Jacks. Structures may be supported by jacks on isolated footings in which the elevation can be periodically adjusted to reduce distress from excessive differential movement. Proper adjustment of leveling jacks requires periodic level surveys to determine the amount and direction of adjustment, whether up or down, and frequency of adjustment to minimize differential movement. Leveling jacks are usually inconvenient to owner/operators of the structure.

d. Deep Foundations. Structural loads can be transferred to deep, firm bearing strata by piles or drilled shafts to eliminate or minimize effects of shallow soil movements on structural performance. Uplift thrust from skin friction on the perimeter of deep foundation piles or drilled shafts in expansive soil or downdrag in consolidating or collapsing soil should be considered in the design. Refer to TM 5-809-7, Design of Deep Foundations, for further details.

e. Construction Aids for Excavations. Settlement or loss of ground adjacent to excavations may become excessive. Cause of loss of ground include lateral rebound of perimeter walls into the excavation, rebound at the bottom of the excavation, and dewatering. Damage may occur in adjacent structures including pavements and utilities if loss of ground exceeds 0.5 inch or lateral movement of perimeter walls into an excavation exceeds 2 inches. Level readings should be taken periodically to monitor elevation changes so that steps may be taken to avoid any damage. Construction aids include placement of bracing or retaining walls, placement of foundation loads as quickly as possible after the excavation is made, avoidance of ponding of water within excavations, and ground freezing. Load bearing soils at the bottom of the excavation must be protected from deterioration and water content changes following exposure to the environment. Ground freezing provides temporary support and groundwater control in difficult soils and it is adaptable to most size, shape, or depth of excavations. Ground freezing is accomplished by circulating a coolant, usually calcium chloride brine, through refrigeration pipes embedded in the soil. Refer to TM 5-818-5/AFM 88-5, Chapter 6, for details on dewatering and groundwater control.

6-4. Flexible Techniques. Structures may be made flexible to tolerate differential movement by placing construction joints in the superstructure or by using flexible construction materials. Steel or wood frames, metal siding, wood paneling, and asphalt floors can tolerate large differential settlements or angular distortions up to about 1/150.

## Section II. Remedial Methods

6-5. General. Remedial work for damaged structures is often aggravated because it is difficult to determine the cause of the problem (e.g., location of source or loss of soil moisture with swelling or settling of expansive/collapsible soil may not be readily apparent). Investigation and repair are specialized procedures that usually require much expertise and experience. Cost of repair work can easily exceed the original cost of the foundation. Repair of structures in heaving soil is usually much more costly than in settling soil. Structures are less able to tolerate the tensile strains from heaving soil than the compressive strains in settling soil. The amount of damage that requires repair also depends on the attitudes of the owner and affected people to tolerate distortion and consequences if the distortion and damage are ignored. Only one remedial procedure should be attempted at a time after a course of action has been decided so its effect on the structure may be determined. Several common remedial methods are discussed below. Refer to TM 5-818-7, Foundations in Expansive Soils, for further details on remedial methods for foundations.

6-6. Underpinning with Piles. Underpinning may be accomplished by a variety of methods: drilled-in-place tangent piles, cast-in-place rigid concrete slurry walls, precast concrete retaining walls, root or pin piles, concrete underpinning pits, and jacked steel piles. Selection of the underpinning method depends on the nature of the subgrade soil and its expected behavior during underpinning. Refer to TM 5-809-7, Deep Foundations, for details on piles.

a. Avoid Ground Loss. Possibility of ground loss during installation may eliminate use of tangent piles, slurry walls, and precast concrete retaining walls.

b. Interference with Utilities. Underground utilities may eliminate use of piles or cast-in-place concrete shafts.

6-7. Grouting. Structures may be stabilized by injecting portland cement, fine soil, and chemicals into the problem soil. Grouting mixtures usually consist of fine soil, portland cement, and water; lime and water; sodium silicate; calcium chloride; polymers; and resins. Jet and compaction grouting, for example, reduce differential settlement of structures. Compaction grouting can raise a structure that has settled. The stiffness and strength of the soil may be increased by injecting a grout containing additives such as portland cement to improve the performance of the soil. Compaction grouting may use 12 to 15 percent by weight of portland cement mixed with soil and water to make a viscous, low slump grout that is to be pumped into bored holes at pressures up to 500 psi. Refer to TM 5-818-6, Grouting Methods and Equipment; EM 1110-2-3504, Chemical Grouting; and EM 1110-2-3506, Grouting Technology, for details on grouting.

6-8. Slabjacking. Slabjacking, the lifting or leveling of distorted foundations, is usually faster than other solutions for remedial work. Grouting materials include portland cement, hydrated lime, fly ash, asphalt bitumen, drilling mud, casting plaster, and limestone dust. Consistency of the grout varies from less commonly used thin fluids to more common heavy pourable or stiff mortar-like mixtures (with nearly zero slump). Cement contents vary from 3 to 33 percent with sand or soil materials all passing the No. 16 sieve. Leakage from joints and along the edges of slabs can present serious problems, which are commonly offset by increasing the consistency of the grout. Lifts of as much as 1 ft are common. Properly performed slabjacking will not usually cause new fractures in the foundation, but existing cracks tend to open. Experience is required to cause low points to rise while maintaining high points at a constant elevation.



APPENDIX A  
REFERENCES

1. TM 5-809-1/AFM 88-3, Chapter 1, "Load Assumptions for Buildings."
2. TM 5-809-7, "Design of Deep Foundations (Except Hydraulic Structures)."
3. TM 5-818-1/AFM 88-5, Chapter 7, "Procedures for Foundation Design of Buildings and Other Structures (Except Hydraulic Structures)."
4. TM 5-818-5/AFM 88-5, Chapter 6, NAVFAC P-418, "Dewatering and Groundwater Control."
5. TM 5-818-6, "Grouting Methods and Equipment."
6. TM 5-818-7, "Foundations in Expansive Soils."
7. ER 1110-2-1806, "Earthquake Design and Analysis for Corps of Engineers Dams."
8. EM 1110-1-1804, "Geotechnical Investigations."
9. EM 1110-2-1903, "Bearing Capacity."
10. EM 1110-2-1906, "Laboratory Soils Testing."
11. EM 1110-2-1907, "Soil Sampling."
12. EM 1110-2-1911, "Construction Control for Earth and Rock-Fill Dams."
13. EM 1110-2-1913, "Design and Construction of Levees."
14. EM 1110-2-2102, "Waterstop and Other Joint Materials."
15. EM 1110-2-2300, "Earth and Rockfill Dams, General Design and Construction Considerations."
16. EM 1110-2-3506, "Grouting Technology."
17. EM 1110-2-3504, "Chemical Grouting."
18. Department of the Navy, NAVFAC DM-7.1, May 1982, "Soil Mechanics." Available from Naval Facilities Engineering Command, 200 Stovall Street, Alexandria, VA 22332.
19. Department of the Navy, NAVFAC DM-7.3, April 1983, "Soil Dynamics." Available from Naval Facilities Engineering Command, 200 Stovall Street, Alexandria, VA 22332.
20. Nuclear Regulatory Commission, Regulatory Guide 1.6, "Design Response Spectra for Seismic Design of Nuclear Power Plants." Available from Nuclear Regulatory Commission, 1717 H Street, Washington, DC 20555.

21. American Society for Testing and Materials Standard Methods of Test D 1194, "Bearing Capacity of Soil for Static Load on Spread Footings." Available from American Society for Testing and Materials, 1916 Race Street, Philadelphia, PA 19103.
22. American Society for Testing and Materials Standard Methods D 1557, "Moisture-Density Relations of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures Using 10-lb (4.54-kg) Rammer and 18-in. (457-mm) Drop." Available from American Society for Testing and Materials, 1916 Race Street, Philadelphia, PA 19103.
23. American Society for Testing and Materials Standard Method D 1586, "Penetration Test and Split-Barrel Sampling of Soils." Available from American Society for Testing and Materials, 1916 Race Street, Philadelphia, PA 19103.
24. American Society for Testing and Materials Standard Methods of Test D 2435, "One-Dimensional Consolidation Properties of Soils." Available from American Society for Testing and Materials, 1916 Race Street, Philadelphia, PA 19103.
25. American Society for Testing and Materials Standard Methods of Test D 4546, "One-Dimensional Swell or Settlement Potential of Cohesive Soils." Available from American Society for Testing and Materials, 1916 Race Street, Philadelphia, PA 19103.
26. Canadian Geotechnical Society, 1985. "Canadian Foundation Engineering Manual," 2nd Edition. Available from Canadian Geotechnical Society, BiTech Publishers Ltd., 801 - 1030 W. Georgia Street, Vancouver, B. C. V6E 2Y3.

APPENDIX B  
BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Alpan, I. 1964. "Estimating the Settlements of Foundations on Sands," Civil Engineering and Public Works Review, Vol 59, pp 1415-1418. Available from Morgan-Grampian Ltd., 30 Calderwood Street, Woolwich, London, SE18 6QH, England.
2. Baladi, G. 1968. "Distribution of Stresses and Displacements Within and Under Long, Elastic and Viscoelastic Embankments," Available from Purdue University, West LaFayette, IN 47907
3. Brown, P. T. 1969. "Numerical Analysis of Uniformly Loaded Circular Rafts on Deep Elastic Foundations," Geotechnique, Vol 19, pp 399-404, The Institution of Civil Engineers. Available from Thomas Telford Ltd., 1-7 Great George Street, Westminster, London, SW1P 3AA, England.
4. Burland, J. B. and Burbidge, M. C. 1985. "Settlement of Foundations on Sand and Gravel," Proceedings, Institution of Civil Engineers, Part 1, Vol 78, pp 1325-1381. Available from Thomas Telford Ltd., 1-7 Great George Street, Westminster, London, SW1P 3AA, England.
5. Burmister, D. M. 1954. "Influence Diagram of Stresses and Displacements in a Two-Layer Soil System With a Rigid Base at a Depth H," Contract No. DA-49-129-ENG-171 with US Army Corps of Engineers, Columbia University, New York, NY. Available from National Technical Information Service, 5285 Port Royal Road, Springfield, VA 22161.
6. Burmister, D. M. 1963. "Physical, Stress-strain, and Strength Responses of Granular Soils," Field Testing of Soils, ASTM Special Technical Publication No. 322, pp 67-97, Available from American Society for Testing and Materials, 1916 Race Street, Philadelphia, PA 19103.
7. Burmister, D. M. 1965. "Influence Diagrams for Stresses and Displacements in a Two-Layer Pavement System For Airfields," Department of the Navy, Washington, DC. Available from Department of the Navy, Washington, DC 20350.
8. Cargill, K. W. 1985. "Mathematical Model of the Consolidation/Desiccation Processes in Dredged Material," Technical Report D-85-4. Available from Research Library, US Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS 39180.
9. Christian, J. T. and Carrier III, W. D. 1978. "Janbu, Bjerrum and Kjaernsli's Chart Reinterpreted," Canadian Geotechnical Journal. Available from National Research Council of Canada, Research Journals, Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0R6, Canada.
10. Committee on Placement and Improvement of Soils. 1978. "Soil Improvement-History, Capabilities, and Outlook," and 1987, "Soil Improvement - A Ten Year Update." Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.

11. Costet, J. and Sanglerat, G. 1975. "Cours Pratique de Mechanique des Sols," Plasticite et Calcul des Tassements, Vol 1, 2nd Edition, p 117. Available from Dunod, 24-26 Boulevard de L'hopital 75006, Paris, France.
12. D'Appolonia, D. J., D'Appolonia, E. D., and Brissette, R. F. 1970. "Closure: Settlement of Spread Footings on Sand," Journal of the Soil Mechanics and Foundations Division, Vol 96, pp 754-762. Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.
13. D'Orazio, T. B. and Duncan, J. M. 1987. "Differential Settlement in Steel Tanks," Journal of the Geotechnical Engineering Division, Vol 113, pp 967-983. Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.
14. Duncan, J. M. and Chang, C. Y. 1970. "Nonlinear Analysis of Stress and Strain in Soils," Journal of the Soil Mechanics and Foundations Division, Vol 96, pp 1629-1653. Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.
15. Duncan, J. M., D'Orazio, T. B., Chang, C.-S., and Wong, K. S. 1981. "CON2D: A Finite Element Computer Program for Analysis of Consolidation," Geotechnical Engineering Report No. UCB/GT/81-01, University of California, Berkeley. Available from University of California, Berkeley 94720.
16. Fedaa, J. 1966. "Structural Stability of Subsident Loess Soil From Prahadejuice," Engineering Geology, Vol 1, pp 201-219. Available from Elsevier Science Publishers B. V., Box 211, 1000 AE, Amsterdam, The Netherlands.
17. Feld, J. 1965. "Tolerance of Structures to Settlement," Journal of the Soil Mechanics and Foundations Division, Vol 91, pp 63-77. Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.
18. Gibbs, H. J. and Bara, J. P. 1962. "Predicting Surface Subsidence From Basic Soil Tests," Field Testing of Soils, Special Technical Publication No. 322, pp 231-247. Available from American Society for Testing and Materials, 1916 Race Street, Philadelphia, PA 19103.
19. Gibson, R. E. 1967. "Some Results Concerning Displacements and Stresses in a Nonhomogeneous Elastic Half-Space," Geotechnique, Vol 17, pp 58-67. Available from Thomas Telford Ltd., 1-7 Great George Street, Westminster, London SW1P 3AA, England.
20. Gogoll, F. H. 1970. "Foundations in Swelling Clay Beneath a Granular Blanket," Proceedings Symposium on Soils and Earth Structures in Arid Climates, Adelaide, Australia, pp 42-48. Available from Institution of Engineers, Miadna Pty. Ltd., P.O. Box 588, Crons Nest, N5W 2065, Australia.
21. Harr, M. E. 1966. Foundations of Theoretical Soil Mechanics, pp 98-99. Available from McGraw-Hill, 1221 Avenues of the Americas, New York, NY 10020.

22. Houston, S. L., Houston, W. N., and Spadola, D. J. 1988. "Prediction of Field Collapse of Soils Due to Wetting," Journal of Geotechnical Engineering, Vol 114, pp 40-58. Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.
23. Hughes, J. M. O. 1982. "Interpretation of Pressuremeter Tests for the Determination of Elastic Shear Modulus," Proceedings of Engineering Foundation Conference on Updating Subsurface Sampling of Soils and Rocks and Their In-Situ Testing, pp 279-289, Santa Barbara, CA. Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.
24. Hyde, A. F. and Brown, S. F. 1976. "The Plastic Deformation of a Silty Clay Under Creep and Repeated Loading," Geotechnique, Vol 26, pp 173-184, The Institution of Civil Engineers. Available from Thomas Telford Ltd., 1-7 Great George Street, Westminster, London, SW1P 3AA, England.
25. Janbu, N. and Senneset, K. 1981. "Settlement Due to Drained, Cyclic Loads," Proceedings Tenth International Conference on Soil Mechanics and Foundation Engineering, Vol 1, pp 165-170, Stockholm, Sweden. Available from A. A. Balkema, P.O. Box 1675, Rotterdam, The Netherlands.
26. Jennings, J. E. and Knight, K. 1975. "A Guide to Construction on or With Materials Exhibiting Additional Settlement Due to 'Collapse' of Grain Structure," Proceedings Sixth Regional Conference for Africa on Soil Mechanics and Foundation Engineering, pp 99-105, Durban. Available from A. A. Balkema, P.O. Box 1675, Rotterdam, The Netherlands.
27. Jeyapalan, J. and Boehm, R. 1986. "Procedures for Predicting Settlement in Sands," Settlement of Shallow Foundations on Cohesionless Soils: Design and Performance, Geotechnical Special Publication No. 5, pp 1-22. Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.
28. Johnson, L. D. 1989. "Design and Construction of Mat Foundations," Miscellaneous Paper GL-89-27. Available from Research Library, US Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS 39180.
29. Johnson, L. D. 1989. "Performance of a Large Ribbed Mat on Cohesive Soil," Foundation Engineering: Current Principles and Practices, Vol 1, F. H. Kulhawy, ed. Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.
30. Johnson, L. D. and Snethen, D. R. 1979. "Prediction of Potential Heave of Swelling Soils," Geotechnical Testing Journal, Vol 1, pp 117-124. Available from American Society for Testing and Materials, 1916 Race Street, Philadelphia, PA 19103.
31. Kay, J. N. and Cavagnaro, R. L. 1983. "Settlement of Raft Foundations," Journal of the Geotechnical Engineering Division, Vol 109, pp 1367-1382. Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.

32. Komornik, A. and David, D. 1969. "Prediction of Swelling Pressure of Clays," Journal of the Soil Mechanics and Foundations Division, Vol 95, pp 209-225. Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.
33. Krinitzsky, E. L. and Chang, F. K. 1987. "Parameters for Specifying Intensity-Related Earthquake Ground Motion," Report 25 of the series "State-of-the-art for Assessing Earthquake Hazards in the United States," Miscellaneous Paper S-73-1. Available from Research Library, US Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS 39180.
34. Krinitzsky, E. L. and Chang, F. K. 1987. "Parameters for Specifying Magnitude-Related Earthquake Ground Motions," Report 26 of the series "State-of-the-art for Assessing Earthquake Hazards in the United States," Miscellaneous Paper S-73-1. Available from Research Library, US Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS 39180.
35. Lambe, T. W. and Whitman, R. V. 1969. Soil Mechanics, p 202, 216. Available from John Wiley and Sons Ltd., 605 3rd Ave., New York, NY 10016.
36. Leonards, G. A. 1976. "Estimating Consolidation Settlements of Shallow Foundations on Overconsolidated Clay," Special Report 163. Available from Transportation Research Board, National Research Council, Washington, DC 20418.
37. Leonards, G. A. and Frost, J. D. 1988. "Settlement of Shallow Foundations on Granular Soils," Journal of Geotechnical Engineering, Vol 114, pp 791-809. Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.
38. Lowe, J., Jonas, E., and Obrician, V. 1969. "Controlled Gradient Consolidation Test," Journal of the Soil Mechanics and Foundations Division, Vol 95, pp 77-97. Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.
39. Lutenegger, A. J. 1988. "Current Status of the Marchetti Dilatometer Test," Penetration Testing 1988 ISOPT-1, Vol 1, pp 137-155, Orlando, FL, ed. J. DeRuiter. Available from A. A. Balkema, P.O. Box 1675, Rotterdam, The Netherlands.
40. Lysmer, J. and Duncan, J. M. 1969. "Stress and Deflections in Foundations and Pavements," Berkeley, CA. Available from Department of Civil Engineering, Institute of Transportation and Traffic Engineering, University of California, Berkeley, CA 94720.
41. Marchetti, S. 1985. "On the Field Determination of  $K_0$  in Sands," Discussion Session No. 2A, XI International Conference on Soil Mechanics and Foundation Engineering, San Francisco, CA. Available from A. A. Balkema, P.O. Box 1675, Rotterdam, The Netherlands.
42. Marcuson, W. F. III. 1977. "Determination of In Situ Density of Sands," Liquefaction Potential of Dams and Foundations, Research Report S-76-2, No. 4. Available from Research Library, US Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS 39180.

43. Mesri, G. and Godlewski, P. 1977. "Time- and Stress-Compressibility Interrelationships," Journal of the Geotechnical Engineering Division, Vol 103, pp 417-430. Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.
44. Mitchell, J. K. and Gardner, W. S. 1975. "In Situ Measurement of Volume Change Characteristics," SOA Report, Proceedings American Society of Civil Engineers Special Conference on the In Situ Measurement of Soil Properties, Raleigh, NC. Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.
45. Mosher, R. L. and Radhakrishnan, N. 1980. "Computer Programs for Settlement Analysis," Instruction Report K-80-5. Available from Research Library, US Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS 39180.
46. Nayak, N. V. and Christensen, R. W. 1971. "Swelling Characteristics of Compacted Expansive Soil," Clays and Clay Minerals, Vol 19, pp 251-261. Available from Allen Press, Inc., 1041 New Hampshire Street, Box 368, Lawrence, KS 66044.
47. Newland, P. L. and Allely, B. H. 1960. "A Study of the Consolidation Characteristics of a Clay," Geotechnique, Vol 10, pp 62-74, The Institution of Civil Engineers. Available from Thomas Telford Ltd., 1-7 Great George Street, Westminster, London, SW1P 3AA, England.
48. Northey, R. D. 1969. "Collapsing Soils: State of the Art," Seventh International Conference of Soil Mechanics and Foundation Engineering, Vol 5, pp 445. Available from Sociedad Mexicana de Mecanica de Suelos, A. C., Mexico City, Mexico.
49. O'Neill, M. W. and Ghazzaly, O. I. 1977. "Swell Potential Related to Building Performance," Journal of Geotechnical Engineering Division, Vol 103, pp 1363-1379. Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.
50. Peck, R. B. and Bazarra, A. 1969. "Discussion of Settlement of Spread Footings on Sand," by D'Appolonia, et. al, Journal of the Soil Mechanics and Foundations Division, Vol 95, pp 905-909. Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.
51. Peck, R. B., Hanson, W. F., and Thornburn, T. H. 1974. Foundation Engineering, 2nd ed., pp 307-314. Available from John Wiley and Sons, 605 3rd Ave., New York, NY 10016.
52. Perloff, W. H. 1975. "Pressure Distribution and Settlement," Chapter 4, "Foundation Engineering Handbook, pp 148-196, H. F. Winterkorn and H. Y. Fang, ed. Available from Van Nostrand Reinhold Company, New York, NY 10020.
53. Polshin, D. E. and Tokar, R. A. 1957. "Maximum Allowable Non-uniform Settlement of Structures," Proceedings Fourth International Conference on Soil Mechanics and Foundation Engineering, Vol 1, pp 402-405. Available from Butterworths Publications, Ltd., 88 Kingsway, London, WC2, England.

54. Schmertmann, J. H. 1955. "The Undisturbed Consolidation Behavior of Clay," Transactions, Vol 120, pp 1201-1233. Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.
55. Schmertmann, J. H. 1970. "Static Cone to Compute Static Settlement Over Sand," Journal of the Soil Mechanics and Foundations Division, Vol 96, pp 1011-1043. Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.
56. Schmertmann, J. H. 1978. Guidelines for Cone Penetration Test Performance and Design, Report No. FHWA-TS-78-209. Available from US Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration, Office of Research and Development, Washington, DC 20590.
57. Schmertmann, J. H. 1983. "Revised Procedure for Calculating  $K_0$  and OCR From DMT's With I.D. > 1.2 and Which Incorporate the Penetration Force Measurement to Permit Calculating the Plane Strain Friction Angle," DMT Digest No. 1. Available from GPE Inc., Gainesville, FL 32611.
58. Schmertmann, J. H. 1986. "Dilatometer to Compute Foundation Settlement," Use of Insitu Tests in Geotechnical Engineering, Geotechnical Special Publication No. 6, pp 303-321. Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, NY 10017.
59. Schmertmann, J. H., Hartman, J. P., and Brown, P. R. 1978. "Improved Strain Influence Factor Diagrams," Journal of the Geotechnical Engineering Division, Vol 104, pp 1131-1135, Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.
60. Schultze, E. and Sherif, G. 1973. "Prediction of Settlements From Evaluated Settlement Observations for Sand," Proceedings Eighth International Conference on Soil Mechanics and Foundation Engineering, Vol 1, pp 225-230. Available from USSR National Society for Soil Mechanics and Foundation Engineers, Gosstray USSR, Marx Prospect 12, Moscow K-9.
61. Templeton, A. E. 1984. "User's Guide: Computer Program for Determining Induced Stresses and Consolidation Settlements," Instruction Report K-84-7. Available from Research Library, US Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS 39180.
62. Tokimatsu, K. and Seed, H. B. 1984. "Simplified Procedures for the Evaluation of Settlements in Sands Due to Earthquake Shaking," Report No. UCB/EERC-84/16. Available from Earthquake Engineering Research Center, University of California, Berkeley, CA 94720.
63. Tokimatsu, K. and Seed, H. B. 1987. "Evaluation of Settlements in Sands Due to Earthquake Shaking," Journal of Geotechnical Engineering, Vol 113, pp 861-878. Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.
64. Vijayvergiya, V. N. and Ghazzaly, O. I. 1973, "Prediction of Swelling Potential for Natural Clays," Proceedings of the Third International Conference on Expansive Clay Soils, Vol 1. Available from Jerusalem Academic Press, Jerusalem.



65. Wahl, H. E. 1981. "Tolerable Settlement of Buildings," Journal of the Geotechnical Engineering Division, Vol 107, pp 1489-1504. Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.
66. Winterkorn, H. F. and Fang, Hsai-Yang 1975. "Soil Technology and Engineering Properties of Soils," Chapter 2, Foundation Engineering Handbook, H. F. Winterkorn and H-Y Fang, ed., pp 112-117. Available from Van Nostrand Reinhold Company, 135 West 50th Street, New York, NY 10020.
67. Wissa, A. E. Z., Christian, J. T., and Davis, E. H. 1971. "Consolidation at Constant Rate of Strain," Journal of the Soil Mechanics and Foundations Division, Vol 97, pp 1393-1414. Available from American Society of Civil Engineers, 345 East 47th Street, New York, NY 10017.

APPENDIX C  
STRESS DISTRIBUTION IN SOIL

C-1. General. Displacements in soil occur from stresses applied by loading forces. The distribution of stress in soil should be known for realistic estimates of displacements caused by applied loads on the supporting soil.

a. Effect of Foundation Stiffness. The distribution of stress in soil depends on the contact pressure between the foundation and soil, which is a function of the relative stiffness  $K_R$  between the soil and the foundation (item 3)

$$K_R = \frac{E_f(1 - \nu_s^2)}{E_s} \left[ \frac{D_f}{R} \right]^3 \quad (C-1)$$

where

$E_f$  = Young's modulus of foundation, tsf  
 $\nu_s$  = Poisson's ratio of foundation soil  
 $E_s$  = Young's modulus of foundation soil, tsf  
 $D_f$  = thickness of foundation, ft  
 $R$  = radius of foundation, ft

A uniformly loaded flexible foundation where stiffness  $K_R < 0.1$  causes a uniform contact pressure; whereas, a uniformly loaded rigid foundation where  $K_R > 10$  causes a highly nonuniform contact pressure distribution, Figure 1-3.

(1) Embankments. Earth embankments are flexible and normally in full contact with the supporting soil.

(2) Foundations for structures. Foundations such as large mats and footings with sufficient stiffness ( $K_R > 0.1$ ) may not always be in complete contact with the soil.

b. Limiting Contact Pressures. Contact pressures are limited to maximum pressures defined as the bearing capacity. Refer to EM 1110-2-1903, Bearing Capacity, for estimation of the soil bearing capacity.

c. Other Factors Influencing Contact Pressure. The distribution of contact pressures is also influenced by the magnitude of loading, depth of applied loads, size, shape, and method of load application such as static or dynamic applied loads.

C-2. Evaluation of Stress Distributions in Soil. The following methods may be used to estimate the stress distribution for an applied load  $Q$  at a point and a uniform contact pressure  $q$  applied to an area. Practical calculations of settlement are based on these estimates of stress distribution.

a. Approximate 2:1 Distribution. An approximate stress distribution assumes that the total applied load on the surface of the soil is distributed over an area of the same shape as the loaded area on the surface, but with dimensions that increase by an amount equal to the depth below the surface, Figure C-1. At a depth  $z$  in feet below the ground surface the total load  $Q$  in tons applied at the ground surface by a structure is assumed to be uniform-

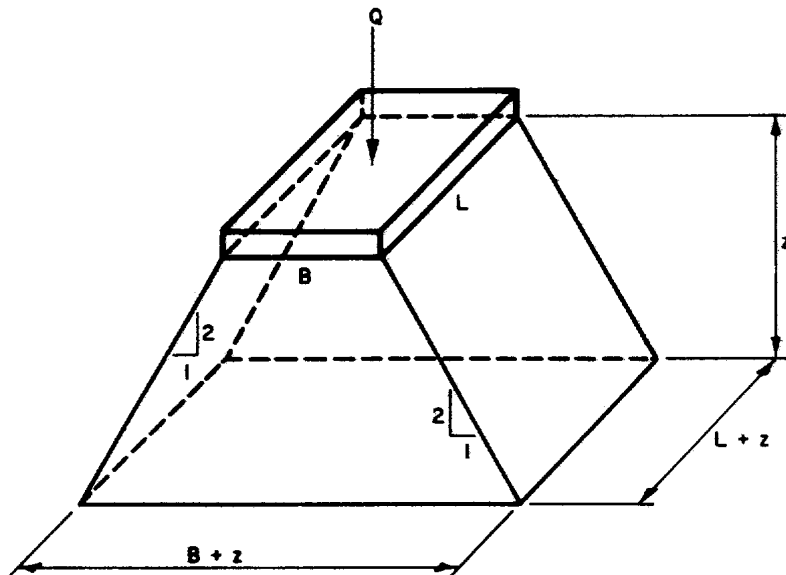


Figure C-1. Approximate stress distribution by the 2:1 method

ly distributed over an area  $(B + z)$  by  $(L + z)$ . The increase in vertical pressure  $\Delta\sigma_z$  in units of tsf at depth  $z$  for an applied load  $Q$  is given by

$$\Delta\sigma_z = \frac{Q}{(B + z) \cdot (L + z)} \quad (C-2)$$

where  $B$  and  $L$  are the width and length of the foundation in feet, respectively.  $\Delta\sigma_z$  may be the pressure  $\sigma_{st}$  caused by construction of the structure. Vertical stresses calculated by Equation C-2 agree reasonably well with the Boussinesq method discussed below for depths between  $B$  and  $4B$  below the foundation.

b. Boussinesq. The Boussinesq solution is based on the assumption of a weightless half space free of initial stress and deformation. The modulus of elasticity is assumed constant and the principle of linear superposition is assumed valid.

(1) Equations for strip and area loads. The Boussinesq solutions for increase in vertical stress  $\Delta\sigma_z$  shown in Table C-1 for strip and area loads apply to elastic and nonplastic materials where deformations are continuous and unloading/reloading do not occur. Refer to EM 1110-2-1903, Bearing Capacity, and item 40 for equations of stress distributions beneath other foundation shapes.

(2) Graphical solutions. The stress distribution beneath a corner of a rectangular uniformly loaded area may be evaluated from

$$\Delta\sigma_z = I_\sigma \cdot q \quad (C-3)$$

where  $I_\sigma$  is the influence factor from Figure C-2 and  $q$  is the bearing pressure. Refer to TM 5-818-1 for further information on  $I_\sigma$ .

Table C-1

Boussinesq Solutions for Increase in Vertical  
Stress  $\Delta\sigma_z$  Beneath a Foundation

a. Uniform Loads

| TYPE OF LOAD<br>NORMAL TO SURFACE                | EQUATION FOR $\Delta\sigma_z$  | COORDINATE SYSTEM |
|--|--|-------------------|
| POINT  | $\frac{3Q}{2\pi R^2} \cos^3 \psi$ <p>Q = NORMAL LOAD, TONS<br/> <math>r^2 = x^2 + y^2</math><br/> <math>R^2 = r^2 + z^2</math></p>   |                   |
| LINE   | $\frac{2\bar{q}z^3}{\pi R^4}$ <p><math>\bar{q}</math> = NORMAL LOAD, TONS/FT<br/> <math>R^2 = x^2 + z^2</math></p>   |                   |
| STRIP  | $\frac{q}{\pi} (\alpha + \sin \alpha - \cos \alpha) (\alpha + 2\beta)$ <p>q = CONTACT PRESSURE, TSF<br/> <math>\alpha = \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{x+b}{z} \right) - \beta</math>, RADIANS<br/> <math>\beta = \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{x-b}{z} \right)</math>, RADIANS</p> |                   |
| AREA<br>(POINT UNDER<br>CENTER CIRCULAR<br>AREA) | $qr^2 \left( \frac{S^2 + 2z^2}{2S^4} \right)$ <p><math>S^2 = r^2 + z^2</math><br/> q = CONTACT PRESSURE, TSF</p>   |                   |

Table C-1. Continued

| TYPE OF LOAD<br>NORMAL TO SURFACE           | EQUATION FOR $\Delta\sigma_z$  | COORDINATE SYSTEM |
|---|--|-------------------|
| (POINT UNDER<br>CORNER RECTANGULAR<br>AREA) | $\frac{q}{2\pi} \left[ \text{TAN}^{-1} \frac{ab}{zC} + \frac{abz}{C} \left( \frac{1}{A^2} + \frac{1}{B^2} \right) \right]$ $A^2 = a^2 + z^2$ $B^2 = b^2 + z^2$ $C = (a^2 + b^2 + z^2)^{1/2}$ <p><math>q</math> = CONTACT PRESSURE, TSF</p> |                   |

b. Nonuniform Strip Loads

| TYPE OF LOAD<br>NORMAL TO SURFACE | EQUATION FOR $\Delta\sigma_z$   | COORDINATE SYSTEM |
|-----------------------------------|---|-------------------|
| UNIFORM ON HALF<br>INFINITE SPACE | $\frac{q}{\pi} \left( \beta + \frac{xz}{R^2} \right)$ <p><math>q</math> = CONTACT PRESSURE, TSF<br/><math>\beta</math> = ANGLE IN RADIANS</p> |                   |
| LINEAR INCREASE                   | $\frac{q_0}{\pi a} (x\beta + z)$  |                   |

Table C-1. Concluded

| TYPE OF LOAD<br>NORMAL TO SURFACE | EQUATION FOR $\Delta\sigma_z$  | COORDINATE SYSTEM |
|-----------------------------------|--|-------------------|
| TRIANGULAR                        | $\frac{q}{\pi} \left[ \frac{x}{a} \alpha + \frac{(a+b-x)}{b} \beta \right]$                    |                   |
| CONTRATRAPEZOIDAL                 | $\frac{q}{\pi a} \left[ a(\beta + \beta') - b(\alpha + \alpha') + x(\alpha - \alpha') \right]$ |                   |
| TRAPEZOIDAL                       | $\frac{q}{\pi a} [a(\alpha + \beta + \alpha') + b(\alpha + \alpha') + x(\alpha - \alpha')]$    |                   |

(a) The increase in stress beneath the center of a rectangular loaded area is given through the assumption of superposition of stresses as 4 times that given by Equation C-3.

(b) The increase in stress beneath the center of an edge is twice that given by Equation C-3.

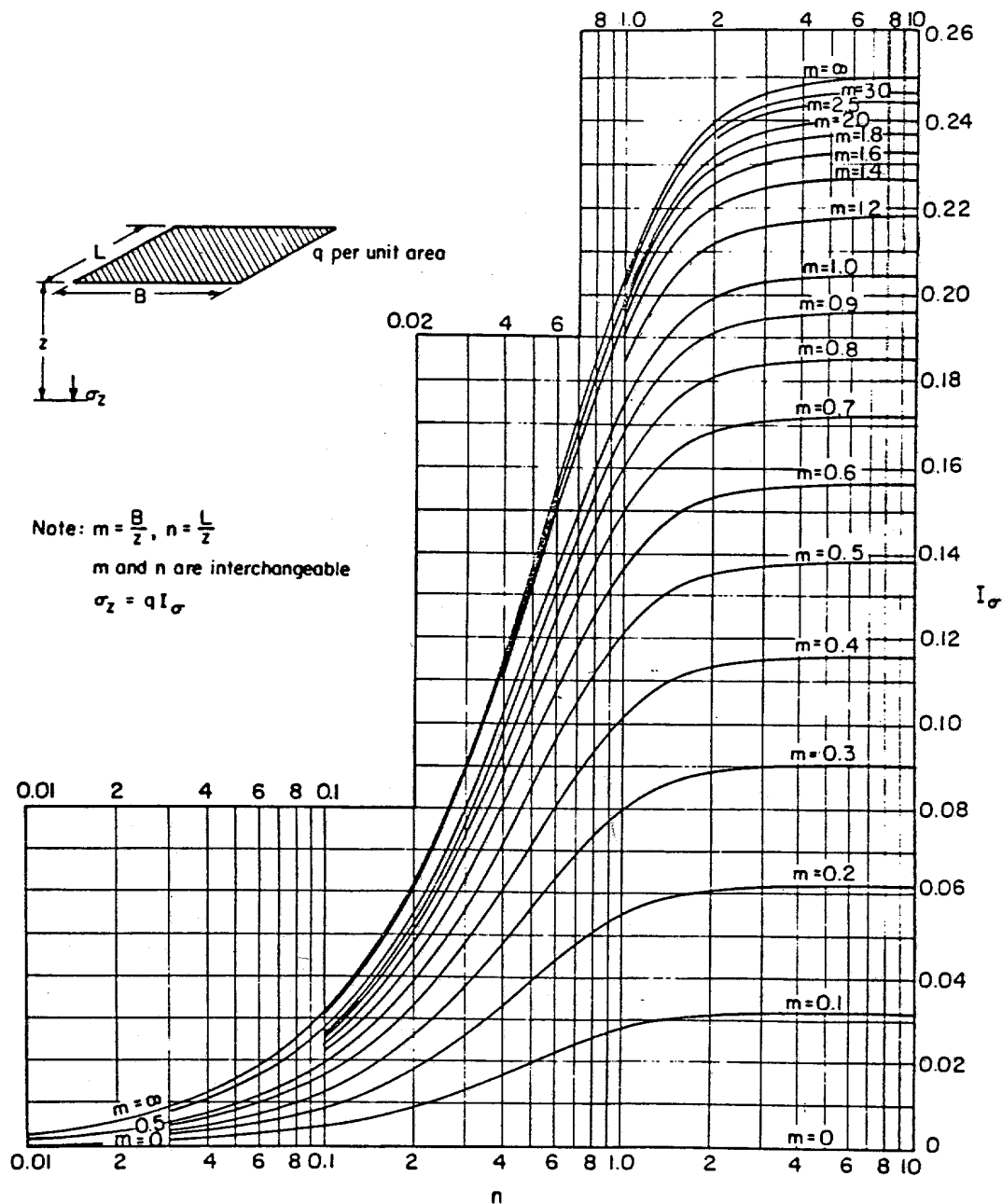


Figure C-2. Influence factor  $I_\sigma$  for the increase in vertical stress beneath a corner of a uniformly loaded rectangular area for the Boussinesq stress distribution (from TM 5-818-1)

(c) Refer to EM 1110-2-1903, Bearing Capacity, and TM 5-818-1, Procedures for Foundation Design of Buildings and Other Structures (Except Hydraulic Structures), for further details on estimation of stress distributions.

c. Westergaard. Soils that are stratified with strong layers may reinforce soft layers so that the resulting stress intensity at deeper depths is less than that formulated for isotropic soil after the Boussinesq approach. The Westergaard solution assumes that stratified soil performs like an elastic medium reinforced by rigid, thin sheets.

(1) Rectangular area. The increase in vertical stress beneath a corner of a rectangular uniformly loaded area may be evaluated from Equation C-3 where the influence factor  $I_c$  is found from Figure C-3. Refer to Design Manual NAVFAC 7.1 for further information.

(2) Other areas. Item 40 provides Westergaard solutions of vertical stress beneath uniformly loaded foundations using influence charts.

C-3. Limitations of Theoretical Solutions. Boundary conditions may differ substantially from idealized conditions to invalidate solutions by elasticity theory.

a. Initial Stress. Elastic solutions such as the Boussinesq solution assumes a weightless material not subject to initial stress. Initial stress always exists in situ because of overburden weight of overlying soil, past stress history, and environmental effects such as desiccation. These initial stresses through Poisson's ratio, nonlinear elastic modulus and soil anisotropy significantly influence in situ stress and strain that occur through additional applied loads.

b. Error in Stress Distribution. Actual stresses beneath the center of shallow footings may exceed Boussinesq values by 15 to 30 percent in clays and 20 to 30 percent in sands (item 5).

c. Critical Depth. The critical depth  $z_c$  is the depth at which the increase in stresses  $\Delta\sigma_z$  from foundation loads decrease to about 10 (cohesionless soil) to 20 (cohesive soil) percent of the effective vertical overburden pressure  $\sigma'_o$  (item 5). Errors in settlement contributed by nonlinear, heterogeneous soil below the critical depth are not significant.



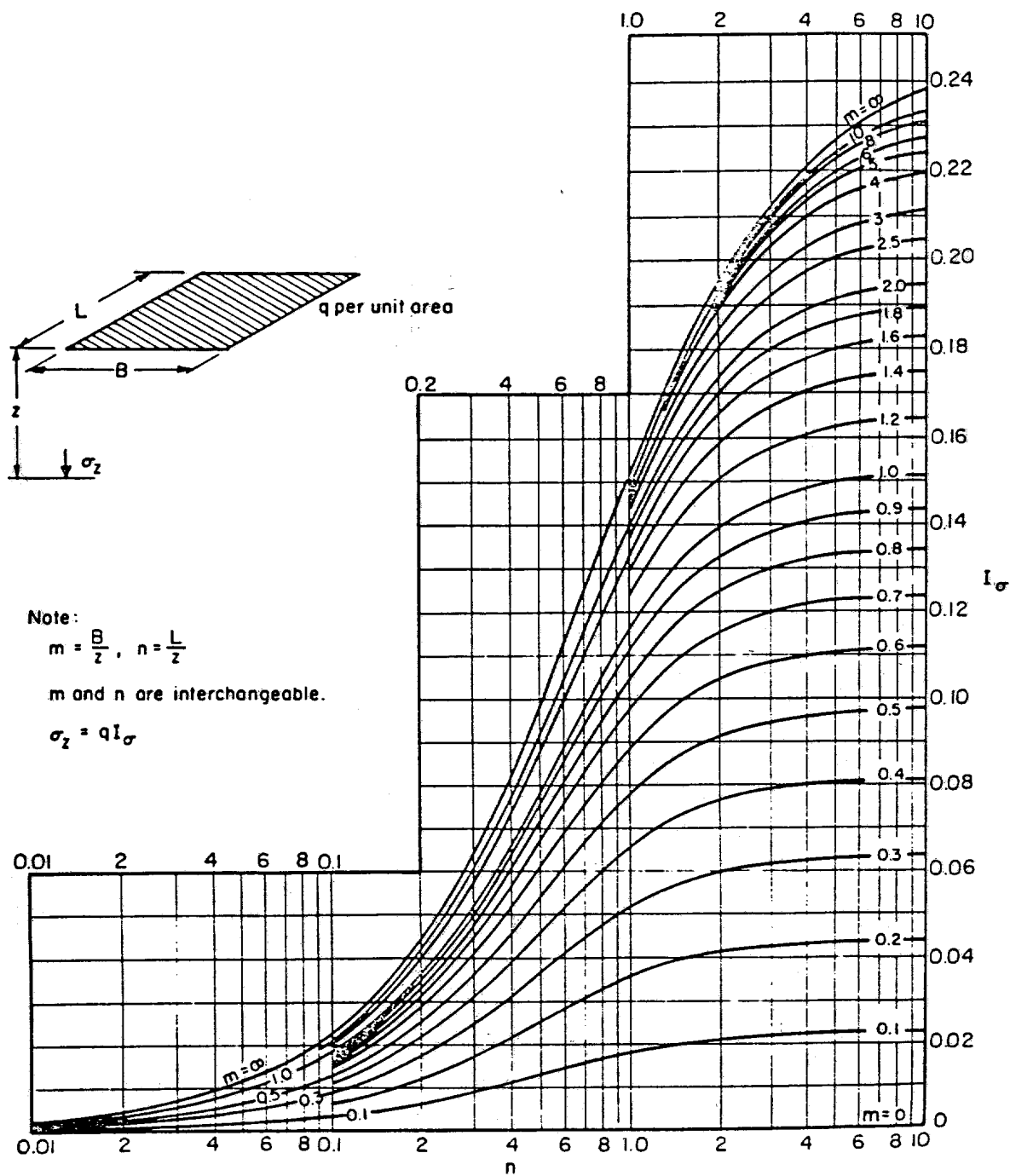


Figure C-3. Influence Factor  $I_\sigma$  for the increase in vertical stress beneath a corner of a uniformly loaded rectangular area for the Westergaard stress distribution (from NAVFAC DM 7.1)

APPENDIX D  
ELASTIC PARAMETERS

D-1. General. The magnitudes of soil elastic distortion or immediate settlement for practical applications are evaluated from the elastic soil parameters Young's modulus  $E_s$ , shear modulus  $G_s$  and Poisson's ratio  $\nu_s$ . For most practical applications the foundation soil is heterogeneous or multilayered in which the elastic parameters can vary significantly from layer to layer.

D-2. Elastic Young's Modulus. Young's elastic modulus is commonly used for estimation of settlement from static loads. Suitable values of the elastic modulus  $E_s$  as a function of depth may be estimated from empirical correlations, results of laboratory tests on undisturbed specimens and results of field tests.

a. Definition. Materials that are truly elastic obey Hooke's law in which each equal increment of applied uniaxial stress  $\sigma_z$  causes a proportionate increase in strain  $\epsilon_z$

$$\epsilon_z = \frac{1}{E} \cdot \sigma_z \quad (D-1)$$

where  $E$  is Young's modulus of elasticity, Table D-1. Figure D-1 illustrates the stress path for the uniaxial (UT) and other test methods. An elastic material regains its initial dimensions following removal of the applied stress.

(1) Application to soil. Hooke's law, which is applicable to homogeneous and isotropic materials, was originally developed from the observed elastic behavior of metal bars in tension. Soil is sometimes assumed to behave linearly elastic under relatively small loads. A partially elastic material obeys Hooke's law during loading, but this material will not gain its initial dimensions following removal of the applied stress. These materials are nonlinear and include most soils, especially foundation soil supporting heavy structures that apply their weight only once.

(2) Assumption of Young's elastic modulus. Soils tested in a conventional triaxial compression (CTCT) device under constant lateral stress will yield a tangent elastic modulus  $E_t$  equivalent with Young's modulus. The soil modulus  $E_s$  is assumed approximately equal to Young's modulus in practical applications of the theory of elasticity for computation of settlement.

(3) Relationship with other elastic parameters. Table D-2 relates the elastic modulus  $E$  with the shear modulus  $G$ , bulk modulus  $K$  and constrained modulus  $E_d$ . These parameters are defined in Table D-1.

b. Empirical Correlations. The elastic undrained modulus  $E_s$  for clay may be estimated from the undrained shear strength  $C_u$  by

$$E_s = K_c C_u \quad (D-2)$$

where

$E_s$  = Young's soil modulus, tsf  
 $K_c$  = correlation factor, Figure D-2  
 $C_u$  = undrained shear strength, tsf

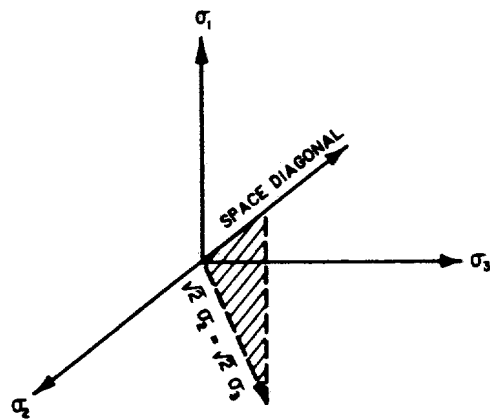
Table D-1

Laboratory Tests for Evaluation of Elastic Parameters  
(Refer to Figure D-1)

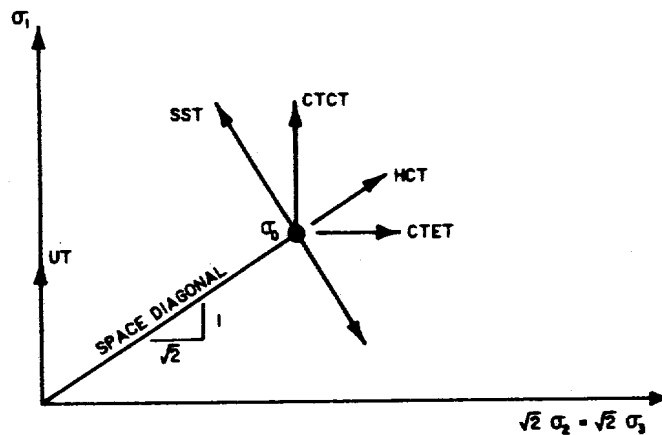
| TYPE OF TEST                             | DESCRIPTION  | DIAGRAM |
|--|--|---------|
| UNIAXIAL STRESS (UT)                     | LOADING $\sigma_1$ ON A SINGLE VERTICAL AXIS. $\sigma_2 = \sigma_3 = 0$ . YOUNG'S MODULUS $E$ IS DETERMINED.   |         |
| HYDROSTATIC COMPRESSION (HCT)            | LOADING OCCURS ALONG THE SPACE DIAGONAL IN EQUAL INCREMENTS $\sigma_0 = \sigma_1 = \sigma_2 = \sigma_3$ AND $\epsilon_{vol} = \epsilon_1 + \epsilon_2 + \epsilon_3$ . BULK MODULUS $K$ IS DETERMINED.  |         |
| SIMPLE SHEAR (SST)                       | AFTER HYDROSTATIC LOADING TO $\sigma_0 = \sigma_{oct}$ ( $\sigma_1 + \sigma_2 + \sigma_3$ )/3 KEPT CONSTANT, BUT TWO OF THREE STRESS AXES VARIED; i.e., $\Delta\sigma_1 = -\Delta\sigma_2$ , $\Delta\sigma_3 = 0$ . SHEAR MODULUS $G$ IS DETERMINED. |         |
| CONFINED COMPRESSION (CCT)               | LOADING $\sigma_1$ WHEN $\epsilon_2 = \epsilon_3 = 0$ (CONSOLIDATION TEST) CONSTRAINED. MODULUS $E_d$ IS DETERMINED.   |         |
| CONVENTIONAL TRIAXIAL COMPRESSION (CTCT) | AFTER HYDROSTATIC LOADING TO $\sigma_0$ , $\sigma_1$ INCREASED WHILE $\sigma_2 = \sigma_3$ KEPT CONSTANT AT $\sigma_0$ . TANGENT MODULUS $E_t$ IN COMPRESSION DETERMINED.  |         |

Table D-1. Concluded

| TYPE OF TEST                           | DESCRIPTION   | DIAGRAM |
|--|---|---------|
| CONVENTIONAL TRIAXIAL EXTENSION (CTET) | AFTER HYDROSTATIC LOADING TO $\sigma_0$ , $\sigma_2 = \sigma_3$ INCREASED WHILE $\sigma_1$ KEPT CONSTANT AT $\sigma_0$ . TANGENT MODULUS $E_t$ IN EXTENSION DETERMINED. |         |



a. THE TRIAXIAL PLANE



b. STRESS PATHS

Figure D-1. Examples of stress paths for different tests  
(Refer to Table D-1 for descriptions of tests)

Table D-2

Relationships Between Elastic Parameters

| Parameter                       | Relationship   |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Shear modulus $G$ , tsf         | $\frac{E}{2(1 + \nu)}$<br>$\nu = \text{Poisson's ratio}$<br>$\lambda_L + \frac{2G}{3}$ |
| Bulk Modulus $K$ , tsf          | $\lambda_L = \text{Lames's constant}$<br>$\frac{E(1 - \nu)}{(1 + \nu)(1 - 2\nu)}$      |
| Constrained modulus $E_d$ , tsf |  |

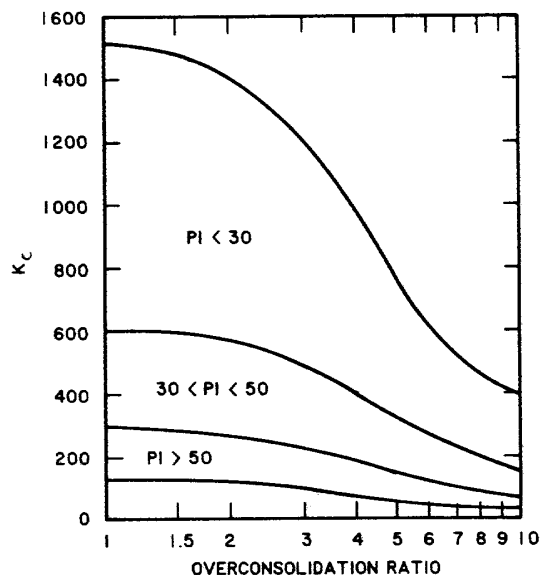


Figure D-2. Chart for estimating constant  $K_c$  to determine the elastic modulus  $E_s = K_c C_u$  from the undrained shear strength (after Figure 3-20, TM 5-818-1)

The values of  $K_c$  as a function of the overconsolidation ratio and plasticity index  $PI$  have been determined from field measurements and are therefore not affected by soil disturbance compared with measurements on undisturbed soil samples. Table D-3 illustrates some typical values for the elastic modulus.

Table D-3

Typical Elastic Moduli

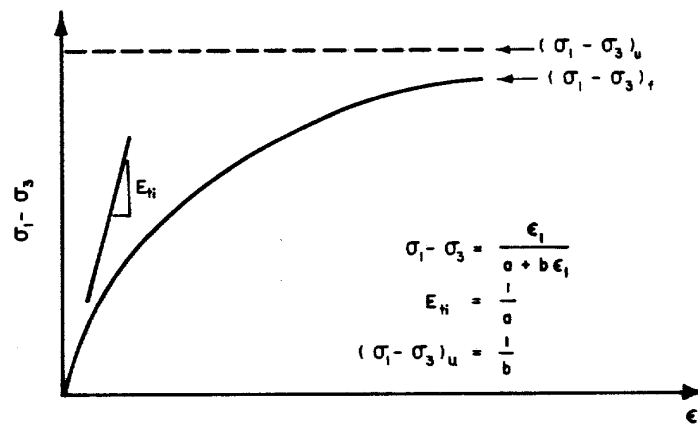
| Soil                   | $E_s$ , tsf |
|------------------------|-------------|
| Clay                   |             |
| Very soft clay         | 5 - 50      |
| Soft clay              | 50 - 200    |
| Medium clay            | 200 - 500   |
| Stiff clay, silty clay | 500 - 1000  |
| Sandy clay             | 250 - 2000  |
| Clay shale             | 1000 - 2000 |
| Sand                   |             |
| Loose sand             | 100 - 250   |
| Dense sand             | 250 - 1000  |
| Dense sand and gravel  | 1000 - 2000 |
| Silty sand             | 250 - 2000  |

c. Laboratory Tests on Cohesive Soil. The elastic modulus is sensitive to soil disturbance which may increase pore water pressure and, therefore, decrease the effective stress in the specimen and reduce the stiffness and strength. Fissures, which may have little influence on field settlement, may reduce the measured modulus compared with the in situ modulus if confining pressures are not applied to the soil specimen.

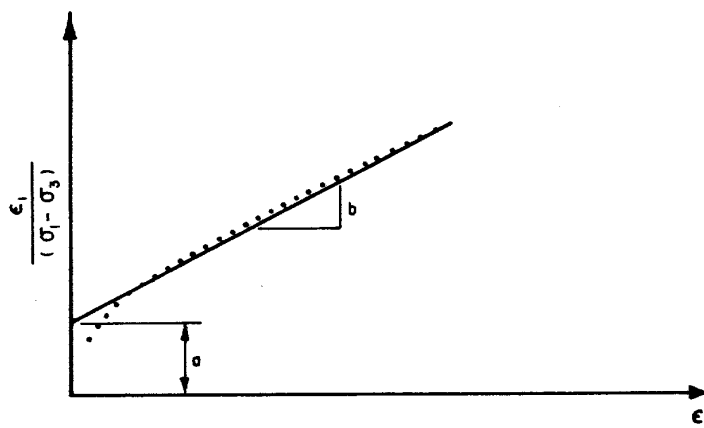
(1) Initial hyperbolic tangent modulus. Triaxial unconsolidated undrained (Q or UU) compression tests may be performed on the best available undisturbed specimens at confining pressures equal to the total vertical overburden pressure  $\sigma_o$  for that specimen when in the field using the Q test procedure described in EM 1110-2-1906, Laboratory Soils Testing. An appropriate measure of  $E_s$  is the initial tangent modulus  $E_{ti} = 1/a$  where  $a$  is the intercept of a plot of strain/deviator stress versus strain, Figure D-3 (item 14).

(2) Reload modulus. A triaxial consolidated undrained (R or CU) compression test may be performed on the best available undisturbed specimens. The specimen is initially fully consolidated to an isotropic confining pressure equal to the vertical overburden pressure  $\sigma_o$  for that specimen in the field. The R test procedure described in EM 1110-2-1906 may be used except as follows: stress is increased to the magnitude estimated for the field loading condition. The axial stress may then be reduced to zero and the cycle repeated until the reload curve shows no further increase in slope. The tangent modulus at 1/2 of the maximum applied stress is determined for each loading cycle and plotted versus the number of cycles, Figure D-4. An appropriate measure of  $E_s$  is the reload tangent modulus that approaches the asymptotic value at large cycles.

d. Field Tests. The elastic modulus may be estimated from empirical and semiempirical relationships based on results of field soil tests. Refer to



a. HYPERBOLIC RELATIONSHIP



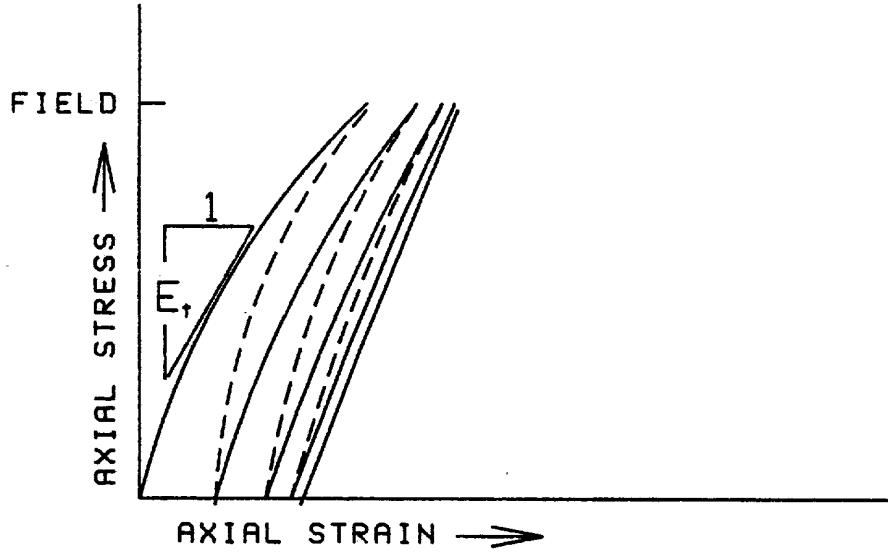
b. EVALUATION OF HYPERBOLIC PARAMETERS a, b

Figure D-3. Hyperbolic simulation of stress-strain relationships

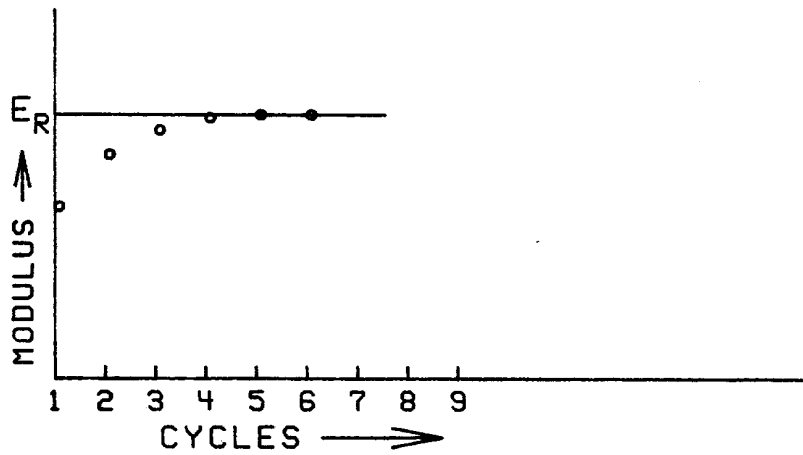
EM 1110-1-1804, Geotechnical Investigations, for more information on in situ tests.

(1) Plate load test. The plate load test performed in accordance with ASTM Standard Test Method D 1194, "Bearing Capacity of Soil for Static Loads on Spread Footings" is used to determine the relationship between settlement and plate pressure  $q_p$ , Figure D-5. The elastic modulus  $E_s$  is found from the slope of the curve  $\Delta\rho/\Delta q_p$

$$E_s = \frac{(1 - \nu_s^2)}{\frac{\Delta\rho}{\Delta q_p}} \cdot B_p \cdot I_w \quad (D-3)$$



a. TANGENT MODULUS AT 1/2 MAXIMUM APPLIED STRESS



b. TANGENT RELOAD MODULUS VERSUS CYCLES

Figure D-4. Elastic modulus from cyclic load tests

where

- $E_s$  = Young's soil modulus, psi
- $\nu_s$  = Poisson's ratio, 0.4
- $\frac{\Delta \rho}{\Delta q_p}$  = slope of settlement versus plate pressure, inches/psi
- $B_p$  = diameter of plate, inches
- $I_w$  = influence factor,  $\pi/4$  for circular plates



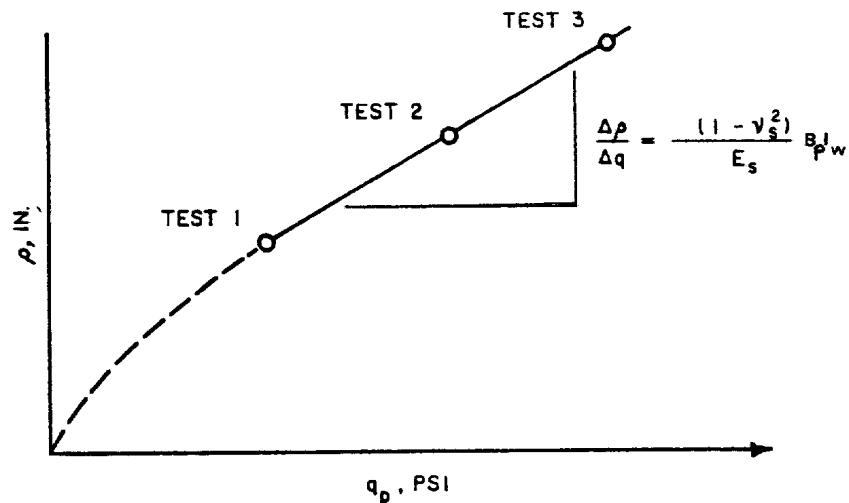


Figure D-5. Graphical solution of soil elastic modulus  $E_s$  from the plate load test.  $I_w = \pi/4$  for circular rigid plate of diameter  $B_p$ .  $\nu_s$  = Poisson's ratio

This elastic modulus is representative of soil within a depth of  $2B_p$  beneath the plate.

(2) Cone penetration test (CPT). The constrained modulus  $E_d$  has been empirically related with the cone tip bearing resistance by

$$E_d = \alpha_c \cdot q_c \quad (D-4)$$

where

- $E_d$  = Constrained modulus, tsf
- $\alpha_c$  = correlation factor depending on soil type and the cone bearing resistance, Table D-4
- $q_c$  = cone tip bearing resistance, tsf

A typical value for sands is  $\alpha_c = 3$ , but can increase substantially for over-consolidated sand. A typical value for clays is  $\alpha_c = 10$  when used with the net cone resistance  $q_c - \sigma_o$  where  $\sigma_o$  is the total overburden pressure. The undrained shear strength  $C_u$  is related to  $q_c$  by

$$C_u = \frac{q_c - \sigma_o}{N_k} \quad (D-5)$$

where

- $C_u$  = undrained shear strength, tsf
- $q_c$  = cone tip resistance, tsf
- $\sigma_o$  = total overburden pressure, tsf
- $N_k$  = cone factor

The cone factor often varies from 10 to 20 and can be greater.

Table D-4

Correlation Factor  $\alpha_c$  (Data from Item 44)

| Soil                         | Resistance $q_c$ , tsf | Water Content, percent | $\alpha_c$  |
|------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|-------------|
| Lean clay (CL)               | <7                     |                        | 3 to 8      |
|                              | 7 to 20                |                        | 2 to 5      |
|                              | >20                    |                        | 1 to 2.5    |
| Silt (ML)                    | <20                    |                        | 3 to 6      |
|                              | >20                    |                        | 1 to 3      |
| Plastic silt<br>clay (CH,MH) | <20                    |                        | 2 to 6      |
| Organic silt                 | <12                    |                        | 2 to 8      |
| Organic clay<br>peat         | <7                     | 50 to 100              | 1.5 to 4    |
|                              |                        | 100 to 200             | 1 to 1.5    |
|                              |                        | >200                   | 0.4 to 1    |
| Sand                         | <50                    |                        | 2 to 4      |
|                              | >100                   |                        | 1.5         |
| Clayey sand                  |                        |                        | $1 + D_r^2$ |
| Silty sand                   |                        |                        | 3 to 6      |
| Chalk                        | 20 to 30               |                        | 1 to 2      |
|                              |                        |                        | 2 to 4      |

\* Note:  $D_r$  = relative density, fraction

(3) Standard penetration test (SPT). The elastic modulus in sand may be estimated directly from the blow count by (item 60)

$$E_s = 9.4N^{0.87}\sqrt{B}\left(1 + 0.4\frac{D}{B}\right) \quad (D-6)$$

where

- $E_s$  = Young's soil modulus, tsf
- $N$  = average blow count per foot in the stratum, number of blows of a 140 pound hammer falling 30 inches to drive a standard sampler (1.42" ID, 2.00" OD) one foot. Sampler is driven 18 inches and blows counted the last 12 inches.
- $B$  = width of footing, ft
- $D$  = depth of embedment of footing, ft

Equation D-6 was developed from information in the literature and original settlement observations without consideration of the energy of the hammer. An alternative method of estimating the elastic modulus for footing foundations on clean sand or sand and gravel is (after item 12)

Preloaded sand:  $E_m = 420 + 10N_{ave}$  (D-7a)

Normally loaded sand or sand and gravel:  $E_m = 194 + 8N_{ave}$  (D-7b)

where

$E_m$  = deformation modulus,  $\frac{E_s}{1 - \nu_s^2}$ , tsf

$N_{ave}$  = average measured blow count in depth  $H = B$  below footing, blows/ft

(4) Pressuremeter test (PMT). The preboring pressuremeter consists of a cylindrical probe of radius  $R_o$  containing an inflatable balloon lowered into a borehole to a given depth. The pressure required to inflate the balloon and probe against the side of the borehole and the volume change of the probe are recorded. The self-boring pressuremeter includes cutting blades at the head of the device with provision to permit drilling fluids to circulate and carry cuttings up to the surface. The self-boring pressuremeter should in theory lead to a less disturbed hole than the preboring pressuremeter. The pressure and volume change measurements are corrected for membrane resistance and volume losses leading to the corrected pressuremeter curve, Figure D-6. The preboring pressuremeter curve indicates a pressuremeter modulus  $E_i$  that initially increases with increasing radial dimensional change,  $\Delta R/R_o$ , as shown in Figure D-6. The self-boring pressuremeter curve is characteristic of

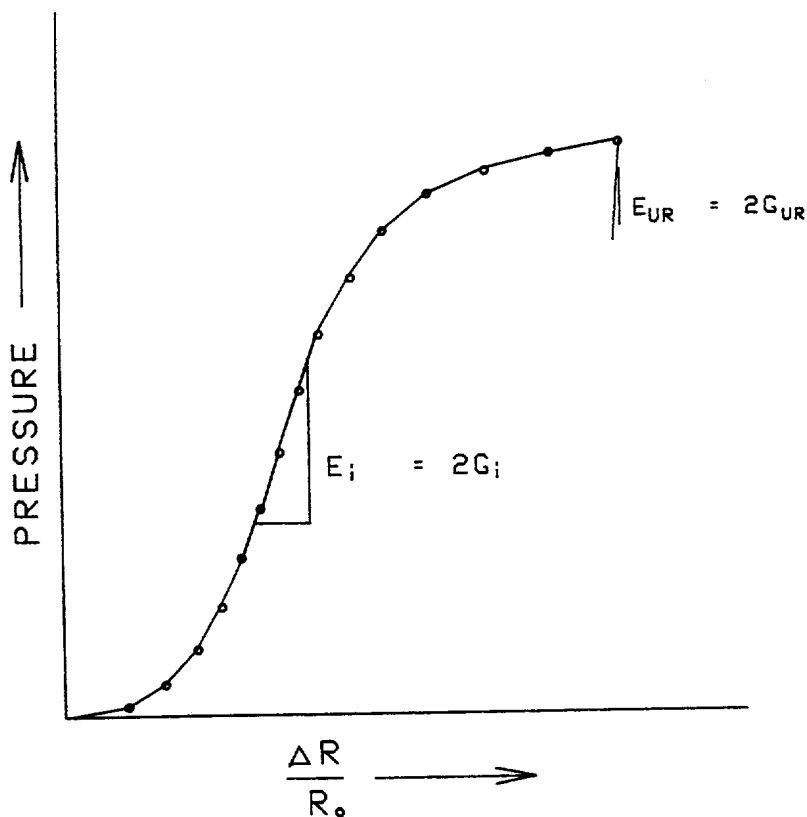


Figure D-6. Example corrected preboring pressuremeter curve

an initially high pressuremeter modulus  $E_i$  that decreases with increasing volume change without the initial increasing modulus shown in the figure. The pressuremeter modulus is a measure of twice the shear modulus. If the soil is perfectly elastic in unloading, characteristic of a sufficiently small unload-reload cycle, the gradient will be  $2G_{UR}$  (item 23). The unload-reload modulus should be determined on the plastic portion of the pressuremeter curve. The pressuremeter modulus may be evaluated from the gradient of the unload-reload cycle by (ASTM 4719)

$$E_p = \frac{(1 + v_s) \cdot \Delta P \cdot (R_{po} + \Delta R_{pm})}{\Delta R_p} \quad (D-8)$$

where

- $v_s$  = soil Poisson's ratio, 0.33
- $\Delta P$  = change in pressure measured by the pressuremeter, tsf
- $R_{po}$  = radius of probe, inches
- $\Delta R_{pm}$  = change in radius from  $R_{po}$  at midpoint of straight portion of the pressuremeter curve, inches
- $\Delta R_p$  = change in radius between selected straight portions of the pressuremeter curve, inches

e. Equivalent Elastic Modulus. The following two methods are recommended for calculating an equivalent elastic modulus of cohesive soil for estimating settlement of mats and footings.

(1) Kay and Cavagnaro approximation. The equivalent elastic modulus  $E_s^*$  may be calculated by (item 31)

$$E_s^* = \frac{2 \cdot q \cdot R \cdot (1 - v_s^2)}{\rho_c} \quad (D-9)$$

where

- $E_s^*$  = equivalent elastic modulus, tsf
- $q$  = bearing pressure, tsf
- $R$  = equivalent mat radius,
- $L$  = length of mat, ft  $\sqrt{LB/\pi}$ ,  $L < 2B$ , ft
- $B$  = width of mat, ft
- $\rho_c$  = center settlement from the Kay and Cavagnaro method, Figure 3-10, ft

(2) Semiempirical method. The equivalent elastic modulus of a soil with elastic modulus increasing linearly with depth may be estimated by

$$E_s^* = \frac{2 \cdot k \cdot R \cdot (1 - v_s^2)}{0.7 + (2.3 - 4 \cdot v_s) \cdot \log n} \quad (D-10)$$

where

- $k$  = constant relating soil elastic modulus  $E_s$  with depth  $z$
- $E_s = E_o + kz$ , tons/ft<sup>2</sup>
- $D$  = depth of foundation below ground surface, ft
- $n = kR/(E_o + kD)$
- $E_o$  = elastic soil modulus at the ground surface, tsf

Equation D-10 was developed from results of a parametric study using Equation D-9 (item 29).

(3) Gibson model. The equivalent modulus of a soil with elastic modulus increasing linearly with depth and  $E_o = 0$  is (item 19)

$$E_s^* = \frac{Bk}{2} \quad (D-11)$$

where  $B$  is the minimum width of the foundation, ft.

D-3. Shear Modulus. The shear modulus  $G$  may be used for analysis of settlement from dynamic loads.

a. Definition. Shear stresses applied to an elastic soil will cause a shear distortion illustrated by the simple shear test (SST), Table D-1.

b. Evaluation by Dynamic Tests. The shear modulus may be evaluated from dynamic tests after methodology of Chapter 17, TM 5-818-1, Procedures for Foundation Design of Buildings and Other Structures (Except Hydraulic Structures).

c. Relationships with Other Parameters. Table D-2 illustrates the relationship of the shear modulus with Young's elastic  $E$  and bulk modulus  $K$ .

D-4. Poisson's Ratio. A standard procedure for evaluation of Poisson's ratio for soil does not exist. Poisson's ratio  $\nu_s$  for soil usually varies from 0.25 to 0.49 with saturated soils approaching 0.49. Poisson's ratio for unsaturated soils usually vary from 0.25 to 0.40. A reasonable overall value for  $\nu_s$  is 0.40. Normal variations in elastic modulus of foundation soils at a site are more significant in settlement calculations than errors in Poisson's ratio.

APPENDIX E  
LABORATORY CONSOLIDOMETER TESTS

E-1. General. The following laboratory tests are described which may be used to evaluate consolidation parameters of compressible soils. The Step Load (SL) and Rapid Load (RL) tests are normally recommended. The Constant Rate of Deformation (CRD) and Controlled Gradient (CG) tests were developed to reduce the time required to complete the test relative to the SL test.

E-2. Step Load Test (SL). This test described in Chapter VIII, EM 1110-2-1906, Laboratory Soils Testing, and ASTM D 2435, One-Dimensional Consolidation Properties of Soils, may be performed with fixed or floating ring consolidometers, Figure E-1. A uniform vertical loading pressure is applied on the loading plate in increments to a thin specimen. The specimen should not be less than 2.00 inches in diameter by 0.5 inch in height. The decrease in height of the specimen following axial drainage of water from the specimen for each pressure increment is monitored with time. The duration of each pressure increment is usually 24 hours. Lateral strain is prevented by the specimen ring.

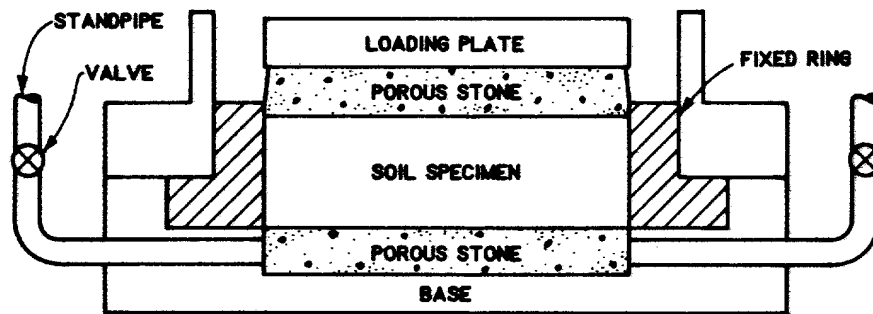
a. Specimen Preparation. Undisturbed specimens shall be trimmed in a humid room to prevent evaporation of soil moisture. A glass plate may be placed on top of the specimen and the specimen gently forced into the specimen ring during the trimming operation. A cutting tool is used to trim the specimens to accurate dimensions. The top and bottom surfaces of the specimen are trimmed flush with the specimen ring. Compacted specimens may be compacted directly into a mold which includes the specimen ring.

b. Test Procedure. The specimen and specimen ring are weighed and then assembled in the loading device, Figure E-1. An initial dial indicator reading is taken. The seating pressure from the top porous stone and loading plate should not exceed 0.01 tsf. The specimen is inundated after a pressure of 0.25 tsf is applied to the specimen; additional load increments should be applied if the specimen swells until all swelling ceases. Loading increments are applied to the specimen in increments of 0.25, 0.5, 1.0, 2.0, 4.0, 8.0, and 16.0 tsf. Each load increment should remain a minimum of 24 hours or until primary consolidation is completed. The data may be plotted as illustrated in Figure 3-17.

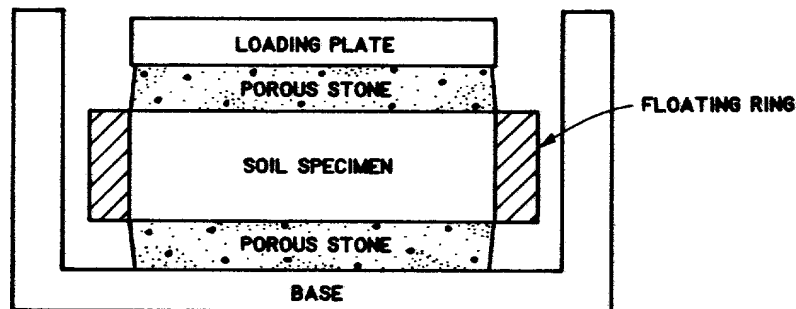
c. Possible Errors. Sources of error in consolidation results include sample disturbance, specimen not completely filling the ring, too low permeability of porous stones, friction between the specimen and specimen ring, and unsatisfactory height of the specimen.

(1) Friction. Side friction may be reduced by using larger diameter specimens, thinner specimens, or lining the consolidation ring with teflon.

(2) Specimen height. The specimen thickness determines how clearly the break in the consolidation-time curve represents completion of primary consolidation. Specimens that are too thin may cause the time to 100 percent consolidation to be too rapid. The break in the curve indicating end of primary consolidation may be obscured by secondary compression if the specimen is too thick.



d. FIXED-RING CONSOLIDOMETER



b. FLOATING-RING CONSOLIDOMETER

Figure E-1. Schematic diagrams of fixed-ring and floating-ring consolidometers

d. Time Requirements. A properly conducted test may take several weeks or months and may be especially time consuming for soft or impervious soil.

E-3. Rapid Load Test (RL). The RL test is similar to the SL test except much larger pressure increment ratios may be used and the duration of each pressure increment is restricted. The time duration is usually limited to allow only 90 percent of full consolidation as evaluated by Taylor's square root of time method, Table 3-11. Refer to item 47 for further details.

a. Time Requirements. This test may be performed in a single day.

b. Accuracy. Accuracy is similar to the SL procedure.

c. Pressure Increments. Large pressure increments exceeding those of the SL test for applied pressures exceeding the maximum past pressure reduces the amount of secondary compression contained in the void ratio-logarithm time curve, Figure 3-17.

E-4. Constant Rate of Deformation Test (CRD). A thin, cylindrical soil specimen similar to that of the SL test is saturated at constant volume under a back pressure and loaded vertically without lateral strain at a constant rate of vertical strain. Drainage is permitted only from the upper surface of the specimen. A general purpose consolidometer capable of this test procedure is shown in Figure E-2.

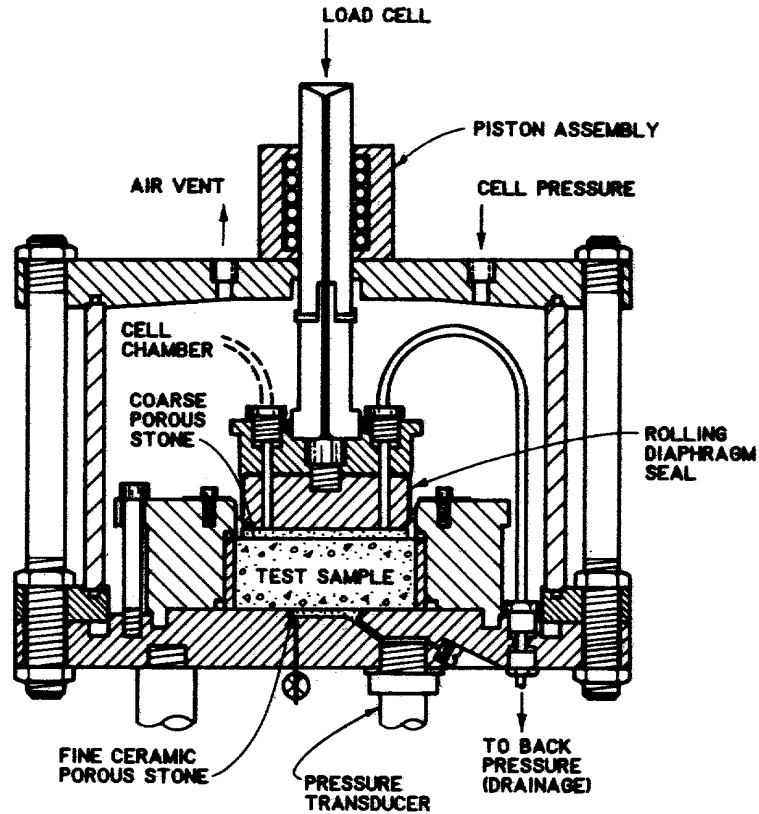


Figure E-2. General purpose consolidometer. Reprinted by permission of the American Society of Civil Engineers from the Journal of the Soil Mechanics and Foundations Division, Vol 97, 1971, "Consolidation at Constant Rate of Strain", by A. E. Z. Wizza, J. T. Christian, and E. H. Davis, p 1394

a. Evaluation of Maximum Past Pressure. The maximum past pressure determined by this procedure is dependent on the rate of strain and increases with increase in strain rate. The strain rate should be consistent with expected field rates. Typical field strain rates are about  $10^{-7}$  per minute.

b. Evaluation of Coefficient of Consolidation.  $c_v$  should be evaluated by (item 67)

$$c_v = \frac{h^2 \cdot \log_{10} \frac{\sigma_2}{\sigma_1}}{2 \cdot \Delta t \cdot \log_{10} \left[ 1 - \frac{u_h}{\sigma_a} \right]} \quad (\text{E-1})$$

where

- $h$  = average thickness of drainage path (specimen thickness), in.
- $\sigma_1$  = total vertical stress at time  $t_1$ , psi
- $\sigma_2$  = total vertical stress at time  $t_2$ , psi
- $\Delta t$  =  $t_2 - t_1$ , minutes
- $u_h$  = average excess pore water pressure at the bottom of the specimen over the time interval  $t_1$  and  $t_2$ , psi
- $\sigma_a = (\sigma_1 + \sigma_2)/2$ , average total vertical stress over time interval  $t_1$  and  $t_2$ , psi



The coefficient of consolidation  $c_v$  determined by this method appears comparable with that of the SL test.

c. Evaluation of Void Ratio-Logarithm Pressure Relationship. The void ratio-logarithm pressure relationship may be obtained by determining the void ratio and effective stress at any time during the test.

(1) The change in void ratio  $\Delta e$  over a pressure increment is  $(1 + e_1)\epsilon$  where  $e_1$  is the void ratio at the beginning of the pressure increment and  $\epsilon$  is the strain over the pressure increment.

(2) The average effective stress over a pressure increment is  $\sigma_a - u_h$ .

(3) The excess pore water pressure  $u_h$  is measured at the bottom of the specimen, Figure E-2.

d. Assumptions. This method assumes that the coefficient of consolidation and compression index are constant for the soil.

E-5. Controlled Gradient Test (CG). This test is similar to the CRD test except that the applied vertical pressure is adjusted so that the pore water pressure at the bottom of the specimen remains constant throughout the test (item 38). This restriction requires a feedback mechanism that significantly complicates the laboratory equipment.

a. Evaluation of Coefficient of Consolidation. The coefficient of consolidation may be estimated by

$$c_v = \frac{\Delta\sigma \cdot h_a^2}{\Delta t \cdot 2u_h} \quad (\text{E-2})$$

where

$\Delta\sigma$  = change in total pressure between time increment  $t_2$  and  $t_1$ , psi

$\Delta t$  =  $t_2 - t_1$ , minutes

$h_a$  = average height of specimen between time  $t_2$  and  $t_1$ , in.

$u_h$  = excess pore water pressure at bottom of the specimen, psi

b. Evaluation of Void Ratio-Logarithm Pressure Relationship. The void ratio-logarithm pressure relationship is evaluated similar to the above procedures. The excess pore water pressure at the bottom of the specimen should be kept as small as possible to maintain a nearly uniform void ratio within the specimen.

c. Assumptions. This method assumes that the coefficient of consolidation and coefficient of volume change are constant. The coefficient of volume change is the change in strain divided by the change in total vertical stress.

APPENDIX F  
COMPUTER PROGRAM VDISPL

F-1. Background. This program, Vertical DISPLacements, was developed to assist in the calculation of vertical displacements beneath shallow foundations for various types of multilayered soils in support of this manual. The two types of foundations considered are rectangular footings or mats and long strip footings. These foundations are assumed flexible. Models available are immediate settlement of granular soil from cone penetration data (item 55), immediate settlement of granular soil from both cone penetration and dilatometer data (item 37), immediate settlement of an elastic soil using the Boussinesq pressure distribution and Young's elastic soil modulus, consolidation or swell of a cohesive soil (ASTM D 4546), and settlement of a collapsible soil (item 22). Soil expansion is indicated by positive values and settlement by negative values.

F-2. Organization. The program consists of a main routine and several subroutines for calculation of vertical displacements by each of the models. The main routine feeds in descriptive data for the problem, divides the soil profile into increments from 1 to NNP where NNP is the nodal point at the bottom of the profile, assigns a layer number to each increment or soil element, and calculates the effective overburden pressure prior to placement of the foundation. The number of soil elements NEL in a problem is one less than the number of nodal points NNP. The PARAMETER statement in the program provides a maximum NL=30 soil layers and a maximum NQ=101 soil nodal points. Subroutine SLAB calculates the change in effective vertical pressures in the soil following placement of the foundation using the Boussinesq pressure distribution. The remaining subroutines described below calculate vertical displacements for the various models.

a. Data Organization. The input data are placed in a file, "VDIN.DAT". These data are illustrated in Table F-1 with descriptions provided in Table F-2. The input data are also printed in the output file, "VDOU.DAT" and illustrated in Table F-3. Calculations by the program are printed in VDOU.DAT and illustrated in Table F-3.

b. Subroutine MECH. This subroutine (NOPT=0) calculates heave or consolidation from results of one-dimensional consolidometer swell tests performed on cohesive soil for each layer in a soil profile.

(1) Soil displacements are calculated after ASTM standard D 4546 (method C) relative to the equilibrium moisture profiles of saturated (method 1), hydrostatic with shallow water table (method 2), and hydrostatic without shallow water table (method 3), Figure 5-1.

(2) Input data includes swell pressure, swell and compression indices, and the maximum past pressure of each soil layer. Incremental and total settlement in soil adjacent to the foundation and below the foundation may be calculated.

c. Subroutine LEON. This subroutine (NOPT=1) calculates immediate settlement of shallow foundations on granular soils using both cone penetration and dilatometer in situ test data. This method considers effects of prestress after the model of Leonards and Frost (item 37)

Table F-1

Input Data

| <u>Line</u> | <u>Input Parameters</u>   | <u>Format Statement</u>   |
|-------------|---|---|
| 1           | TITLE   | 20A4  |
| 2           | MPROB NOPT NBPRES NNP NBX NMAT DX   | 6I5,F10.2   |
| 3           | N IE(N,M)<br>(Line 3 repeated for each new material, M=1,NMAT; last<br>line is NEL NMAT)  | 2I5   |
| 4           | M G(M) WC(M) EO(M)<br>(Line 4 repeated for each new material, M=1,NMAT)   | I5,3F10.3   |
| 5           | DGWT IOPTION NOUT   | F10.2,2I5   |
| 6           | Q BLEN BWID MRECT   | 3F10.2,I5   |
| 7           | If NOPT=0<br>M SP(M) CS(M) CC(M) PM(M)<br><br>If NOPT=1<br>M PO(M) P1(M) QC(M)<br><br>If NOPT=2<br>M QC(M)<br><br>If NOPT=3<br>M PRES(M,J),J=1,5<br><br>If NOPT=4<br>M ES(M)<br><br>(Line 7 repeated for each new material, M=1,NMAT) | I5,4F10.4<br><br>I5,3F10.2<br><br>I5,F10.2<br><br>I5,5F10.2<br><br>I5,F10.2 |
| 8           | If NOPT=0<br>XA XF<br><br>If NOPT=2 or 4<br>TIME<br><br>If NOPT=3<br>M STRA(M,J),J=1,5<br>(This line repeated for each new material, M=1,NMAT)  | 2F10.2<br><br>F10.2<br><br>I5,5F10.2  |

Table F-2

Description of Input Data

| Line | Parameter | Description  |
|------|-----------|--|
| 1    | TITLE     | Name of problem  |
| 2    | NPROB     | Number of problems; If NPROB >1, then the program repeats calculations with new input data beginning with Line 5   |
|      | NOPT      | Option for model: =0 for consolidation/swell<br>=1 for Leonards and Frost<br>=2 for Schmertmann<br>=3 for Collapsible soil<br>=4 for elastic soil settlement   |
|      | NBPRES    | Option for foundation: =1 for rectangular slab<br>=2 for long strip footing  |
|      | NNP       | Total number of nodal points; vertical displacements calculated to depth $DX \cdot (NNP-1)$  |
|      | NBX       | Number of nodal point at bottom of foundation  |
|      | NMAT      | Total number of different soil layers  |
|      | DX        | Increment of depth, ft   |
| 3    | N         | Element number   |
|      | IE(N,M)   | Number of soil layer M associated with element N   |
| 4    | M         | Number of soil layer   |
|      | G(M)      | Specific gravity of soil layer M   |
|      | WC(M)     | Water content of soil layer M, percent   |
|      | EO(M)     | Initial void ratio of soil layer M   |
| 5    | DGWT      | Depth to hydrostatic water table, ft; If NOPT=0 and IOPTION =1, then set $DGWT = ZA + U_{wa} / 0.03125$ where $U_{wa}$ = suction (or positive value of negative pore water pressure), tsf at depth ZA (method 3, Figure 5-1); If $U_{wa} = 0$ , then $DGWT = ZA$ (method 2, Figure 5-1); set $NNP = 1 + ZA/DX$ to prevent displacement calculations below depth ZA |
|      | IOPTION   | Equilibrium moisture profile: =0 for saturation above the water table (method 1, Figure 5-1); if NOPT=0, then =1 for hydrostatic above water table   |
|      | NOUT      | Amount of output data, =0 only total displacements<br>=1 for increments with totals  |
| 6    | Q         | Applied uniform pressure on foundation, tsf  |
|      | BLen      | Length of foundation or 0.0 if NBPRES=2, ft  |
|      | BWID      | Width of foundation or long continuous footing, ft   |
|      | MRECT     | Location of calculation: =0 for center and =1 for corner of rectangle or edge of long footing  |

Table F-2. Concluded

| Line      | Parameter  | Description   |
|-----------|--|---|
| 7         |  | If NOPT=0   |
|           | M  | Number of soil layer  |
|           | SP(M)  | Swell pressure of soil layer M, tsf   |
|           | CS(M)  | Swell index of soil layer M   |
|           | CC(M)  | Compression index of soil layer M   |
|           | PM(M)  | Maximum past pressure of soil layer M, tsf  |
|           |  | If NOPT=1   |
|           | M  | Number of soil layer  |
|           | PO(M)  | Dilatometer A-pressure, tsf   |
|           | PI(M)  | Dilatometer B-pressure, tsf   |
|           | QC(M)  | Cone penetration resistance, tsf  |
|           |  | If NOPT=2   |
|           | M  | Number of soil layer  |
|           | QC(M)  | Cone penetration resistance, tsf  |
|           |  | If NOPT=3   |
|           | M  | Number of soil layer  |
|           | PRES(M,5)  | Applied pressure at 5 points of collapsible soil test, tsf; must be greater than zero |
|           |  | If NOPT=4   |
|           | M  | Number of soil layer  |
|           | ES(M)  | Elastic modulus, tsf  |
| 8         |  | If NOPT=0   |
|           | ZA   | Depth of active zone of heave, ft   |
|           | XF   | Depth from ground surface to the depth that heave begins, ft                          |
|           |  | If NOPT=2 or 4  |
|           | TIME   | Time in years after construction for Schmertmann model                                |
|           |  | If NOPT=3   |
|           | M  | Number of soil layer  |
| STRA(M,5) | Strain at 5 points of collapsible soil test, percent |   |

Table F-3

Output Data

| <u>Line</u> | <u>Output Parameters</u>  | <u>Fortran Statement</u> |
|-------------|---|--------------------------|
| 1           | TITLE   | 20A4                     |
| 2           | NUMBER OF PROBLEMS=<br>NUMBER OF NODAL POINTS=  | I5<br>I5                 |
| 3           | NUMBER OF NODAL POINT AT BOTTOM OF FOUNDATION=  | I11                      |
| 4           | NUMBER OF DIFFERENT SOIL LAYERS=<br>INCREMENT DEPTH=  | I5<br>F10.2              |
| 5           | If NOPT=0<br>CONSOLIDATION SWELL MODEL<br><br>If NOPT=1<br>LEONARDS AND FROST MODEL<br><br>If NOPT=2<br>SCHMERTMANN MODEL<br><br>If NOPT=3<br>COLLAPSIBLE SOIL<br><br>If NOPT=4<br>ELASTIC SOIL |                          |
| 6           | If NBPRES=1<br>RECTANGULAR SLAB FOUNDATION<br><br>If NBPRES=2<br>LONG CONTINUOUS STRIP FOUNDATION   |                          |
| 7           | DEPTH OF FOUNDATION=                      FEET  | F10.2                    |
| 8           | TOTAL DEPTH OF SOIL PROFILE=                      FEET  | F10.2                    |
| 9           | ELEMENT NUMBER OF SOIL  | I5,8X,I5                 |
| 10          | MATERIAL      SPECIFIC GRAVITY      WATER CONTENT, %  | VOID RATIO<br>I5,3F10.3  |
| 11          | DEPTH TO WATER TABLE=                      FEET   | F10.2                    |
| 12          | If NOUT=0<br>TOTAL DISPLACEMENTS ONLY   |                          |

Table F-3. Continued

| <u>Line</u> | <u>Output Parameters</u>   | <u>Fortran Statement</u> |
|-------------|--|--------------------------|
|             | If NOUT=1<br>DISPLACEMENTS AT EACH DEPTH OUTPUT  |                          |
| 13          | If IOPTION=0 or NOPT=0<br>EQUILIBRIUM SATURATED ABOVE WATER TABLE  |                          |
|             | If IOPTION=1 and NOPT=0<br>EQUILIBRIUM HYDROSTRATIC PROFILE ABOVE WATER TABLE  |                          |
| 14          | APPLIED PRESSURE ON FOUNDATION=                      TSF   | F10.2                    |
| 15          | LENGTH=                      FEET                      WIDTH=                      FEET  | F10.2,F10.2              |
| 15          | If MRECT=0<br>CENTER OF FOUNDATION   |                          |
|             | If MRECT=1<br>CORNER OF SLAB OR EDGE OF LONG STRIP FOOTING   |                          |
| If NOPT=0   |  |                          |
| 17          | MATERIAL      SWELL PRESSURE,      SWELL      COMPRESSION      MAXIMUM PAST<br>TSF                      INDEX                      INDEX                      PRESSURE,TSF   | I5,4F15.3                |
| 18          | ACTIVE ZONE DEPTH (FT)=<br>DEPTH ACTIVE ZONE BEGINS (FT)=  | F10.2<br>F10.2           |
|             | If NOUT=1  |                          |
| 19A         | HEAVE DISTRIBUTION ABOVE FOUNDATION DEPTH<br>ELEMENT      DEPTH,FT      DELTA HEAVE,FT      EXCESS PORE PRESSURE,TSF   | I5,F13.2,2F18.5          |
| 19B         | HEAVE DISTRIBUTION BELOW FOUNDATION DEPTH<br>ELEMENT      DEPTH,FT      DELTA HEAVE,FT      EXCESS PORE PRESSURE,TSF   |                          |
| 20          | SOIL HEAVE NEXT TO FOUNDATION EXCLUDING HEAVE<br>IN SUBSOIL BENETH FOUNDATION=                      FEET                      F8.5<br>SUBSOIL MOVEMENT=                      FEET                      F8.5<br>TOTAL HEAVE                      FEET                      F8.5 |                          |
| If NOPT=1   |  |                          |
| 17          | MATERIAL      A PRESSURE, TSF      B PRESSURE, TSF      CONE RESISTANCE, TSF   | I5,3F18.2                |
| 18          | If NOUT=1<br>ELEMENT      DEPTH,      SETTLEMENT,      KO      QC/SIGV      PHI,DEGREES<br>FT                      FT  | I5,F10.2,F13.5,3F10.2    |

Table F-3. Continued

| <u>Line</u> | <u>Output Parameters</u>  | <u>Fortran Statement</u> |
|-------------|---|--------------------------|
| 19          | SETTLEMENT BENEATH FOUNDATION= FEET   | F10.5                    |
| If NOPT=2   |   |                          |
| 17          | MATERIAL CONE RESISTANCE, TSF   | I5,F18.2                 |
| 18          | TIME AFTER CONSTRUCTION IN YEARS=   | F10.2                    |
| 19          | If NOUT=1<br>ELEMENT DEPTH, FT SETTLEMENT, FT   | I5,F13.2,F18.5           |
| 20          | SETTLEMENT BENEATH FOUNDATION= FEET   | F10.5                    |
| If NOPT=3   |   |                          |
| 17          | APPLIED PRESSURE AT 5 POINTS IN UNITS OF TSF<br>MATERIAL A BB B C D   | I5,5F10.2                |
| 18          | STRAIN AT 5 POINTS IN PERCENT<br>MATERIAL A BB B C D  | I5,5F10.2                |
| 19          | If NOUT=1<br>COLLAPSE DISTRIBUTION ABOVE FOUNDATION DEPTH<br>ELEMENT DEPTH,FT DELTA,FT  | I5,F13.2,F18.2           |
|             | COLLAPSE DISTRIBUTION BELOW FOUNDATION DEPTH<br>ELEMENT DEPTH,FT DELTA,FT   | I5,F13.2,F18.2           |
| 20          | SOIL COLLAPSE NEXT TO FOUNDATION EXCLUDING COLLAPSE<br>IN SUBSOIL BENEATH FOUNDATION FEET<br>SUBSOIL COLLAPSE= FEET<br>TOTAL COLLAPSE= FEET | F10.5<br>F10.5<br>F10.5  |
| If NOPT=4   |   |                          |
| 17          | MATERIAL ELASTIC MODULUS, TSF   | I5,F18.2                 |
| 18          | TIME AFTER CONSTRUCTION IN YEARS=   |                          |
| 19          | If NOUT=1<br>SETTLEMENT DISTRIBUTION BELOW FOUNDATION<br>ELEMENT DEPTH,FT DELTA,FT  | I5,F13.2,F18.5           |
| 20          | SUBSOIL SETTLEMENT BENEATH FOUNDATION FEET  | F10.5                    |



$$\rho_i = C_i \cdot \Delta p \cdot \Delta z \cdot \sum_{i=1}^{i=NEEL} I_{iz} \left[ \frac{R_{izoc}}{E_{izoc}} + \frac{R_{iznc}}{E_{iznc}} \right] \quad (F-1)$$

where

- $\rho_i$  = immediate settlement, ft
- $C_1$  = correction to account for strain relief from embedment,  
 $1 - 0.5\sigma'_o/\Delta p \geq 0.5$
- $\sigma'_o$  = effective vertical overburden pressure at bottom of footing, tsf
- $\Delta p$  = net applied footing pressure,  $q - \sigma'_o$ , tsf
- $q$  = bearing pressure on footing, tsf
- $\Delta z$  = depth increment, ft
- $I_{iz}$  = influence factor of soil layer  $i$  from Figure 3-4
- $R_{izoc}$  = ratio of stress increment corresponding to the overconsolidated part in soil layer  $i$  to the total stress increment in that layer
- $R_{iznc}$  = ratio of stress increment corresponding to the normally consolidated part in soil layer  $i$  to the total stress increment in that layer
- $E_{izoc}$  = Young's soil modulus of overconsolidated soil layer  $i$  at depth  $z$ , tsf
- $E_{iznc}$  = Young's soil modulus of normally consolidated soil layer  $i$  at depth  $z$ , tsf

(1) The ratios  $R_{iz}$  may be found as follows:

$$R_{izoc} = \frac{\sigma'_p - \sigma'_v}{\sigma'_f - \sigma'_v} \quad (F-2a)$$

$$R_{iznc} = \frac{\sigma'_f - \sigma'_p}{\sigma'_f - \sigma'_v} \quad (F-2b)$$

where

- $\sigma'_p$  = preconsolidation or maximum past pressure, tsf
- $\sigma'_v$  = initial vertical effective stress, tsf
- $\sigma'_f$  = final effective stress at the center of the layer, tsf

$\sigma'_p$  is determined from  $\sigma'_v$  and the overconsolidation ratio, OCR.

(2) The OCR is estimated from (item 57)

$$OCR = \left[ \frac{K_{OC}}{1 - \sin \phi_{ax}} \right]^{\frac{1}{0.8 \cdot \sin \phi_{ax}}} \quad (F-3)$$

where  $\phi_{ax}$  is the axial friction angle, degrees. Equation F-3 was confirmed (item 37) for OCR between 2 and 20.

(3)  $\phi_{ax}$  is estimated from the plane strain angle  $\phi_{ps}$  by (item 57)

$$\phi_{ax} = \phi_{ps} - \left[ \frac{\phi_{ps} - 32}{3} \right] \quad (F-4)$$

(4) The plane strain angle  $\phi_{ps}$  is estimated from the coefficient of earth pressure and  $q_c/\sigma'_v$  using correlations suggested by (item 41).  $q_c$  is the cone penetration resistance, tsf. These correlations have been programmed in subroutine SPLINE. Subroutine BICUBIC is used to evaluate  $\phi_{ps}$ . The coefficient of earth pressure is estimated using

$$K_{oc} = 0.376 + 0.095K_p - 0.0017 (q_c/\sigma'_v) \quad (F-5)$$

where

$K_{oc}$  = coefficient of earth pressure for overconsolidated soil  
 $K_D$  = horizontal stress index,  $(P_o - u_w)/\sigma'_v$   
 $P_o$  = dilatometer lift-off pressure, tsf  
 $u_w$  = in-situ pore water pressure, tsf

Settlements calculations are sensitive to the value of  $K_D$ , the horizontal stress index. If  $K_{oc}$  calculated by Equation F-5 exceeds 1.8, then the OCR calculated by Equation E-3 may exceed 20. The dilatometer lift-off pressure  $P_o$  should be a reliable value. Program VDISPL does not limit the value of  $K_{oc}$ . The constants in Equation F-5 may also differ from those for local soils.

(5) The elastic soil moduli are estimated by

$$E_{izoc} = 3.5E_p \quad (F-6a)$$

$$E_{iznc} = 0.7E_p \quad (F-6b)$$

where  $E_D$  = dilatometer modulus, tsf.  $E_D$  is given by

$$E_D = 34.7 (P_1 - P_o) \quad (F-7)$$

where  $P_1$  is the dilatometer B-pressure, the pressure required to expand the membrane 1.1 mm at the test depths. If  $R_{izoc} = 0$ , then  $E_{iznc} = 0.9E_D$ . Input data include the dilatometer A and B pressures and the cone resistance for each soil layer. Incremental and total settlement beneath the foundation may be calculated.

d. Subroutine SCHMERT. This subroutine (NOPT=2) calculates immediate settlement of shallow foundations on granular soils from cone penetration test data by the Schmertmann model (item 55)

$$\rho_i = C_i \cdot C_t \cdot \Delta P \cdot \Delta Z \cdot \sum_{i=1}^{NEL} \frac{I_{iz}}{E_{si}} \quad (F-8)$$

where the input parameters are the same as above except  $E_{si}$  is the elastic soil modulus of layer  $i$ .  $E_{si} = 2.5q_c$  for rectangular footings or mats and  $E_{si} = 3.5q_c$  for long strip footings.  $C_t$  is a correction for time dependent increase in settlement

$$C_t = 1 + 0.2 \cdot \log_{10}(t/0.1) \quad (F-9)$$

(1) Input data include cone penetration resistance  $q_c$  for each soil layer and the time in years following construction when settlement is to be calculated. The incremental and total settlement beneath the foundation is calculated for the provided time.

(2) This subroutine includes an option (NOPT=4) to input  $E_{si}$  directly for each soil layer. This option may be useful if the user does not have cone penetration resistance data, but can determine reliable values of  $E_{si}$  by some other tests.

e. Subroutine COLL. This subroutine (NOPT=3) calculates the collapse settlement of susceptible soils after the model of Houston, et al (item 22). The model uses the results of a one-dimensional consolidometer test performed on collapsible soil for each soil layer, Figure 5-5. Input data include 5 points each of the applied pressure and strain distributions. The collapse settlement is calculated from the difference in strains between the unwetted line, points A-BB-B, and the wetted line, points A-C-D. Incremental and total settlement in soil adjacent and above the foundation and below the foundation may be calculated. The settlement caused by foundation loads prior to collapse may be estimated by the Leonards and Frost (NOPT=1, item 37) and Schmertmann (NOPT=2) models (item 57).

### F-3. Example Problems

a. Heave of Expansive Soil. A footing 3 ft by 3 ft square,  $B = W = 3$  ft, is to be constructed 3 ft below ground surface,  $D = 3$  ft, on two cohesive expansive soil layers. The amount of heave is to be calculated if the soil is left untreated. The bottom of the soil profile is 8 ft below ground surface, which is also the depth to the ground water level. The depth increment  $DX$  is taken as 0.5 ft. The total number of nodal points  $NNP$  is selected as 17, number of elements  $NEL = NNP - 1$  or 16, and the nodal point at the bottom of the footing is  $NBX = (D/DX) + 1 = 3/0.5 + 1 = 7$ . A schematic diagram of this problem is illustrated in Figure 5-6. The input parameters of data file VDIN.DAT for the consolidation/swell model,  $NOPT = 0$ , are given in Table F-4a. The maximum past pressures were omitted, which caused the program to assume these values equal with the swell pressures. The output data listed in data file VDOU.DAT shown in Table F-4b indicate substantial potential heave of 0.3 ft or 3.6 inches beneath the footing.

b. Settlement of Granular Soil. The same footing illustrated in Figure 5-6 is to be constructed in granular soil consisting of two distinctive layers. Field tests consisting of cone penetration and dilatometer data were obtained.

(1) The input parameters of data file VDIN.DAT for the Leonard and Frost model,  $NOPT = 1$ , are given in Table F-5a. The output data listed in data file VDOU.DAT shown in Table F-5b indicate 0.0092 ft or 0.11 inch of settlement beneath the footing.

(2) The same problem was applied to the Schmertmann model using the cone penetration resistance of the soil layers. The input data are given in Table F-6a. The output data shown in Table F-6b indicate 0.012 ft or 0.15 inch of settlement.

Table F-4

Expansive Soil Heave

a. Input data, file VDIN.DAT

---

FOOTING IN EXPANSIVE SOIL

|    |        |        |    |        |   |      |
|----|--------|--------|----|--------|---|------|
| 1  | 0      | 1      | 17 | 7      | 2 | 0.50 |
| 1  | 1      |        |    |        |   |      |
| 12 | 2      |        |    |        |   |      |
| 16 | 2      |        |    |        |   |      |
| 1  | 2.700  | 20.000 |    | 1.540  |   |      |
| 2  | 2.65   | 19.300 |    | 0.900  |   |      |
|    | 8.00   | 0      | 1  |        |   |      |
|    | 1.00   | 3.00   |    | 3.00   | 0 |      |
| 1  | 2.0000 | 0.1500 |    | 0.2500 |   |      |
| 2  | 3.0000 | 0.1000 |    | 0.2000 |   |      |
|    | 8.00   | 0      |    |        |   |      |

---

b. Output Data, File VDOU.DAT

---

FOOTING IN EXPANSIVE SOIL

NUMBER OF PROBLEMS= 1      NUMBER OF NODAL POINTS= 17  
NUMBER OF NODAL POINT AT BOTTOM OF FOUNDATION= 7  
NUMBER OF DIFFERENT SOIL LAYERS= 2      INCREMENT DEPTH= 0.50 FT

CONSOLIDATION SWELL MODEL

RECTANGULAR SLAB FOUNDATION

DEPTH OF FOUNDATION = 3.00 FEET  
TOTAL DEPTH OF THE SOIL PROFILE = 8.00 FEET

| ELEMENT | NUMBER OF SOIL |
|---------|----------------|
| 1       | 1              |
| 2       | 1              |
| 3       | 1              |
| 4       | 1              |
| 5       | 1              |
| 6       | 1              |
| 7       | 1              |
| 8       | 1              |
| 9       | 1              |
| 10      | 1              |
| 11      | 1              |
| 12      | 2              |
| 13      | 2              |
| 14      | 2              |
| 15      | 2              |
| 16      | 2              |

---

Table F-4. Continued

| MATERIAL   | SPECIFIC GRAVITY       | WATER CONTENT, %                           | VOID RATIO                |                              |
|--|------------------------|--|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1  | 2.700                  | 20.000                                     | 1.540                     |                              |
| 2  | 2.650                  | 19.300                                     | 0.900                     |                              |
| DEPTH TO WATER TABLE =   |                        | 8.00                                       | FEET                      |                              |
| DISPLACEMENTS AT EACH DEPTH OUTPUT                                       |                        |  |                           |                              |
| EQUILIBRIUM SATURATED PROFILE ABOVE WATER TABLE                          |                        |  |                           |                              |
| APPLIED PRESSURE ON FOUNDATION=  |                        | 1.00                                       | TSF                       |                              |
| LENGTH =   | 3.00                   | FEET                                       | WIDTH = 3.00 FEET         |                              |
| CENTER OF FOUNDATION   |                        |  |                           |                              |
| MATERIAL   | SWELL PRESSURE,<br>TSF | SWELL<br>INDEX                             | COMPRESSION<br>INDEX      | MAXIMUM PAST<br>PRESSURE,TSF |
| SWELL PRESSURE   | 2.00                   | WAS SET GREATER THAN MAXIMUM PAST PRESSURE |                           | 0.00                         |
| WHICH IS NOT POSSIBLE; SWELL PRESSURE SET EQUAL TO MAXIMUM PAST PRESSURE |                        |  |                           |                              |
| 1  | 2.000                  | 0.150                                      | 0.250                     | 2.000                        |
| SWELL PRESSURE   | 3.00                   | WAS SET GREATER THAN MAXIMUM PAST PRESSURE |                           | 0.00                         |
| WHICH IS NOT POSSIBLE; SWELL PRESSURE SET EQUAL TO MAXIMUM PAST PRESSURE |                        |  |                           |                              |
| 2  | 3.000                  | 0.100                                      | 0.200                     | 3.000                        |
| ACTIVE ZONE DEPTH (FT) =   |                        | 8.00                                       |                           |                              |
| DEPTH ACTIVE ZONE BEGINS (FT) =  |                        | 0.00                                       |                           |                              |
| HEAVE DISTRIBUTION ABOVE FOUNDATION DEPTH                                |                        |  |                           |                              |
| ELEMENT  | DEPTH, FT              | DELTA HEAVE, FT                            | EXCESS PORE PRESSURE, TSF |                              |
| 1  | 0.25                   | 0.13598                                    | 1.99003                   |                              |
| 2  | 0.75                   | 0.10780                                    | 1.97010                   |                              |
| 3  | 1.25                   | 0.09470                                    | 1.95017                   |                              |
| 4  | 1.75                   | 0.08607                                    | 1.93024                   |                              |
| 5  | 2.25                   | 0.07962                                    | 1.91031                   |                              |
| 6  | 2.75                   | 0.03312                                    | 1.45017                   |                              |
| HEAVE DISTRIBUTION BELOW FOUNDATION                                      |                        |  |                           |                              |
| ELEMENT  | DEPTH, FT              | DELTA HEAVE, FT                            | EXCESS PORE PRESSURE, TSF |                              |
| 7  | 3.25                   | 0.01780                                    | 1.00071                   |                              |

Table F-4. Continued

---

|    |      |         |         |
|----|------|---------|---------|
| 8  | 3.75 | 0.01886 | 1.04123 |
| 9  | 4.25 | 0.02171 | 1.14230 |
| 10 | 4.75 | 0.02552 | 1.26050 |
| 11 | 5.25 | 0.02926 | 1.36090 |
| 12 | 5.75 | 0.03802 | 2.43160 |
| 13 | 6.25 | 0.03987 | 2.47576 |
| 14 | 6.75 | 0.04105 | 2.50203 |
| 15 | 7.25 | 0.04167 | 2.51531 |
| 16 | 7.75 | 0.04185 | 2.51923 |

---

SOIL HEAVE NEXT TO FOUNDATION EXCLUDING HEAVE  
IN SUBSOIL BENEATH FOUNDATION = 0.26864 FEET

SUBSOIL MOVEMENT = 0.15780 FEET  
TOTAL HEAVE = 0.42645 FEET

---

Table F-5

Settlement of Granular Soil, Leonard and Frost Model

a. Input data, file VDIN.DAT

---

FOOTING IN GRANULAR SOIL - LEONARD AND FROST

|    |       |        |    |        |   |      |
|----|-------|--------|----|--------|---|------|
| 1  | 1     | 1      | 17 | 7      | 2 | 0.50 |
| 1  | 1     |        |    |        |   |      |
| 12 | 2     |        |    |        |   |      |
| 16 | 2     |        |    |        |   |      |
| 1  | 2.700 | 20.000 |    | 1.540  |   |      |
| 2  | 2.65  | 19.300 |    | 0.900  |   |      |
|    | 8.00  | 0      | 1  |        |   |      |
|    | 1.00  | 3.00   |    | 3.00   | 0 |      |
| 1  | 3.00  | 15.00  |    | 70.00  |   |      |
| 2  | 5.00  | 20.00  |    | 100.00 |   |      |

---

b. Output Data, File VDOU.DAT

---

FOOTING IN GRANULAR SOIL - LEONARD AND FROST

NUMBER OF PROBLEMS= 1      NUMBER OF NODAL POINTS= 17  
NUMBER OF NODAL POINT AT BOTTOM OF FOUNDATION= 7  
NUMBER OF DIFFERENT SOIL LAYERS= 2      INCREMENT DEPTH= 0.50 FT

LEONARDS AND FROST MODEL

RECTANGULAR SLAB FOUNDATION

DEPTH OF FOUNDATION = 3.00 FEET  
TOTAL DEPTH OF THE SOIL PROFILE = 8.00 FEET

---

Table F-5. Continued

| ELEMENT | NUMBER OF SOIL |  |  |
|---------|----------------|--|--|
| 1       | 1              |  |  |
| 2       | 1              |  |  |
| 3       | 1              |  |  |
| 4       | 1              |  |  |
| 5       | 1              |  |  |
| 6       | 1              |  |  |
| 7       | 1              |  |  |
| 8       | 1              |  |  |
| 9       | 1              |  |  |
| 10      | 1              |  |  |
| 11      | 1              |  |  |
| 12      | 2              |  |  |
| 13      | 2              |  |  |
| 14      | 2              |  |  |
| 15      | 2              |  |  |
| 16      | 2              |  |  |

| MATERIAL | SPECIFIC GRAVITY | WATER CONTENT, % | VOID RATIO |
|----------|------------------|------------------|------------|
| 1        | 2.700            | 20.000           | 1.540      |
| 2        | 2.650            | 19.300           | 0.900      |

DEPTH TO WATER TABLE = 8.00 FEET

DISPLACEMENTS AT EACH DEPTH OUTPUT

EQUILIBRIUM SATURATED PROFILE ABOVE WATER TABLE

APPLIED PRESSURE ON FOUNDATION= 1.00 TSF  
 LENGTH = 3.00 FEET WIDTH = 3.00 FEET

CENTER OF FOUNDATION

| MATERIAL | A PRESSURE, TSF | B PRESSURE, TSF | CONE RESISTANCE, TSF |
|----------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| 1        | 3.00            | 15.00           | 70.00                |
| 2        | 5.00            | 20.00           | 100.00               |

QNET= 0.88041

| ELEMENT | DEPTH, FT | SETTLEMENT, FT | KO   | QC/SIGV | PHI, DEGREES |
|---------|-----------|----------------|------|---------|--------------|
| 7       | 3.25      | -0.00017       | 1.66 | 540.32  | 44.52        |
| 8       | 3.75      | -0.00033       | 1.49 | 468.28  | 44.10        |
| 9       | 4.25      | -0.00053       | 1.36 | 413.19  | 43.67        |
| 10      | 4.75      | -0.00068       | 1.25 | 369.69  | 43.26        |
| 11      | 5.25      | -0.00071       | 1.17 | 334.49  | 42.88        |

Table F-5. Concluded

---

|    |      |          |      |        |       |
|----|------|----------|------|--------|-------|
| 12 | 5.75 | -0.00152 | 1.69 | 430.59 | 43.68 |
| 13 | 6.25 | -0.00150 | 1.56 | 387.24 | 43.32 |
| 14 | 6.75 | -0.00142 | 1.45 | 351.82 | 42.98 |
| 15 | 7.25 | -0.00127 | 1.36 | 322.33 | 42.67 |
| 16 | 7.75 | -0.00104 | 1.28 | 297.41 | 42.39 |

---

SETTLEMENT BENEATH FOUNDATION= -0.00918 FEET

---

Table F-6

Settlement of Granular Soil, Schmertmann Model

a. Input data, file VDIN.DAT

---

FOOTING IN GRANULAR SOIL - SCHMERTMANN

|    |        |        |    |       |   |      |
|----|--------|--------|----|-------|---|------|
| 1  | 2      | 1      | 17 | 7     | 2 | 0.50 |
| 1  | 1      |        |    |       |   |      |
| 12 | 2      |        |    |       |   |      |
| 16 | 2      |        |    |       |   |      |
| 1  | 2.700  | 20.000 |    | 1.540 |   |      |
| 2  | 2.65   | 19.300 |    | 0.900 |   |      |
|    | 8.00   | 0      | 1  |       |   |      |
|    | 1.00   | 3.00   |    | 3.00  | 0 |      |
| 1  | 70.00  |        |    |       |   |      |
| 2  | 100.00 |        |    |       |   |      |
| 3  | 10.00  |        |    |       |   |      |

---

b. Output Data, File VDOU.DAT

---

FOOTING IN GRANULAR SOIL - SCHMERTMANN

NUMBER OF PROBLEMS= 1      NUMBER OF NODAL POINTS= 17  
NUMBER OF NODAL POINT AT BOTTOM OF FOUNDATION= 7  
NUMBER OF DIFFERENT SOIL LAYERS= 2      INCREMENT DEPTH= 0.50 FT

SCHMERTMANN MODEL

RECTANGULAR SLAB FOUNDATION

DEPTH OF FOUNDATION = 3.00 FEET  
TOTAL DEPTH OF THE SOIL PROFILE = 8.00 FEET

|         |                |
|---------|----------------|
| ELEMENT | NUMBER OF SOIL |
| 1       | 1              |
| 2       | 1              |
| 3       | 1              |
| 4       | 1              |
| 5       | 1              |

---



Table F-6. Concluded

---

|    |   |
|----|---|
| 6  | 1 |
| 7  | 1 |
| 8  | 1 |
| 9  | 1 |
| 10 | 1 |
| 11 | 1 |
| 12 | 2 |
| 13 | 2 |
| 14 | 2 |
| 15 | 2 |
| 16 | 2 |

| MATERIAL | SPECIFIC GRAVITY | WATER CONTENT, % | VOID RATIO |
|----------|------------------|------------------|------------|
| 1        | 2.700            | 20.000           | 1.540      |
| 2        | 2.650            | 19.300           | 0.900      |

DEPTH TO WATER TABLE = 8.00 FEET

DISPLACEMENTS AT EACH DEPTH OUTPUT

EQUILIBRIUM SATURATED PROFILE ABOVE WATER TABLE

APPLIED PRESSURE ON FOUNDATION= 1.00 TSF  
LENGTH = 3.00 FEET WIDTH = 3.00 FEET

CENTER OF FOUNDATION

| MATERIAL | CONE RESISTANCE, TSF |
|----------|----------------------|
| 1        | 70.00                |
| 2        | 100.00               |

TIME AFTER CONSTRUCTION IN YEARS= 10.00

| ELEMENT | DEPTH, FT | SETTLEMENT, FT |
|---------|-----------|----------------|
| 7       | 3.25      | -0.00069       |
| 8       | 3.75      | -0.00138       |
| 9       | 4.25      | -0.00205       |
| 10      | 4.75      | -0.00222       |
| 11      | 5.25      | -0.00193       |
| 12      | 5.75      | -0.00115       |
| 13      | 6.25      | -0.00096       |
| 14      | 6.75      | -0.00078       |
| 15      | 7.25      | -0.00060       |
| 16      | 7.75      | -0.00042       |

SETTLEMENT BENEATH FOUNDATION= -0.01218 FEET

---

c. Settlement of Collapsible Soil. The granular soil of the preceding problem was tested in a one-dimensional consolidometer to check for collapse potential. The results of this test were plotted in a compression curve diagram similar to Figure 5-5 and indicated the settlement points shown in Table F-7a, input data for program VDISPL. The output data shown in Table F-7b indicate potential collapse of 0.33 ft or 4 inches beneath the footing.

F-4. Listing. A listing of this program is provided in Table F-8.

Table E-7

Collapse Potential

a. Input data, file VDIN.DAT

---

FOOTING IN GRANULAR SOIL - SCHMERTMANN

|    |       |   |        |   |       |             |
|----|-------|---|--------|---|-------|-------------|
| 1  | 3     | 1 | 17     | 7 | 2     | 0.50        |
| 1  | 1     |   |        |   |       |             |
| 12 | 2     |   |        |   |       |             |
| 16 | 2     |   |        |   |       |             |
| 1  | 2.700 |   | 20.000 |   | 1.540 |             |
| 2  | 2.65  |   | 19.300 |   | 0.900 |             |
|    | 8.00  | 0 | 1      |   |       |             |
|    | 1.00  |   | 3.00   |   | 3.00  | 0           |
| 1  | 0.01  |   | 0.40   |   | 1.00  | 1.00 4.00   |
| 2  | 0.05  |   | 0.40   |   | 1.00  | 1.00 4.00   |
| 1  | 0.00  |   | 1.00   |   | 2.00  | 10.00 15.00 |
| 2  | 0.00  |   | 0.80   |   | 1.50  | 8.00 12.00  |

---

b. Output Data, File VDOU.DAT

---

FOOTING IN GRANULAR SOIL - SCHMERTMANN

NUMBER OF PROBLEMS= 1      NUMBER OF NODAL POINTS= 17  
NUMBER OF NODAL POINT AT BOTTOM OF FOUNDATION= 7  
NUMBER OF DIFFERENT SOIL LAYERS= 2      INCREMENT DEPTH= 0.50 FT

COLLAPSIBLE SOIL

RECTANGULAR SLAB FOUNDATION

DEPTH OF FOUNDATION = 3.00 FEET  
TOTAL DEPTH OF THE SOIL PROFILE = 8.00 FEET

|         |                |
|---------|----------------|
| ELEMENT | NUMBER OF SOIL |
| 1       | 1              |
| 2       | 1              |
| 3       | 1              |
| 4       | 1              |
| 5       | 1              |
| 6       | 1              |
| 7       | 1              |

---

Table F-7. Continued

---

|    |   |
|----|---|
| 8  | 1 |
| 9  | 1 |
| 10 | 1 |
| 11 | 1 |
| 12 | 2 |
| 13 | 2 |
| 14 | 2 |
| 15 | 2 |
| 16 | 2 |

| MATERIAL | SPECIFIC GRAVITY | WATER CONTENT, % | VOID RATIO |
|----------|------------------|------------------|------------|
| 1        | 2.700            | 20.000           | 1.540      |
| 2        | 2.650            | 19.300           | 0.900      |

DEPTH TO WATER TABLE = 8.00 FEET

DISPLACEMENTS AT EACH DEPTH OUTPUT

EQUILIBRIUM SATURATED PROFILE ABOVE WATER TABLE

APPLIED PRESSURE ON FOUNDATION= 1.00 TSF  
LENGTH = 3.00 FEET WIDTH = 3.00 FEET

CENTER OF FOUNDATION

| MATERIAL | APPLIED PRESSURE AT 5 POINTS IN UNITS OF TSF |      |      |      |      |
|----------|--|------|------|------|------|
|          | A  | BB   | B    | C    | D    |
| 1        | 0.01   | 0.40 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 4.00 |
| 2        | 0.05   | 0.40 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 4.00 |

| MATERIAL | STRAIN AT 5 POINTS IN PERCENT |      |      |       |       |
|----------|-------------------------------|------|------|-------|-------|
|          | A                             | BB   | B    | C     | D     |
| 1        | 0.00                          | 1.00 | 2.00 | 10.00 | 15.00 |
| 2        | 0.00                          | 0.80 | 1.50 | 8.00  | 12.00 |

COLLAPSE DISTRIBUTION ABOVE FOUNDATION DEPTH

| ELEMENT | DEPTH, FT | DELTA, FT |
|---------|-----------|-----------|
| 1       | 0.25      | 0.00007   |
| 2       | 0.75      | -0.02081  |
| 3       | 1.25      | -0.03052  |
| 4       | 1.75      | -0.03691  |
| 5       | 2.25      | -0.04169  |
| 6       | 2.75      | -0.07354  |

COLLAPSE DISTRIBUTION BELOW FOUNDATION

---

Table F-7. Concluded

| ELEMENT | DEPTH, FT | DELTA, FT |
|---------|-----------|-----------|
| 7       | 3.25      | -0.07999  |
| 8       | 3.75      | -0.07955  |
| 9       | 4.25      | -0.07834  |
| 10      | 4.75      | -0.07674  |
| 11      | 5.25      | -0.07516  |
| 12      | 5.75      | -0.05423  |
| 13      | 6.25      | -0.05269  |
| 14      | 6.75      | -0.05171  |
| 15      | 7.25      | -0.05119  |
| 16      | 7.75      | -0.05104  |

SOIL COLLAPSE NEXT TO FOUNDATION EXCLUDING COLLAPSE  
IN SUBSOIL BENEATH FOUNDATION = -0.10171 FEET  
SUBSOIL COLLAPSE = -0.32532 FEET  
TOTAL COLLAPSE = -0.42702 FEET

Table F-8

Listing of Program VDISPL

```

C   PREDICTION OF VERTICAL MOVEMENT, PROGRAM VDISPL.FOR
C   DEVELOPED BY L. D. JOHNSON
C   INPUT PARAMETERS
C     1ST LINE: NAME OF PROBLEM (20A4)
C     2ND LINE: NPROB NOPT NBPRES NNP NBX NMAT DX (6I5,F10.2)
C     3RD LINE: N IE(N,M) (2I5)
C   3RD LINE REPEATED FOR EACH NEW MATERIAL; LAST LINE IS NEL NMAT
C     4TH LINE: M G(M) WC(M) EO(M) (I5,3F10.3)
C   4TH LINE REPEATED FOR EACH NEW LAYER M UNTIL M=NMAT
C     5TH LINE: DGWT IOPTION NOUT (F10.2,2I5)
C     6TH LINE: Q,BLEN,BWID,MRECT (3F10.2,I5)
C     7TH LINE: IF(NOPT.EQ.0) M SP(M) CS(M) CC(M) PM(M) (I5,4F10.2)
C     7TH LINE: IF(NOPT.EQ.1) M PO(M) P1(M) QC(M) (I5,3F10.2)
C     7TH LINE: IF(NOPT.EQ.2 OR 4) M QC(M) (I5,F10.2)
C     7TH LINE: IF(NOPT.EQ.3) M PRES(M,J),J=1,5 (I5,5F10.2)
C   7TH LINE REPEATED FOR EACH DIFFERENT MATERIAL M UNTIL M=NMAT
C     8TH LINE: IF(NOPT.EQ.0) XA XF (2F10.2)
C     8TH LINE: IF(NOPT.EQ.2.OR 4) TIME (F10.2)
C     8TH LINE: IF(NOPT.EQ.3) M STRA(M,J),J=1,5 (I5,5F10.2)
C   ABOVE LINE REPEATED FOR EACH DIFFERENT MATERIAL UNTIL M=NMAT
C   DESCRIPTION OF INPUT PARAMETERS
C     NAME OF PROBLEM Insert title of your problem
C     NPROB number of problems to solve with different active zone
C           depths,groundwater level, moisture profile, and
C           foundation dimensions

```

Table F-8. Continued

---

|   |                  |  |
|---|------------------|--|
| C | NOPT             | Option for model, =0 for consolidation swell (MECH)    |
| C |                  | =1 for Leonards and Frost                              |
| C |                  | =2 for Schmertmann                                     |
| C |                  | =3 for Collapsible soil                                |
| C |                  | =4 for elastic soil settlement                         |
| C | NBPRES           | Option for foundation, =1 for rectangular slab and     |
| C |                  | =2 for long strip footing                              |
| C | NNP              | Total number of nodal points                           |
| C | NBX              | Number of nodal point at bottom of foundation          |
| C | NMAT             | Total number of different soil layers, < 10            |
| C | DX               | Increment of depth, ft                                 |
| C | N                | Element number   |
| C | IE(N,1)          | Number of soil layer M associated with element N       |
| C | M                | Number of soil layer                                   |
| C | G(M)             | Specific gravity of soil layer M                       |
| C | WC(M)            | Water content of soil layer M, Percent                 |
| C | EO(M)            | Initial void ratio of soil layer M                     |
| C | DGWT             | Depth to hydrostatic water table, ft; If IOPTION =2,   |
| C |                  | set DGWT=XA+UWA/0.03125 where UWA= suction (or         |
| C |                  | positive value of the negative pore water pressure) at |
| C |                  | depth XA   |
| C | IOPTION          | Equilibrium moisture profile, = 0 for saturation above |
| C |                  | the water table; if NOPT=0, then =1 for hydrostatic    |
| C |                  | with shallow water table, method 2 or =2 for           |
| C |                  | hydrostatic without shallow water table                |
| C | NOUT             | Amount of output data, =0 only heave computations and  |
| C |                  | =1 for heave and pore pressure at each depth           |
| C |                  | increment  |
| C | Q                | Applied pressure on foundation, tsf                    |
| C | BLEN             | Length of foundation or 0.0 if NBPRES = 2, feet        |
| C | BWID             | Width of foundation or long continuous footing, feet   |
| C | MRECT            | Location of calculation, =0 for center and =1          |
| C |                  | for corner of rectangle or edge of long footing        |
| C | SP(M)            | Swell pressure of soil layer M, tsf                    |
| C | CS(M)            | Swell index of soil layer M                            |
| C | CC(M)            | Compression index of soil layer M                      |
| C | PM(M)            | Maximum past pressure, tsf                             |
| C | PO(M)            | Dilatometer A pressure, tsf                            |
| C | P1(M)            | Dilatometer B pressure, tsf                            |
| C | QC(M)            | If NOPT=2, cone penetration resistance, tsf            |
| C |                  | If NOPT=4, elastic soil modulus, tsf                   |
| C | PRES(M)          | Applied pressure at 5 points from collapsible soil,tsf |
| C | STRA(M)          | Strain at 5 points from collapsible soil               |
| C | XA               | Depth of active zone of heave, feet                    |
| C | XF               | Depth from ground surface to the depth that the active |
| C |                  | zone begins, feet                                      |
| C | TIME             | Time in years after Construction for Schmertmann model |
|   | PARAMETER        | (NL=30,NQ=101)   |
|   | COMMON/SLA/P(NQ) | ,IE(NQ,1),EO(NL),DX,NBX,NEL,PII,NOUT                   |
|   | DIMENSION        | PP(NQ),G(NL),WC(NL),HED(20)                            |

---

Table F-8. Continued

---

```

OPEN(5,FILE='VDIN.DAT')
OPEN(6,FILE='VDOU.DAT')
READ(5,1) (HED(I),I=1,20)
WRITE(6,1) (HED(I),I=1,20)
1 FORMAT(20A4)
GAW=0.03125
PII=3.14159265
NP=1
READ(5,2) NPROB,NOPT,NBPRES,NNP,NBX,NMAT,DX
2 FORMAT(6I5,F10.2)
WRITE(6,3) NPROB,NNP,NBX,NMAT,DX
3 FORMAT(/,1X,'NUMBER OF PROBLEMS=',I5,5X,'NUMBER OF NODAL POINTS='
1,I5,/,1X,'NUMBER OF NODAL POINT AT BOTTOM OF FOUNDATION=',I11,/,1X
2,'NUMBER OF DIFFERENT SOIL LAYERS=',I5,5X,'INCREMENT DEPTH=',F10.2
3,' FT',/)
IF(NOPT.EQ.0)WRITE(6,4)
4 FORMAT(10X,'CONSOLIDATION SWELL MODEL',/)
IF(NOPT.EQ.1)WRITE(6,5)
5 FORMAT(10X,'LEONARDS AND FROST MODEL',/)
IF(NOPT.EQ.2)WRITE(6,6)
6 FORMAT(10X,'SCHMERTMANN MODEL',/)
IF(NOPT.EQ.3)WRITE(6,7)
7 FORMAT(10X,'COLLAPSIBLE SOIL',/)
IF(NOPT.EQ.4)WRITE(6,8)
8 FORMAT(10X,'ELASTIC SOIL',/)
IF(NBPRES.EQ.1)WRITE(6,9)
9 FORMAT(10X,'RECTANGULAR SLAB FOUNDATION',/)
IF(NBPRES.EQ.2)WRITE(6,10)
10 FORMAT(10X,'LONG CONTINUOUS STRIP FOUNDATION',/)
DEPF=DX*FLOAT(NBX-1)
WRITE(6,11)DEPF
11 FORMAT(1X,'DEPTH OF FOUNDATION =',12X,F10.2,' FEET')
DEPPR = DX*FLOAT(NNP-1)
WRITE(6,12)DEPPR
12 FORMAT(1X,'TOTAL DEPTH OF THE SOIL PROFILE =',F10.2,' FEET')
NEL=NNP-1
L=0
WRITE(6,21)
21 FORMAT(1X,'ELEMENT NUMBER OF SOIL',/)
22 READ(5,2)N,IE(N,1)
25 L=L+1
IF(N-L)35,35,30
30 IE(L,1)=IE(L-1,1)
WRITE(6,32)L,IE(L,1)
32 FORMAT(I5,8X,I5)
GOTO 25
35 WRITE(6,32)L,IE(L,1)
IF(NEL-L)40,40,22
40 CONTINUE
WRITE(6,390)

```

---

Table F-8. Continued

---

```
390 FORMAT(/,1X,'MATERIAL    SPECIFIC GRAVITY    WATER CONTENT, %    ',
1'VOID RATIO',/)
400 READ(5,401) M,G(M),WC(M),EO(M)
401 FORMAT(I5,3F10.3)
    IF(NMAT-M)403,405,400
403 WRITE(6,404) M
404 FORMAT(/,5X,'ERROR IN MATERIAL', I5)
    STOP
405 DO 410 M=1,NMAT
    WRITE(6,407) M,G(M),WC(M),EO(M)
407 FORMAT(I5,3F18.3)
410 CONTINUE
1000 READ(5,45) DGWT,IOPTION,NOUT
    45 FORMAT(F10.2,2I5)
    READ(5,46)Q,BLEN,BWID,MRECT
    46 FORMAT(3F10.2,I5)
    WRITE(6,50) DGWT
    50 FORMAT(1X,'DEPTH TO WATER TABLE =' ,11X,F10.2,' FEET',/)
    IF(NOUT.EQ.1)WRITE(6,51)
    IF(NOUT.EQ.0)WRITE(6,52)
    51 FORMAT(1X,'DISPLACEMENTS AT EACH DEPTH OUTPUT',/)
    52 FORMAT(1X,'TOTAL DISPLACEMENTS ONLY',/)
    IF(IOPTION.EQ.0.OR.NOPT.EQ.1)WRITE(6,61)
    61 FORMAT(1X,'EQUILIBRIUM SATURATED PROFILE ABOVE WATER TABLE',/)
    IF(IOPTION.EQ.1.AND.NOPT.EQ.0)WRITE(6,62)
    62 FORMAT(1X,'EQUILIBRIUM HYDROSTATIC PROFILE ABOVE WATER TABLE',/)
    WRITE(6,90)Q,BLEN,BWID
    90 FORMAT(/,1X,'APPLIED PRESSURE ON FOUNDATION=' ,F10.2,' TSF',/,1X,
1'LENGTH =' ,F10.2,' FEET',5X,'WIDTH =' ,F10.2,' FEET',/)
    IF(MRECT.EQ.0)WRITE(6,91)
    91 FORMAT(9X,'CENTER OF FOUNDATION',/)
    IF(MRECT.EQ.1)WRITE(6,92)
    92 FORMAT(9X,'CORNER OF SLAB OR EDGE OF LONG STRIP FOOTING',/)
C      CALCULATION OF EFFECTIVE OVERBURDEN PRESSURE
105 P(1)=0.0
    PP(1)=0.0
    DXX=DX
    DO 110 I=2,NNP
    MTYP=IE(I-1,1)
    WCC=WC(MTYP)/100.
    GAMM=G(MTYP)*GAW*(1.+WCC)/(1.+EO(MTYP))
    IF(DXX.GT.DGWT)GAMM=GAMM-GAW
    P(I)=P(I-1)+DX*GAMM
    PP(I)=P(I)
    DXX=DXX+DX
110 CONTINUE
    IF(NOPT.NE.0.OR.IOPTION.EQ.0)GOTO 120
    MO=IFIX(DGWT/DX)
    IF(MO.GT.NNP)MO=NNP
    DO 117 I=1,MO
```

---

Table F-8. Continued

---

```

      BN=DGWT/DX-FLOAT(I-1)
      P(I)=P(I)+BN*DX*GAW
117 CONTINUE
120 CALL SLAB(Q,BLEN,BWID,MRECT,NBPRES,PP(NBX))
C      CALCULATION OF MOVEMENT FROM MODELS
      IF(NOPT.EQ.0) CALL MECH(NMAT)
      IF(NOPT.EQ.1) CALL LEON(Q,NMAT,DGWT,BWID,PP,NBPRES)
      IF(NOPT.EQ.2) CALL SCHMERT(Q,NMAT,DGWT,BWID,PP,NBPRES,2)
      IF(NOPT.EQ.3) CALL COLL(NMAT)
      IF(NOPT.EQ.4) CALL SCHMERT(Q,NMAT,DGWT,BWID,PP,NBPRES,4)
      NP=NP+1
      IF(NP.GT.NPROB) GOTO 200
      GOTO 1000
200 CLOSE(5,STATUS='KEEP')
      CLOSE(6,STATUS='KEEP')
      STOP
      END
C
C
      SUBROUTINE MECH(NMAT)
      PARAMETER(NL=30,NQ=101)
      COMMON/SLA/P(NQ),IE(NQ,1),EO(NL),DX,NBX,NEL,PII,NOUT
      DIMENSION SP(NL),CS(NL),CC(NL),PM(NL)
      WRITE(6,5)
5  FORMAT(/,1X,'MATERIAL SWELL PRESSURE, SWELL COMPRESSION
1  MAXIMUM PAST',/,1X,' TSF INDEX
2  INDEX PRESSURE,TSF',/)
      DO 10 I = 1,NMAT
      READ(5,11) M,SP(M),CS(M),CC(M),PM(M)
      IF(PM(M).LT.SP(M)) WRITE(6,14) SP(M),PM(M)
      IF(PM(M).LT.SP(M)) PM(M)=SP(M)
      WRITE(6,24)M,SP(M),CS(M),CC(M),PM(M)
10 CONTINUE
11 FORMAT(I5,4F10.4)
14 FORMAT(/,1X,'SWELL PRESSURE',F10.2,' WAS SET GREATER THAN MAXIM',
1'UM PAST PRESSURE',F10.2,/,1X,'WHICH IS NOT POSSIBLE; SWELL PRESSU
2RE SET EQUAL TO MAXIMUM PAST PRESSURE',/)
24 FORMAT(1X,I5,4F15.3)
C
      READ(5,30)XA,XF
30 FORMAT(2F10.2)
      WRITE(6,31) XA,XF
31 FORMAT(/,8X,'ACTIVE ZONE DEPTH (FT) =' ,F10.2,/,1X,'DEPTH ACTIVE ZO
1NE BEGINS (FT) =' ,F10.2,/)
      DELH1=0.0
      DXX=0.0
      CALL PSAD(N1,N2,XA,XF,DXX,DX,NBX)
      IF(N1.GE.N2) GOTO 50
      IF(NOUT.EQ.0) GOTO 50
      WRITE(6,32)

```

---



Table F-8. Continued

---

```
32 FORMAT(/,1X,'HEAVE DISTRIBUTION ABOVE FOUNDATION DEPTH',/,1X,'ELEM
1ENT    DEPTH,FT    DELTA HEAVE,FT    EXCESS PORE PRESSURE,TSF',/)
DO 40 I=N1,N2
MTYP=IE(I,1)
PR=(P(I)+P(I+1))/2.
CA=SP(MTYP)/PR
CB=SP(MTYP)/PM(MTYP)
CBB=PM(MTYP)/PR
E=EO(MTYP)+CS(MTYP)*ALOG10(CA)
IF(PR.GT.PM(MTYP)) E=EO(MTYP)+CS(MTYP)*ALOG10(CB)+CC(MTYP)*ALOG10
1(CBB)
DEL=(E-EO(MTYP))/(1.+EO(MTYP))
IF(NOUT.EQ.0) GOTO 36
DELP=SP(MTYP)-PR
WRITE(6,110) I,DXX,DEL,DELP
36 DELH1=DELH1+DX*DEL
DXX=DXX+DX
40 CONTINUE
50 DELH2=0.0
IF(NBX.GT.NEL) GOTO 120
DXX=FLOAT(NBX)*DX-DX/2.
IF(NOUT.EQ.0) GOTO 65
WRITE(6,60)
60 FORMAT(/,1X,'HEAVE DISTRIBUTION BELOW FOUNDATION',/,1X,'ELEMENT
1 DEPTH,FT    DELTA HEAVE,FT    EXCESS PORE PRESSURE,TSF',/)
65 DO 100 I=NBX,NEL
MTYP=IE(I,1)
PR=(P(I)+P(I+1))/2.
CA=SP(MTYP)/PR
CB=SP(MTYP)/PM(MTYP)
CBB=PM(MTYP)/PR
E=EO(MTYP)+CS(MTYP)*ALOG10(CA)
IF(PR.GT.PM(MTYP))E=EO(MTYP)+CS(MTYP)*ALOG10(CB)+CC(MTYP)*ALOG10
1(CBB)
DEL=(E-EO(MTYP))/(1.+EO(MTYP))
IF(NOUT.EQ.0) GOTO 80
DELP=SP(MTYP)-PR
WRITE(6,110) I,DXX,DEL,DELP
80 DELH2=DELH2+DX*DEL
DXX=DXX+DX
100 CONTINUE
110 FORMAT(I5,F13.2,F18.5,5X,F18.5)
DEL1=DELH1+DELH2
WRITE(6,305) DELH1,DELH2,DEL1
305 FORMAT(/,1X,'SOIL HEAVE NEXT TO FOUNDATION EXCLUDING HEAVE',/,1X,
1'IN SUBSOIL BENEATH FOUNDATION =' ,F8.5,' FEET',/,14X,'SUBSOIL ',
2'MOVEMENT =' ,F8.5,' FEET',/,19X,'TOTAL HEAVE =' ,F8.5,' FEET')
120 RETURN
END
```

C

Table F-8. Continued

---

```

C
SUBROUTINE SLAB(Q,BLEN,BWID,MRECT,NBPRES,WT)
PARAMETER (NL=30,NQ=101)
COMMON/SLA/P(NQ),IE(NQ,1),EO(NL),DX,NBX,NEL,PII,NOUT
C
C      CALCULATION OF SURCHARGE PRESSURE FROM STRUCTURE
C
      NNP=NEL+1
      ANBX=FLOAT(NBX)*DX
      DXX=0.0
      BPRE1=Q-WT
      BPRES=BPRE1
      DO 100 I=NBX,NNP
      IF(DXX.LT.0.01) GOTO 80
      MTYP=IE(I-1,1)
      IF(NBPRES.EQ.2) GOTO 70
      BL=BLEN
      BW=BWID
      BPR=BPRES
      IF(MRECT.EQ.1) GOTO 50
      BL=BLEN/2.
      BW=BWID/2.
50  VE2=(BL**2.+BW**2.+DXX**2.)/(DXX**2.)
      VE=VE2**0.5
      AN=BL*BW/(DXX**2.)
      AN2=AN**2.
      ENM=(2.*AN*VE/(VE2+AN2))*(VE2+1.)/VE2
      FNM=2.*AN*VE/(VE2-AN2)
      IF(MRECT.EQ.1)BPR=BPRES/4.
      AB=ATAN(FNM)
      IF(FNM.LT.0.) AB=PII+AB
      P(I)=P(I)+BPR*(ENM+AB)/PII
      GOTO 90
70  DB=DXX/BWID
      PS=-0.157-0.22*DB
      IF(MRECT.EQ.0.AND.DB.LT.2.5)PS=-0.28*DB
      PS=10.**PS
      P(I)=P(I)+BPRES*PS
      GOTO 90
80  P(I)=P(I)+BPRES
90  DXX=DXX+DX
100 CONTINUE
      RETURN
      END
C
C
C
SUBROUTINE PSAD(N1,N2,XA,XF,DXX,DX,NBX)
AN1=XF/DX
AN2=XA/DX

```

---

Table F-8. Continued

---

```
N1=IFIX(AN1)+1
N2=AN2
DXX=XF+DX/2.
N3=NBX-1
IF(N2.GT.N3)N2=N3
CONTINUE
RETURN
END

C
C
SUBROUTINE LEON(Q,NMAT,DGWT,BWID,PP,NBPRES)
PARAMETER(NL=30,NQ=101)
COMMON/SLA/P(NQ),IE(NQ,1),EO(NL),DX,NBX,NEL,PII,NOUT
DIMENSION PO(NL),P1(NL),QC(NL),PP(NQ)
WRITE(6,5)
5 FORMAT(/,1X,'MATERIAL    A PRESSURE, TSF    B PRESSURE, TSF    CONE
1 RESISTANCE, TSF',/)
DO 10 I = 1,NMAT
READ(5,15)M,PO(M),P1(M),QC(M)
WRITE(6,20)M,PO(M),P1(M),QC(M)
10 CONTINUE
15 FORMAT(I5,3F10.2)
20 FORMAT(I5,3F18.2)
CALL SPLINE
NNP=NEL+1
GAW=0.03125
DELH=0.0
DEL=0.0
QNET=Q-PP(NBX)
WRITE(6,17)QNET
17 FORMAT(/,1X,'QNET=',F10.5)
DXX=DX*FLOAT(NBX) - DX/2.
C1=1 - 0.5*PP(NBX)/QNET
IF(C1.LT.0.5) C1=0.5
IF(NOUT.EQ.0) GOTO 30
WRITE(6,25)
25 FORMAT(/,1X,'ELEMENT  DEPTH,    SETTLEMENT,    KO    QC/SIGV  PHI,
1 DEGREES',/,1X,'          FT          FT',/)
30 DO 300 I=NBX,NEL
MTYP=IE(I,1)
PR1=(PP(I+1)+PP(I))/2.
PR=(P(I+1)+P(I))/2.
UW=0.0
IF(DXX.GT.DGWT) UW=(DXX-DGWT)*GAW
AKD = (PO(MTYP)-UW)/PR1
AID = (P1(MTYP)-PO(MTYP))/(PO(MTYP)-UW)
ED = 34.7*(P1(MTYP)-PO(MTYP))
RQC = QC(MTYP)/PR1
AKO=0.376+0.095*AKD-0.0017*RQC
EC = AKO
```

---

Table F-8. Continued

---

```
S3 = RQC
MM=0
UC=0.0
CALL BICUBE(UC,EC,S3)
S3=RQC
PHIPS=UC*PII/180.
AKA = (1-SIN(PHIPS))/(1+SIN(PHIPS))
AKP = (1+SIN(PHIPS))/(1-SIN(PHIPS))
AAK = AKO
IF(AKO.LE.AKA)AAK=AKA
IF(AKO.GE.AKP)AAK=AKP
IF(ABS(AAK-AKO).GT.0.01)EC=AAK
IF(ABS(AAK-AKO).GT.0.01) CALL BICUBE(UC,EC,S3)
S3=RQC
PHIAX=UC
IF(UC.GT.32.0) PHIAX=UC-((UC-32.)/3.)
PHI=PHIAX*PII/180.
OCR=(AAK/(1-SIN(PHI)))**(1/(0.8*SIN(PHI)))
PM=OCR*PR1
ROC=(PM-PR1)/(PR-PR1)
IF(ROC.LT.0.0)ROC=0.0
RNC=(PR-PM)/(PR-PR1)
IF(RNC.LT.0.0)RNC=0.0
IF(NBPRES.EQ.2) GOTO 100
ANN=0.5*BWID/DX + DX*FLOAT(NBX-1)
NN=IFIX(ANN)
SIGM=PR1
AIZP=0.5+0.1*(QNET/SIGM)**0.5
DEPT=DXX-FLOAT(NBX-1)*DX
AIZ=0.1+(AIZP-0.1)*DEPT/(0.5*BWID)
IF(DEPT.GT.0.5*BWID)AIZ=AIZP+AIZP/3.0-AIZP*DEPT/(1.5*BWID)
IF(DEPT.GT.2*BWID)AIZ=0.0
GOTO 200
100 ANN=BWID/DX + DX*FLOAT(NBX-1)
NN=IFIX(ANN)
SIGM=PR1
AIZP=0.5+0.1*(QNET/SIGM)**0.5
DEPT=DXX-FLOAT(NBX-1)*DX
AIZ=0.2+(AIZP-0.2)*DEPT/BWID
IF(DEPT.GT.BWID)AIZ=AIZP+AIZP/3.-AIZP*DEPT/(3.*BWID)
IF(DEPT.GT.4*BWID)AIZ=0.0
200 F=0.7
IF(ROC.LE.0.0)F=0.9
DEL=-C1*QNET*AIZ*DX*(ROC/(3.5*ED)+RNC/(F*ED))
DELH=DELH+DEL
IF(NOUT.EQ.1)WRITE(6,310)I,DXX,DEL,EC,S3,UC
DXX=DXX+DX
300 CONTINUE
310 FORMAT(I5,F10.2,F13.5,3F10.2)
WRITE(6,320) DELH
```

---

Table F-8. Continued

---

```
320 FORMAT(/,1X,'SETTLEMENT BENEATH FOUNDATION=',F10.5,' FEET',/)
RETURN
END
C
C
BLOCK DATA
DIMENSION XX(100),YY(100),U(100)
COMMON/SPL/XX,YY,U
DATA(XX(I),I=1,99,11)/9*10./,(XX(I),I=2,99,11)/9*20./,(XX(I),I=3,
199,11)/9*30./,(XX(I),I=4,99,11)/9*50./,(XX(I),I=5,99,11)/9*100./,
2(XX(I),I=6,99,11)/9*200./,(XX(I),I=7,99,11)/9*300./,(XX(I),I=8,99,
311)/9*500./,(XX(I),I=9,99,11)/9*1000./,(XX(I),I=10,99,11)/9*2000./
4,(XX(I),I=11,99,11)/9*3000./
DATA(YY(I),I=1,11)/11*0.16/,(YY(I),I=12,22)/11*0.20/,(YY(I),I=23,
133)/11*0.4/,(YY(I),I=34,44)/11*0.6/,(YY(I),I=45,55)/11*0.8/,(YY(I)
2,I=56,66)/11*1.0/,(YY(I),I=67,77)/11*2.0/,(YY(I),I=78,88)/11*4./,
3(YY(I),I=89,99)/11*6./
DATA(U(I),I=1,99)/25.,30.1,33.2,36.4,39.9,42.8,44.4,46.,48.5,50.5,
152.,24.8,30.,33.,36.2,39.7,42.6,44.2,45.8,48.2,50.2,51.5,24.5,29.7
2,32.6,35.6,39.3,42.1,43.7,45.4,47.5,49.7,51.,24.2,29.5,32.2,35.1,
338.8,41.7,43.3,45.,47.2,49.,50.,24.,29.2,31.7,34.7,38.4,41.4,42.9,
444.6,46.8,48.6,49.7,23.8,28.8,31.5,34.4,38.,41.,42.5,44.3,46.5,48.
54,49.5,23.,27.5,30.,33.,36.6,39.6,41.2,43.,45.4,47.2,48.4,22.,26.,
628.3,31.2,34.5,37.7,39.7,41.5,43.7,45.7,47.,21.,25.,27.2,30.,33.8,
736.,38.2,40.3,42.7,44.8,46.1/
END
C
C
SUBROUTINE SPLINE
C
SPLINE TO CALCULATE VARIABLES
DIMENSION XX(100),YY(100),U(100)
COMMON/SPL/XX,YY,U
COMMON/SPLIN/X(100),Y(100),S(100)
COMMON/BICUB/UX(100),UY(100),UXY(100)
NCONF=11
NSTR=9
NCT=1
N=NCONF
210 ID=NCONF*NCT
II=ID-NCONF+1
JJ=NCONF-1
DO 220 I=II,ID
J=NCONF-JJ
X(J)=XX(I)
Y(J)=U(I)
220 JJ=JJ-1
CALL SOLV(N)
IC=1
DO 225 I=II,ID
UX(I)=S(IC)
```

---

Table F-8. Continued

---

```

225 IC=IC+1
    NCT=NCT+1
    IF(NCT.LE.NSTR)GO TO 210
    NCT=1
    N=NSTR
230 IT=NCONF*(NSTR-1)
    ID=IT+NCT
    II=ID-IT
    JJ=NSTR-1
    DO 235 I=II, ID, NCONF
    J=NSTR-JJ
    X(J)=YY(I)
    Y(J)=U(I)
235 JJ=JJ-1
    CALL SOLV(N)
    IC=1
    DO 240 I=II, ID, NCONF
    UY(I)=S(IC)
240 IC=IC+1
    NCT=NCT+1
    IF(NCT.LE.NCONF)GO TO 230
    NCT=1
    N=NCONF
243 ID=NCONF*NCT
    II=ID-NCONF+1
    JJ=NCONF-1
    DO 245 I=II, ID
    J=NCONF-JJ
    X(J)=XX(I)
    Y(J)=UY(I)
245 JJ=JJ-1
    CALL SOLV(N)
    IC=1
    DO 250 I=II, ID
    UXY(I)=S(IC)
250 IC=IC+1
300 FORMAT(I5, F15.5)
    NCT=NCT+1
    IF(NCT.LE.NSTR)GO TO 243
    RETURN
    END
C
C
C
    SUBROUTINE SOLV(N)
    COMMON/SPLIN/X(100),Y(100),S(100)
    DIMENSION A(100),B(100),C(100),D(100),F(100),GG(100),H(100)
    N1=N-1
    DO 2010 I=2,N
2010 H(I)=X(I)-X(I-1)

```

---

Table F-8. Continued

---

```
      DO 2020 I=2,N
2020  A(I)=1./H(I)
      A(1)=0.
      DO 2030 I=2,N1
      T1=1./H(I)+1./H(I+1)
2030  B(I)=2.*T1
      B(1)=2.*(1./H(2))
      B(N)=2.*(1./H(N))
      DO 2040 I=1,N1
2040  C(I)=1./H(I+1)
      C(N)=0.
      DO 2050 I=2,N1
      T1=(Y(I)-Y(I-1))/(H(I)*H(I))
      T2=(Y(I+1)-Y(I))/(H(I+1)*H(I+1))
2050  D(I)=3.*(T1+T2)
      T1=(Y(2)-Y(1))/(H(2)*H(2))
      D(1)=3.*T1
      T2=(Y(N)-Y(N-1))/(H(N)*H(N))
      D(N)=3.*T2
C     FORWARD PASS
      GG(1)=C(1)/B(1)
      DO 2100 I=2,N1
      T1=B(I)-A(I)*GG(I-1)
2100  GG(I)=C(I)/T1
      F(1)=D(1)/B(1)
      DO 2110 I=2,N
      TEM=D(I)-A(I)*F(I-1)
      T1=B(I)-A(I)*GG(I-1)
2110  F(I)=TEM/T1
C     BACK SOLUTION
      S(N)=F(N)
      I=N-1
2120  S(I)=F(I)-GG(I)*S(I+1)
      IF(I.EQ.1) GOTO 2150
      I=I-1
      GO TO 2120
2150  CONTINUE
      RETURN
      END
C
C
      SUBROUTINE BICUBE(UC,EC,S3)
      DIMENSION XX(100),YY(100),U(100)
      COMMON/SPL/XX,YY,U
      COMMON/BICUB/UX(100),UY(100),UXY(100)
      DIMENSION H(16),KE(100,4)
      DATA((KE(K,I),I=1,4),K=1,10)/1,2,13,12,2,3,14,13,3,4,15,14,4,5,16,
115,5,6,17,16,6,7,18,17,7,8,19,18,8,9,20,19,9,10,21,20,10,11,22,21/
      DATA((KE(K,I),I=1,4),K=11,20)/12,13,24,23,13,14,25,24,14,15,26,25,
115,16,27,26,16,17,28,27,17,18,29,28,18,19,30,29,19,20,31,30,20,21,
```

---

Table F-8. Continued

---

```

232,31,21,22,33,32/
  DATA((KE(K,I),I=1,4),K=21,30)/23,24,35,34,24,25,36,35,25,26,37,36,
126,27,38,37,27,28,39,38,28,29,40,39,29,30,41,40,30,31,42,41,31,32,
243,42,32,33,44,43/
  DATA((KE(K,I),I=1,4),K=31,40)/34,35,46,45,35,36,47,46,36,37,48,47,
137,38,49,48,38,39,50,49,39,40,51,50,40,41,52,51,41,42,53,52,42,43,
254,53,43,44,55,54/
  DATA((KE(K,I),I=1,4),K=41,50)/45,46,57,56,46,47,58,57,47,48,59,58,
148,49,60,59,49,50,61,60,50,51,62,61,51,52,63,62,52,53,64,63,53,54,
265,64,54,55,66,65/
  DATA((KE(K,I),I=1,4),K=51,60)/56,57,68,67,57,58,69,68,58,59,70,69,
159,60,71,70,60,61,72,71,61,62,73,72,62,63,74,73,63,64,75,74,64,65,
276,75,65,66,77,76/
  DATA((KE(K,I),I=1,4),K=61,70)/67,68,79,78,68,69,80,79,69,70,81,80,
170,71,82,81,71,72,83,82,72,73,84,83,73,74,85,84,74,75,86,85,75,76,
287,86,76,77,88,87/
  DATA((KE(K,I),I=1,4),K=71,80)/78,79,90,89,79,80,91,90,80,81,92,91,
181,82,93,92,82,83,94,93,83,84,95,94,84,85,96,95,85,86,97,96,86,87,
298,97,87,88,99,98/
  DO 400 M=1,80
  I=KE(M,1)
  J=KE(M,2)
  K=KE(M,3)
  L=KE(M,4)
  IF(S3.GE.XX(I).AND.S3.LE.XX(J))GOTO 410
  GOTO 400
410 IF(EC.GE.YY(I).AND.EC.LE.YY(L))GOTO 420
400 CONTINUE
420 CONTINUE
  AA=XX(J)-XX(I)
  BB=YY(L)-YY(I)
  S3N=S3-XX(I)
  ECN=EC-YY(I)
  SL=S3N/AA
  T=ECN/BB
  S2=SL*SL
  S3=SL*SL*SL
  T2=T*T
  T3=T2*T
  F1=1.-3.*S2+2.*S3
  F2=S2*(3.-2.*SL)
  F3=AA*SL*(1.-SL)*(1.-SL)
  F4=AA*S2*(SL-1.)
  DO 430 KJ=1,2
  G1=1.-3.*T2+2.*T3
  G2=T2*(3.-2.*T)
  G3=BB*T*(1.-T)*(1.-T)
  G4=BB*T2-2.*T
  H(1)=F1*G1*U(I)
  H(2)=F2*G1*U(J)

```

---



Table F-8. Continued

---

```
H(3)=F2*G2*U(K)
H(4)=F1*G2*U(L)
H(5)=F3*G1*UX(I)
H(6)=F4*G1*UX(J)
H(7)=F4*G2*UX(K)
H(8)=F3*G2*UX(L)
H(9)=F1*G3*UY(I)
H(10)=F2*G3*UY(J)
H(11)=F2*G4*UY(K)
H(12)=F1*G4*UY(L)
H(13)=F3*G3*UXY(I)
H(14)=F4*G4*UXY(J)
H(15)=F4*G4*UXY(K)
H(16)=F3*G4*UXY(L)
UC=0.0
DO 480 KK=1,16
480 UC=UC+H(KK)
430 CONTINUE
RETURN
END
C
C
SUBROUTINE SCHMERT(Q,NMAT,DGWT,BWID,PP,NBPRES,JOPT)
PARAMETER(NL=30,NQ=101)
COMMON/SLA/P(NQ),IE(NQ,1),EO(NL),DX,NBX,NEL,PII,NOUT
DIMENSION QC(NL),PP(NQ)
IF(JOPT.EQ.2)WRITE(6,5)
5 FORMAT(/,1X,'MATERIAL CONE RESISTANCE, TSF',/)
IF(JOPT.EQ.4)WRITE(6,6)
6 FORMAT(/,1X,'MATERIAL ELASTIC MODULUS, TSF',/)
DO 10 I = 1,NMAT
READ(5,15)M,QC(M)
WRITE(6,20)M,QC(M)
10 CONTINUE
15 FORMAT(I5,F10.2)
20 FORMAT(I5,F18.2)
READ(5,30)TIME
30 FORMAT(F10.2)
WRITE(6,35)TIME
35 FORMAT(/,1X,'TIME AFTER CONSTRUCTION IN YEARS=',F10.2,/)
NNP=NEL+1
DELH=0.0
DEL=0.0
QNET=Q-PP(NBX)
DXX=DX*FLOAT(NBX) - DX/2.
C1=1 - 0.5*PP(NBX)/QNET
IF(C1.LT.0.5) C1=0.5
FF=TIME/0.1
CT=1+0.2*ALOG10(FF)
IF(NOUT.EQ.0) GOTO 40
```

---

Table F-8. Continued

---

```

WRITE(6,25)
25 FORMAT(/,1X,'ELEMENT      DEPTH, FT      SETTLEMENT, FT ',/)
40 DO 300 I=NBX,NEL
    MTYP=IE(I,1)
    PR1=(PP(I+1)+PP(I))/2.
    ESI=QC(MTYP)
    IF(NBPRES.EQ.1.AND.JOPT.EQ.2)ESI=2.5*QC(MTYP)
    IF(NBPRES.EQ.2.AND.JOPT.EQ.2)ESI=3.5*QC(MTYP)
    IF(NBPRES.EQ.2) GOTO 100
    ANN=0.5*BWID/DX + DX*FLOAT(NBX-1)
    NN=IFIX(ANN)
    SIGM=PR1
    AIZP=0.5+0.1*(QNET/SIGM)**0.5
    DEPT=DXX-FLOAT(NBX-1)*DX
    AIZ=0.1+(AIZP-0.1)*DEPT/(0.5*BWID)
    IF(DEPT.GT.0.5*BWID)AIZ=AIZP+AIZP/3.0-AIZP*DEPT/(1.5*BWID)
    IF(DEPT.GT.2*BWID)AIZ=0.0
    GOTO 200
100 ANN=BWID/DX + DX*FLOAT(NBX-1)
    NN=IFIX(ANN)
    SIGM=PR1
    AIZP=0.5+0.1*(QNET/SIGM)**0.5
    DEPT=DXX-FLOAT(NBX-1)*DX
    AIZ=0.2+(AIZP-0.2)*DEPT/BWID
    IF(DEPT.GT.BWID)AIZ=AIZP+AIZP/3.-AIZP*DEPT/(3.*BWID)
    IF(DEPT.GT.4*BWID)AIZ=0.0
200 DEL=-C1*CT*QNET*AIZ*DX/ESI
    DELH=DELH+DEL
    IF(NOUT.EQ.1)WRITE(6,310)I,DXX,DEL
    DXX=DXX+DX
300 CONTINUE
310 FORMAT(I5,F13.2,F18.5)
    WRITE(6,320) DELH
320 FORMAT(/,1X,'SETTLEMENT BENEATH FOUNDATION=',F10.5,' FEET',/)
    RETURN
    END
C
C
SUBROUTINE COLL(NMAT)
PARAMETER(NL=30,NQ=101)
COMMON/SLA/P(NQ),IE(NQ,1),EO(NL),DX,NBX,NEL,PII,NOUT
DIMENSION PRES(NL,5),STRA(NL,5)
WRITE(6,5)
5 FORMAT(/,10X,'APPLIED PRESSURE AT 5 POINTS IN UNITS OF TSF',/,1X,'
1MATERIAL      A          BB          B          C          D',/)
DO 10 I = 1,NMAT
    READ(5,11) M,(PRES(M,J),J=1,5)
    WRITE(6,11)M,(PRES(M,J),J=1,5)
10 CONTINUE
11 FORMAT(I5,5F10.2)

```

---

Table F-8. Continued

---

```
WRITE(6,15)
15 FORMAT(/,10X,'STRAIN AT 5 POINTS IN PERCENT',/1X,'MATERIAL      A
1      BB          B          C          D',/)
DO 20 I=1,NMAT
READ(5,21) M,(STRA(M,J),J=1,5)
WRITE(6,21)M,(STRA(M,J),J=1,5)
DO 19 K=1,5
STRA(M,K) = STRA(M,K)/100.
19 CONTINUE
20 CONTINUE
21 FORMAT(I5,5F10.2)
DELH1=0.0
DXX=DX/2.
IF(NBX.EQ.1) GOTO 50
IF(NOUT.EQ.0) GOTO 50
WRITE(6,32)
32 FORMAT(/,1X,'COLLAPSE DISTRIBUTION ABOVE FOUNDATION DEPTH',/1X,'E
1LEMENT      DEPTH,FT          DELTA,FT',/)
DO 40 I=1,NBX-1
MTY=IE(I,1)
PR=(P(I)+P(I+1))/2.
PRA=PRES(MTY,2)/PRES(MTY,1)
PRB=PRES(MTY,3)/PRES(MTY,2)
PRC=PRES(MTY,4)/PRES(MTY,1)
PRD=PRES(MTY,5)/PRES(MTY,4)
PRE=PRES(MTY,1)/PR
PRF=PRES(MTY,2)/PR
PRG=PRES(MTY,4)/PR
SA=(STRA(MTY,2)-STRA(MTY,1))/ALOG10(PRA)
SB=(STRA(MTY,3)-STRA(MTY,2))/ALOG10(PRB)
SC=(STRA(MTY,4)-STRA(MTY,1))/ALOG10(PRC)
SD=(STRA(MTY,5)-STRA(MTY,4))/ALOG10(PRD)
IF(PR.LE.PRES(MTY,2))DEB=-STRA(MTY,1)+SA*ALOG10(PRE)
IF(PR.GT.PRES(MTY,2))DEB=-STRA(MTY,2)+SB*ALOG10(PRF)
IF(PR.LE.PRES(MTY,4))DEA=-STRA(MTY,1)+SC*ALOG10(PRE)
IF(PR.GT.PRES(MTY,4))DEA=-STRA(MTY,4)+SD*ALOG10(PRG)
DEL=DEA-DEB
IF(NOUT.EQ.0) GOTO 36
WRITE(6,110) I,DXX,DEL
36 DELH1=DELH1+DX*DEL
DXX=DXX+DX
40 CONTINUE
50 DELH2=0.0
IF(NBX.GT.NEL) GOTO 120
DXX=FLOAT(NBX)*DX-DX/2.
IF(NOUT.EQ.0) GOTO 65
WRITE(6,60)
60 FORMAT(/,1X,'COLLAPSE DISTRIBUTION BELOW FOUNDATION',/1X,'ELEMENT
1      DEPTH,FT          DELTA,FT',/)
65 DO 100 I=NBX,NEL
```

---

Table F-8. Concluded

---

```
MTY=IE(I,1)
PR=(P(I)+P(I+1))/2.
PRA=PRES(MTY,2)/PRES(MTY,1)
PRB=PRES(MTY,3)/PRES(MTY,2)
PRC=PRES(MTY,4)/PRES(MTY,1)
PRD=PRES(MTY,5)/PRES(MTY,4)
PRE=PRES(MTY,1)/PR
PRF=PRES(MTY,2)/PR
PRG=PRES(MTY,4)/PR
SA=(STRA(MTY,2)-STRA(MTY,1))/ALOG10(PRA)
SB=(STRA(MTY,3)-STRA(MTY,2))/ALOG10(PRB)
SC=(STRA(MTY,4)-STRA(MTY,1))/ALOG10(PRC)
SD=(STRA(MTY,5)-STRA(MTY,4))/ALOG10(PRD)
IF(PR.LE.PRES(MTY,2))DEB=-STRA(MTY,1)+SA*ALOG10(PRE)
IF(PR.GT.PRES(MTY,2))DEB=-STRA(MTY,2)+SB*ALOG10(PRF)
IF(PR.LE.PRES(MTY,4))DEA=-STRA(MTY,1)+SC*ALOG10(PRE)
IF(PR.GT.PRES(MTY,4))DEA=-STRA(MTY,4)+SD*ALOG10(PRG)
DEL=DEA-DEB
IF(NOUT.EQ.0) GOTO 80
WRITE(6,110) I,DXX,DEL
80 DELH2=DELH2+DX*DEL
DXX=DXX+DX
100 CONTINUE
110 FORMAT(I5,F13.2,F18.5)
DEL1=DELH1+DELH2
WRITE(6,305) DELH1,DELH2,DEL1
305 FORMAT(/,1X,'SOIL COLLAPSE NEXT TO FOUNDATION EXCLUDING COLLAPSE',
1/,1X,'IN SUBSOIL BENEATH FOUNDATION =',F10.5,' FEET',/,1X,'SUBSOIL
2 COLLAPSE =',F10.5,' FEET',/,1X,'TOTAL COLLAPSE =',F10.5,' FEET')
120 RETURN
END
```

---

APPENDIX G  
NOTATION

| Symbol     | Description   |
|------------|---|
| $a_o$      | Acceleration of vibrations at foundation level, g                             |
| $a_{crit}$ | Critical acceleration, g  |
| $a_{max}$  | Maximum horizontal acceleration of the ground surface from earthquakes, g     |
| $c_u$      | Uniformity coefficient, $D_{60}/D_{10}$                                       |
| $c_v$      | Coefficient of consolidation, $ft^2/day$                                      |
| $d$        | Dial reading, inch  |
| $e$        | Void ratio  |
| $e_1$      | Void ratio at beginning of increment  |
| $e_c$      | Void ratio after soaking at $\sigma = 2$ tsf                                  |
| $e_f$      | Final void ratio  |
| $e_o$      | Natural or initial void ratio   |
| $e_r$      | Void ratio from which rebound occurs  |
| $e_{LL}$   | Void ratio at liquid limit  |
| $f$        | Frequency of vibration, revolutions/minute                                    |
| $f_1$      | Layer thickness correction factor   |
| $f_t$      | Time dependent factor relating immediate settlement with settlement at time t |
| $f_s$      | Shape correction factor   |
| $h_a$      | Average specimen height between time $t_2$ and $t_1$ , inch                   |
| $h_e$      | Equivalent specimen thickness, ft   |
| $h_f$      | Final specimen height, inch   |
| $h_o$      | Initial specimen height, inch   |
| $k$        | Constant relating the elastic soil modulus with depth, $E_o + kz$ ksf/ft      |
| $k_d$      | Coefficient of subsidence   |

| Symbol     | Description   |
|------------|---|
| $l$        | Lateral distance between two adjacent points, ft  |
| $m$        | $[(1+e)/C_c] \cdot \ln 10$  |
| $m'$       | Shape factor  |
| $q$        | Vertical pressure applied to soil at bottom of footing, tsf   |
| $q_1$      | Soil pressure from Figure 3-3a using corrected blowcount $N'$ and ratio of embedment depth $D$ to footing width $B$ , tsf |
| $q_c$      | Cone tip resistance, tsf  |
| $q_{oave}$ | Average pressure in stratum from foundation load, tsf   |
| $q_p$      | Plate pressure, tsf   |
| $r_d$      | Stress reduction factor for earthquakes   |
| $r_m$      | Scaling factor for earthquakes  |
| $s$        | Slope of curve or plot of $1/2$ deviator stress versus effective horizontal confining pressure                            |
| $t$        | Time, days (minutes, years)   |
| $t_{50}$   | Time at 50 percent of primary consolidation, days (minutes)   |
| $t_{100}$  | Time at 100 percent of primary consolidation, days (minutes)  |
| $u_h$      | Average excess pore water pressure at the bottom of the specimen over the time interval $t_1$ and $t_2$ , psi             |
| $u_w$      | Pore water pressure, tsf  |
| $u_{we}$   | Pore water pressure induced in the soil by foundation loads, tsf  |
| $u_{wf}$   | Final pore water pressure, tsf  |
| $z$        | Depth, ft   |
| $z_1$      | Depth of influence of loaded area, ft   |
| $z_w$      | Height of column of water above depth $z$ , ft  |
| $A_{max}$  | Maximum displacement of vibration, inch   |
| $B$        | Footing width, ft   |
| $B_p$      | Diameter of plate, inch   |

| Symbol          | Description   |
|-----------------|---|
| C               | Clay content, percent < 2 microns   |
| C <sub>1</sub>  | Correction accounting for strain relief from embedment,<br>$1 - 0.5 \frac{A_p}{A} > 0.5$  |
| C <sub>t</sub>  | Correction for time dependent increase in settlement,<br>$1 + 0.2 \cdot \log_{10}(t/0.1)$ |
| C <sub>α</sub>  | Coefficient of secondary compression  |
| CP              | Collapse potential  |
| C <sub>c</sub>  | Compression index   |
| C <sub>r</sub>  | Recompression index   |
| C <sub>w</sub>  | Correction for water table depth  |
| C <sub>n</sub>  | Correction for overburden pressure  |
| C <sub>N</sub>  | Depth correction factor for earthquakes   |
| C <sub>s</sub>  | Swell index   |
| C <sub>u</sub>  | Undrained shear strength, tsf   |
| CPT             | Cone penetration test   |
| D               | Depth of embankment, ft   |
| D <sub>10</sub> | Grain diameter at which 10 percent of soil weight is finer                                |
| D <sub>60</sub> | Grain diameter at which 60 percent of soil weight is finer                                |
| D <sub>b</sub>  | Depth of mat base or stiffening beams below ground surface, ft                            |
| D <sub>f</sub>  | Thickness of foundation, ft   |
| D <sub>r</sub>  | Relative density, percent   |
| D <sub>w</sub>  | Depth to groundwater level, ft  |
| DMT             | Dilatometer test  |
| E               | Elastic modulus, tsf  |
| E <sub>d</sub>  | Constrained modulus, tsf  |
| E <sub>D</sub>  | Dilatometer modulus, tsf  |

| Symbol    | Description  |
|-----------|--|
| $E_f$     | Young's modulus of foundation, tsf   |
| $E_i$     | Initial pressuremeter modulus, tsf   |
| $E_o$     | Elastic soil modulus at the ground surface, tsf  |
| $E_m$     | Deformation modulus, tsf   |
| $E_s$     | Young's soil modulus, tsf (psi)  |
| $E_s^*$   | Equivalent elastic modulus of soil beneath the excavation or foundation, tsf             |
| $E_{si}$  | Elastic modulus of soil layer $i$ , tsf  |
| $E_t$     | Tangent elastic modulus, tsf   |
| $E_{ti}$  | Initial tangent elastic modulus, tsf   |
| $ER_i$    | Measured energy ratio for the drill rig and hammer system                                |
| $E^*$     | Theoretical SPT energy applied by a 140-lb hammer falling freely 30 inches, 4200 inch-lb |
| $E_i$     | Available energy, inch-lb  |
| $F_{RD}$  | Rebound depth factor   |
| $F_{RS}$  | Rebound shape factor   |
| $G$       | Shear modulus, tsf   |
| $G_{eff}$ | Effective shear modulus at earthquake induced shear stress, tsf                          |
| $G_{max}$ | Maximum shear modulus, tsf   |
| $G_s$     | Shear soil modulus, tsf  |
| $H$       | Depth of stratum below footing to a rigid base or layer thickness, ft                    |
| $H_e$     | Equivalent compressible soil height, ft  |
| $H_j$     | Thickness of stratum $j$ , ft  |
| $H_w$     | Wall height, ft  |
| $I$       | Influence factor for infinitely deep and homogeneous soil in Perloff procedure           |



| Symbol       | Description  |
|--------------|--|
| $I_c$        | Center influence factor in Perloff procedure, compressibility influence factor   |
| $I_e$        | Edge influence factor in Perloff procedure   |
| $I_w$        | Influence factor, $\pi/4$ for circular plates  |
| $I_z$        | Depth influence factor   |
| $I_{zi}$     | Depth influence factor of soil layer i   |
| $I_p$        | Peak influence factor  |
| L            | Span length or length of footing, ft   |
| $L_{SAG}$    | Span length with center depression, ft   |
| $L_{HOG}$    | Span length with center heave, ft  |
| K            | Bulk modulus, tsf  |
| $K_c$        | Correlation factor   |
| $K_o$        | Coefficient of lateral earth pressure at rest  |
| $K_R$        | Relative stiffness between soil and foundation   |
| LL           | Liquid limit, percent  |
| M            | Magnitude of earthquake  |
| $N_{ave}$    | Average blowcount/ft in depth H  |
| $N_{col}$    | Number of columns in a diagonal line on the foundation   |
| $N_k$        | Cone factor  |
| N            | Average blowcount per foot in the stratum, number of blows of a 140-lb hammer falling 30 inches to drive a standard sampler (1.42" ID, 2.00" O D) 1 ft |
| $N_c$        | Number of cycles   |
| $N_j$        | Blowcount by Japanese standards, blows/ft  |
| $N_m$        | Blowcounts measured with available energy E, blows/ft  |
| $N_{60}$     | Blowcounts corrected to 60 percent energy, blows/ft  |
| $(N_1)_{60}$ | Normalized blow count at 60 percent energy for earthquakes, blows/ft   |

| Symbol           | Description  |
|------------------|--|
| N'               | Corrected blowcount (Figure 3-3), blows/ft   |
| OCR              | Overconsolidation ratio  |
| PI               | Plasticity index, percent  |
| PL               | Plastic limit, percent   |
| PMT              | Pressuremeter test   |
| R                | Equivalent radius, $\sqrt{LB/\pi}$ , ft  |
| R <sub>3</sub>   | Time-dependent settlement ratio as a proportion of $\rho_i$ during first 3 years following construction, $\approx 0.3$ |
| R <sub>t</sub>   | Time-dependent settlement ratio as a proportion of $\rho_i$ for each log cycle of time after 3 years, $\approx 0.2$    |
| R <sub>po</sub>  | Radius of pressuremeter probe, inch  |
| R <sub>e</sub>   | Strain resistance  |
| R <sub>D</sub>   | $(1-v_s)/[(1+v_s)(1-2v_s)]$ , relates E <sub>s</sub> to E <sub>d</sub>   |
| S                | Swell under confinement, percent   |
| S <sub>f</sub>   | Free swell, percent  |
| S <sub>max</sub> | Maximum potential heave, ft  |
| SPT              | Standard penetration test  |
| S <sub>min</sub> | Minimum potential heave, ft  |
| S <sub>RE</sub>  | Undrained elastic rebound, ft  |
| T <sub>v</sub>   | Consolidation time factor  |
| U <sub>t</sub>   | Degree of consolidation of the compressible stratum at time t, percent   |
| W                | Water content, percent   |
| W <sub>n</sub>   | Natural water content, percent   |
| Z <sub>a</sub>   | Depth of active zone for heave, ft   |
| α                | Correction factor for subgrade soil in Perloff procedure   |

| Symbol            | Description  |
|-------------------|--|
| $\alpha_c$        | Correlation factor depending on soil type and cone bearing resistance                |
| $\alpha_o$        | Parameter applied in the Alpan method, Figure 3-1a                                   |
| $\beta$           | Angular distortion   |
| $\beta_{max}$     | Maximum angular distortion   |
| $\beta_v$         | Coefficient of vibratory compaction  |
| $\gamma$          | Saturated unit weight of soil mass, ton/ft <sup>3</sup>                              |
| $\gamma_c$        | Cyclic shear strain  |
| $\gamma_d$        | Dry density, lbs/ft <sup>3</sup>   |
| $\gamma_{do}$     | Initial dry density, lbs/ft <sup>3</sup>   |
| $\gamma_{eff}$    | Effective cyclic shear strain induced by earthquake                                  |
| $\gamma_w$        | Unit weight of water, 0.031 ton/ft <sup>3</sup>                                      |
| $\gamma'$         | Effective unit wet weight, ton/ft <sup>3</sup>                                       |
| $\Delta$          | Deflection, ft   |
| $\Delta_a$        | Allowable differential movement, ft  |
| $\Delta e$        | Change in void ratio   |
| $\Delta p$        | Net applied footing pressure, tsf  |
| $\Delta P$        | Change in pressure measured by pressuremeter, tsf                                    |
| $\Delta P'_{ave}$ | Average effective bearing pressure, $q_{oave} + \sigma'_{oave}$ , tsf                |
| $\Delta R_{pm}$   | Change in radius from $R_o$ at midpoint of pressuremeter curve, inch                 |
| $\Delta R_p$      | Change in radius between selected straight portions of the pressuremeter curve, inch |
| $\Delta z_i$      | Depth increment $i$ , ft   |
| $\Delta \sigma$   | Increase in effective vertical stress, tsf (psi)                                     |
| $\delta$          | Vertical differential movement between two adjacent points, ft                       |
| $\epsilon_c$      | Volumetric strain  |
| $\epsilon_{c,M}$  | Volumetric strain for earthquake with magnitude $M$                                  |

| Symbol             | Description  |
|--------------------|--|
| $\epsilon_z$       | Strain in z direction  |
| $\dot{\epsilon}_N$ | Rate of strain at number of cycles $N_c$   |
| $\dot{\epsilon}^1$ | Rate of strain at $N_c = 1$  |
| $\lambda$          | Skempton-Bjerrum correction factor   |
| $\lambda_L$        | Lame's constant  |
| $\lambda_d$        | Decay constant   |
| $\mu_0$            | Influence factor for depth D in improved Janbu procedure   |
| $\mu_1$            | Influence factor for foundation shape in improved Janbu procedure  |
| $\nu$              | Poisson's ratio  |
| $\nu_s$            | Soil Poisson's ratio   |
| $\rho$             | Total settlement, ft   |
| $\rho_c$           | Primary consolidation settlement or center settlement, ft  |
| $\rho_{ct}$        | Consolidation settlement at time t, ft   |
| $\rho_e$           | Edge settlement, ft  |
| $\rho_{col}$       | Settlement of collapsible soil, ft   |
| $\rho_e$           | Earthquake settlement, inch  |
| $\rho_i$           | Immediate elastic settlement, ft   |
| $\rho_{max}$       | Maximum settlement, ft   |
| $\rho_s$           | Secondary compression settlement, ft   |
| $\rho_t$           | Settlement at time t, ft   |
| $\rho_v$           | Vibratory load settlement, ft (inch)   |
| $\rho_{\lambda c}$ | Corrected consolidation settlement considering effects of overconsolidation and pore pressure changes from three-dimensional loading, ft |
| $\sigma_1$         | Total vertical stress at time $t_1$ , tsf  |
| $\sigma_2$         | Total vertical stress at time $t_2$ , tsf  |

| Symbol           | Description  |
|------------------|--|
| $\sigma_a$       | $(\sigma_1 + \sigma_2)/2$ , tsf  |
| $\sigma_f$       | Vertical confining pressure, tsf   |
| $\sigma'_{izp}$  | Effective overburden pressure at the depth of $I_{zp}$ , tsf                                   |
| $\sigma'_{oave}$ | Average effective overburden pressure in stratum H, tsf  |
| $\sigma'_{od}$   | Effective overburden pressure at depth D or bottom of footing, tsf                             |
| $\sigma_{oz}$    | Total overburden pressure at depth z, tsf  |
| $\sigma_p$       | Total maximum past pressure, tsf   |
| $\sigma'_{qp}$   | Apparent preconsolidation stress, tsf  |
| $\sigma_{rd}$    | Repeated deviator stress, tsf  |
| $\sigma_{st}$    | Vertical pressure from foundation loads transmitted to a saturated compressible soil mass, tsf |
| $\sigma_s$       | Swell pressure, tsf  |
| $\sigma'_f$      | Final effective pressure, tsf  |
| $\sigma'_{hz}$   | Effective horizontal pressure at rest at depth z, tsf  |
| $\sigma'_o$      | Effective overburden pressure, tsf   |
| $\sigma'_{od}$   | Effective overburden pressure at bottom of footing, tsf  |
| $\sigma'_m$      | Mean effective pressure, tsf   |
| $\sigma'_p$      | Preconsolidation stress or maximum past effective stress, tsf                                  |
| $\tau_{av}$      | Average cyclic shear stress induced by earthquake shaking, tsf                                 |
| $\omega$         | Fraction tilt  |
| $\omega_o$       | Angular rotation, radians/sec  |